XENOPHON'S ANABASIS

Library of
PACIFIC BIBLE INSTITUTE of FRESNO, CALIF.
INCORPORATED
2149 TUOLUMNE STREET FRESNO, CALIF.
Presented By Rev. O.S. Fowler
Class GR 480
No. 5100 Author Hi 588

GR
480
Hi 588

Xenophon's Anabasis

Hinds

5100

Date Due

DDec 9			
FEB 14 '77			
2005			

Ready in September 1898 (see NOTE below).

COMPLETELY PARSED CAESAR

Caesar's Gallic War, Book I.

CLOTH—**$1.50 Postpaid**—SQUARE 12MO.

Being the Latin text in the original order of the words just as Caesar wrote them, with the exact literal *English* equivalent of each Latin word directly under it (interlined); and with a *second* literal translation, in the margin, rendering the text in elegant English employing the natural English order of the words; *and* with Footnotes in which every word of the Latin text is completely parsed and the contructions and contexts explained, with *References* to the important Grammars.

Each page complete in itself—the Latin text (*long vowels marked*), the interlined literal translation, the marginal flowing translation, the parsing and the analysis—everything at a glance on the same page *without turning a leaf!*

TO BE FOLLOWED SHORTLY (CONSTRUCTED ON THE SAME PLAN) BY:

Virgil's Aeneid, Bk. I (completely scanned throughout), **$1.50.**
Cicero's 1st Oration against Catiline, $1.50.

NOTE. The mere announcement of a work so interesting and helpful to teachers as **Completely Parsed Caesar, Book I,** has led to so many urgent requests for advance sheets that we have decided to accept orders (*if accompanied by the full price, $1.50*) for this book in the sheets, upon the understanding that we are to send forthwith postpaid as many of the pages (unbound) as may be completed at the time the order is received—the balance of the pages (also unbound) to be forwarded postpaid as soon as the final pages are completed.

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers
4-5-13-14 Cooper Institute New York City
Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store

CLASSIC INTERLINEARS

"The superiority is readily apparent of the interlinear over other translations, not only in the saving of time, but also for all purposes of careful study, making possible as well as convenient and easy a correct solution of idioms, a quick insight into the sense, a facile and lucid re arrangement of the context in the English order, and a practical comparison of both the similarities and the contrasts of construction."

Sixteen volumes now ready in this popular series. Uniform in style and price.

Caesar

Cicero's Orations, Revised Edition.

Cicero on Old Age and Friendship

Cornelius Nepos

Horace, Complete

Livy, Books XXI and XXII

Ovid's Metamorphoses, Complete

Virgil's Æneid, the First Six Books, Revised.

Virgil's Æneid, Complete, the Twelve Books

Virgil's Eclogues, Georgics, and Last Six Books of Æneid

Demosthenes On the Crown

Homer's Iliad, the First Six Books, Revised.

Xenophon's Anabasis, the First Four Books

Xenophon's Memorabilia

Greek New Testament

Sallust

IN PREPARATION

Juvenal

OTHERS TO FOLLOW

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers

4-5-13-14 Cooper Institute New York City

Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store

Classic Interlinear Translations

THE FIRST FOUR BOOKS

OF

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS

The original text reduced to the natural English order

...WITH A LITERAL...

Interlinear Translation

5100

COPYRIGHT, 1893, BY ARTHUR HINDS & CO.

HINDS & NOBLE, PUBLISHERS
4-5-13-14 COOPER INSTITUTE, NEW YORK CITY
Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store

LIBRARY
of the
PACIFIC BIBLE INSTITUTE
FRESNO, CALIFORNIA

Specimen — Top half of first page of COMPLETELY PARSED CAESAR, Book I. $1.50.

A. & G. = Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar. — B. = Bingham's. — G. = Gildersleeve's. — H. = Harkness's.

I. Gaul, as a whole, is divided into three parts: the Belgae inhabit one of these; the Aquitani another; and those who in their own

I.	Gallia	est	omnis	dīvīsa	in	partēs 1
	Gaul	*is*	*all*	*divided*	*into*	*parts*
trēs,	quārum		ūnam	incolunt		Belgae, 2
three,	*of which*		*one*	*inhabit*		*the Belgae,*
aliam	Aquitānī,		tertiam	quī		ipsōrum 3
the other	*the Aquitani,*		*the third*	*(those) who*		*of themselves*

LINE 1. **Gallia, -ae,** nom. sing. f., subj. of *est dīvīsa* (*dīvīsa est*); the generic term for the three divisions — Belgica, Celtica and Aquitania — conceived as a totality. The Greek equivalent is Γαλατία. —— **est,** 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the irr. verb *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus,* no supine; compare A.S. is, GER. ist, GK. ἐστί; *est* in the text may be taken as the copula, or as a part of the compound *dīvīsa est,* perf. pass., 3d pers. sing. of *dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum,* 3. Thus the Greek paraphrast regarded it, and translated *est dīvīsa* by διῄρηται. —— **omnis, -e,** an adj. of two endings, an *ī*-stem; agrees with *Gallia,* but seems to have here the force of an adv., and = *as a whole.* Consult A. & G. 191; B. 128, REM. 10; G. 325, 6; H. 443. —— **dīvīsa,** see *est,* above. —— **in,** prep. with acc. or abl.: with acc. after verbs of motion = *into;* with abl. after verbs of rest = *in,* or *on,* or *among.* —— **partēs,** acc. plur. of *pars, partis,* f.; acc. after *in.* See *In,* A. & G. 153, 1, 2; B. 120, 1, 2, 3; G. 418, 1, 2; H. 435, 1.

LINE 2. **trēs,** acc. plur. of numeral adj. *trēs*, *tria*, an *ī*-stem, declined regularly like the plur. of *levis;* agrees with *partēs*. Of the cardinals up to *centum*, only *ūnus*, *duo* and *trēs* are declinable. —— **quārum,** gen. plur. f. of *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, rel. pron. in use both as subst. and adj.; in the text it refers to *partēs* as antecedent; it might also be taken as modifying *partium*, to be supplied; it is a partitive gen. after *ūnam*. A. & G. 216, *a*, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. —— **ūnam,** acc. sing. f.; supply *partem*, which is the direct obj. of *incolunt*. Note that *ūnus*, *-a*, *-um* is one of the adj. that have the gen. in *-īus*, and dat. in *-ī*. For list of these, see A. & G. 83; B. 56, 3, 4; G. 76, 1, 2; H. 151. —— **incolunt,** 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *incolō*, *-ere*, *-uī*, *-cultum*, 3. —— **Belgae, -ārum,** nom. plur. m., subj. of *incolunt*. Note the gender from the signification rather than the declension. The Belgae were a mixed race, partly Germanic and partly Celtic in origin. they inhabited northern Gaul.

LINE 3. **aliam,** supply *partem;* acc. sing. f. of adj. *alius*, *-ia*, *-iud;* lit. = *other*, *another*, but in the text = *alteram*, i.e. *the second* (*partem* if supplied would be direct obj. of *incolunt*). For decl., see A. & G. 83; B. 56 and REM. 1; G. 76 and 4; H. 151. —— **Aquitānī,** nom. plur. m. of the adj. *Aquitānus*, *-a*, *-um*, used substantively; as subj. of *incolunt* understood. They were the inhabitants of southwestern Gaul. —— **tertiam,** supply *partem;* acc. sing. f. of the ordinal adj. *tertius*, *-a*, *-um* (*partem* if supplied would be direct obj. of *incolunt*). —— **quī,** nom. plur. m. of rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod;* subj. of *appellantur;* its antecedent is *eī* understood, which latter is subj. of *incolunt*, to be supplied. The antecedent of a rel. pron. is often omitted if indefinite, or if naturally implied from the context. —— **ipsōrum,** gen. plur. m. of the pron. *ipse*, *-sa -sum*, gen. *-īus*, dat. *-ī*; lit. *of themselves;* more emphatic than *suā*, and sometimes used in connection with the latter. A. & G. 197, *e*; B. 85, REM. 2, and 128, REM. 8; G. 311, 321, 2; H. 398, 3, and 452. With ellipses supplied, the text would read here: *quārum partium ūnam partem incolunt Belgae, aliam partem Aquitānī incolunt, tertiam partem eī incolunt quī*, etc.

PREFACE

In preparing the Classic Series of Interlinear Translations the publishers have insisted upon a faithful adherence to two obvious essentials; the reduction of the original text to the natural order, and, as far as possible, a strictly literal version.

In all cases, however, where the meaning as thus literally rendered is not sufficiently intelligible, explanatory words or phrases have been added.

It is hoped that the plan will be appreciated of inserting all explanatory words and phrases, by means of brackets, in immediate conjunction with the text, thus obviating the annoyance and the serious loss of time that attend frequent reference to notes by numbered paragraphs in an appendix.

The superiority is readily apparent of the interlinear over other translations, not only in the saving of time, but also for all purposes of careful study; making possible as well as convenient and easy, a correct solution of idioms, a quick insight into the sense, a facile and lucid re-arrangement of the context in the English order, and a practical comparison of both the similarities and the contrasts of construction.

XENOPHON'S

ANABASIS,

OR

EXPEDITION OF CYRUS.

BOOK I.—CHAPTER I.

Parentage of Cyrus the Younger. After the death of his father he is accused of plotting against his brother Artaxerxes, who imprisons him, but releases him on the intercession of his mother, and sends him back to his province, where he secretly collects forces, of which a large proportion are from Greece, to make war on his brother.

1. Δύο παῖδες γίγνονται Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος
Two sons are-born of Darius and Parysatis

πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, δὲ νεώτερος
(the) elder on the one hand Artaxerxes, (*but*) (the) younger

Κῦρος. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Δαρεῖος ἠσθένει καὶ
Cyrus. But when — Darius was-sick (had fallen sick) and

ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου,
suspected (the) end (*of-the*) (his) life (was approaching)

ἐβούλετο τὼ ἀμφοτέρω παῖδε παρεῖναι. 2. Ὁ
he-wished (*the*) both (his) sons to-be-present. The

πρεσβύτερος μὲν οὖν ἐτύγχανε παρὼν·
elder then happened | (*being-present*) (to be present);

δὲ μεταπέμπεται Κῦρον ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἧς
but he-sends-for Cyrus from the province, of-which he

ἐποίησε αὐτὸν σατράπην καὶ ἀπέδειξε
(had) made him satrap, and he (had) appointed

αὐτὸν δὲ στρατηγὸν πάντων, ὅσοι
him also commander of-all (the forces), as-many-as

ἀθροίζονται εἰς πεδίον Καστωλοῦ. Ὁ Κῦρος
assemble in (the) plain of-Castolus. — Cyrus

οὖν ἀναβαίνει λαβὼν Τισσα-
accordingly goes-up (to his father) having-taken (with him) Tissa-

φέρνην ὡς φίλον, καὶ ἀνέβη ἔχων δὲ
phernes as (a) friend, and he-went-up having also (with him)
τριακοσίους ὁπλίτας τῶν Ἑλλήνων, Ξενίαν
three-hundred heavy-armed-soldiers of-the Greeks, (and) Xenias
Παῤῥάσιον ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν.
(the) Parrhasian (the) commander also of-them (as their commander).

3. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Δαρεῖος ἐτελεύτησε, καὶ Ἀρταξέρξης
But-when | Darius died, and Artaxerxes
κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν, Τισσα-
was-settled in the kingdom (was placed upon the throne), Tissa-
φέρνης διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν,
phernes accuses — Cyrus to (*the*) (his) brother,
ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι αὐτῷ.
as-how-that he-might-be-plotting against-him (that he is plotting
Ὁ δὲ πείθεταί τε καὶ
against him). — (Artaxerxes) indeed is-persuaded (believes this) and also
συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν·
seizes Cyrus | as-if about-killing; [with the intention of
δὲ ἡ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη ἀποπέμπει
killing him;] but (*the*) (his) mother having-begged-his-life sends
αὐτὸν πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. Ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε,
him back to —(his) province. —But when he (had) departed,
κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθείς, βουλεύεται
having-been-in-danger and having-been-disgraced, he-deliberates (began
ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ
to consider) how he-shall never again be (in the power) of —
ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλ' ἣν δύνηται βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου.
(his) brother, but if he-is-able will-reign instead of-him.
Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μητηρ ὑπῆρχη τῷ
Now Parysatis — the mother, was-well-disposed-toward —
Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα
Cyrus, loving him more than the reigning-king
Ἀρταξέρξην. 5. Ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο πρὸς αὐτὸν
Artaxerxes. Whosoever indeed used-to-come to him
τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως, οὕτω διατιθεὶς
of (those sent) from (the) king, | having so disposed

πάντας, ὥστε ἀπεπέμ-
all, [having so influenced all towards himself,] that he-used-to-

πετο εἶναι φίλους αὐτῷ
send (them) away-from-him (inclined) to-be friends to-himself

μᾶλλον ἢ βασιλεῖ. Καὶ δὲ ἐπεμελεῖτο τῶν
more than to (the) king. And also he-took-care of-the

βαρβάρων παρ' ἑαυτῷ, ὡς τε εἴησαν ἱκανοὶ
barbarians with him, in-order-that not-only they-might-be fit

πολεμεῖν καὶ ἔχοιεν εὐνοϊκῶς
to-wage-war but-also | might-have (themselves) [might be] well-disposed

αὐτῷ. 6. Δὲ ἤθροιζε τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν
toward-him. But he-collected the Greek force

ἐπικρυπτόμενος ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο, ὅπως ὅτι
concealing (this) as much-as he-could, in-order that

λάβοι βασιλέα ἀπαρασκευότατον.
he-might-take the-king the-most-unprepared (as unprepared as possible).

Ὧδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογήν. Ὁπόσας
Thus therefore did-he-make the levy (of troops). Whatever

φυλακὰς εἶχε ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι, παρήγγειλε τοῖς
garrisons he-had in the cities, he-sent-instructions —

ἑκάστοις φρουράρχοις λαμβάνειν Πελοποννησίους
to-each commander-of-them to-take Peloponnesian

ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους,
men as many-as (they could) and (the) best (soldiers),

ὡς Τισσαφέρνους ἐπιβουλεύοντος ταῖς
on-the-presumption-that Tissaphernes is-plotting-against the

πόλεσι. Καὶ γὰρ αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις ἦσαν τὸ
cities. — For the Ionian cities were —

ἀρχαῖον Τισσαφέρνους, δεδομέναι ἐκ
formerly of (under) Tissaphernes, having-been-given (to him) by

βασιλέως, τότε δ' ἀφεστήκεσαν πρὸς Κῦρον
(the) king, afterwards they-had-revolted to Cyrus

πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου. 7. Δὲ Τισσαφέρνης
all (of them) except Miletus. But Tissaphernes

προαισθόμενος ἐν Μιλήτῳ βουλευομέ-
having-discovered (that certain persons) in Miletus are (were) plan-

νους τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα ἀποστῆναι πρὸς
ning — these very-same (things) | to-have-revolted [to revolt] to
Κῦρον, ἀπέκτεινε τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν, τοὺς δ'
Cyrus, he-slew | the [some] indeed of-them, | the but
ἐξέβαλεν. Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς
[but others] he-banished. — But Cyrus having-received | (*the*
φεύγοντας συλλέξας στράτευμα
fleeing) (the exiles) (and) having-collected (an) army
ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ
he-besieged Miletus both by land and by
θάλατταν, καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπ-
sea, and he-endeavoured to-bring-back | (*the having-*
τωκότας. Καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἦν ἄλλη
(*been*)-*driven-out*) (the exiles). And this again was another
πρόφασις αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα.
pretext for-him | (*of-the to-collect*) (for assembling) (an) army.

8. Δὲ πέμπων πρὸς βασιλέα ἠξίου ὢν
For sending to (the) king he-requested (that) being (a)
ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ, ταύτας τὰς πόλεις
brother of-him, (his brother) that those — cities (ought)
δοθῆναι οἷ μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην
to-have-been-given to-him rather than (that) Tissaphernes (should)
ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μὴτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ
rule (be ruler of) them, and — (his) mother supported him (in)
ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς οὐκ μὲν ἠσθάνετο
this; so that (the) king did not indeed perceive
τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς πρὸς ἑαυτὸν, δὲ ἐνόμιζε αὐτὸν
the plot against himself, but he-supposed (that) he (Cyrus)
πολεμοῦντα Τισσαφέρνει δαπανᾶν
fighting (making war against) Tissaphernes spends
αμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα·
(was spending his money) upon | (*the*) (his) armies;
ὥστε οὐδέν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμούντων.
| therefore it-was not hated of-them fighting
Καὶ γὰρ
(so that he was not at all concerned at the strife between them). — For

ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε βασιλεῖ τοὺς δασμοὺς
— Cyrus remitted to (the) king the tributes (taxes)
γιγνομένους ἐκ τῶν πόλεων, ὧν Τισσαφέρνης
arising from the cities, which Tissaphernes
ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.
| happened having (to have).

9. Δ' ἄλλο στράτευμα συνελέγετο αὐτῷ ἐν
But another army was-collected for-him in
Χερρονήσῳ τῇ καταντιπέρας Ἀβύδου, τόνδε
Chersonesus (*in the*) right-over-against (opposite) Abydos, this (was)
τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακε-
the manner (in the following manner). Clearchus (a) Lace-
δαιμόνιος ἦν φυγὰς· ὁ Κῦρος συγγενόμενος
dæmonian was (an) exile; — Cyrus having-become-acquainted
τούτῳ τε ἠγάσθη αὐτὸν καὶ
with-this (man) not-only was struck-with-admiration (for) him, but-also
δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μυρίους δαρεικούς. Ὁ δὲ λαβὼν
gives him ten-thousand darics. — But having-taken
τὸ χρυσίον συνέλεξε στράτευμα ἀπὸ τούτων
the gold he-collected (an) army | from these
τῶν χρημάτων, καὶ ὁρμώμενος
— things [by means of it], and making-excursions
ἐκ Χερρονήσου ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί,
from (the) Chersonesus he-waged-war against (the) Thracians,
τοῖς οἰκοῦσι ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσποντον, καὶ
— (who) dwell above (the) Hellespont, and
ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· καὶ ὥστε αἱ
he-was-of-service to-the Greeks; and so-that the
Ἑλλεσποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι συνε-
Hellespontian towns (towns on the Hellespont) willingly con-
βάλλοντο χρήματα αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφὴν τῶν
tributed (the necessary) things to-him for the support of-the
στρατιωτῶν. Τοῦτο δ' αὖ αὖτω τὸ στράτευμα
soldiers. | This indeed again (was) thus — (an) army
τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῳ.
being-maintained secreted for-him [thus again an army was se-

10. Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς
cretly maintained for him]. Aristippus — the Thessalian

ὢν ἐτύγχανεν αὐτῷ ξένος,
| being happened to-him (a) guest-friend (happened to be a guest-

καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν
friend of Cyrus), and being-pressed by the opposite-faction

οἴκοι ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον, καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν
at-home he-comes to — Cyrus, and asks (of) him

εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ μισθὸν τριῶν
— two-thousand mercenaries, and pay (for them for) three

μηνῶν, ὡς οὕτω ἂν περιγενόμνος
months, as thus | he might have-been-superior [so that he might

τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος
overpower] the opposite-faction (his enemies). — But Cyrus

δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ
gives him to (the number of) four-thousand and

μισθὸν ἐξ μηνῶν, καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ
pay (for) six months, and he-requests of-him (that) he-would not

πρὸσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστα-
first terminate (the strife) against the opposite-

σιώτας πρὶν ἂν συμβουλεύσηται ἄυτῷ.
faction before (until) — he-should-consult with-him [Cyrus].

Οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ στράτευμα τρεφόμενον
| Thus — again — (an) army being-maintained

ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ
secreted for-him [thus again an army was secretly maintained for

ἐν Θετταλία. 11. Ἐκέλευσε Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν
him] in Thessaly. He-ordered Proxenus — the

Βοιώτιον ὄντα ξένον αὐτῷ
Bœotian | being (a) guest (of) him (his guest-friend) (that) |

λαβόντα πλείστους ἄνδρας ὅτι
having-taken [having collected] as-many men as-possible

παραγενέσθαι, ὡς βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι
to-come-to (him), as-if he-were-wishing to-lead-an-army

εἰς Πισίδας, ὡς, τῶν
(intended to make war) against (the) Pisidians, in-as-much-as, the

Πισιδῶν παρεχόντων πράγματα τῇ χώρᾳ
Pisidians being-pretending thing (were causing trouble) in-the province
ἑαυτοῦ. Ἐκέλευσε δὲ Σοφαίνετον
of-himself (they infested his territories). He-ordered also Sophænetus
τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, τούτους
the Stymphalian and Socrates the Achaian, these
καὶ ὄντας ξένους, λαβόντας
also being (his) guest-friends, (that) | having-taken [having collected]
πλείστους ἄνδρας ὅτι ἐλθεῖν, ὡς
as-many men as-possible | to-have-come [to come to him], as
πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει
he-was (pretending that he was) about-waging-war against-Tissaphernes
σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τῶν Μιλησίων. Καὶ οὗτοι
with the exiles of-the Milesians. And they
ἐποίουν οὕτως.
did so.

CHAPTER II.

Cyrus begins his march, proceeding from Sardis through Lydia into Phrygia, where he is joined by new forces. The city of Celænæ; the plain of Caystrus, where the soldiers demand their arrears of pay, which Cyrus discharges with money received from the queen of Cilicia. The town of Thymbrium; the fountain of Midas. Cyrus enters Cilicia, and is met at Tarsus by Syennesis, the king of the country.

1. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἤδη ἐδόκει αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι
But when it-now seemed to-him (time) | to-go
ἄνω, μὲν ἐποιεῖτο
up, [to march into the country against his brother], — he-made
τὴν πρόφασιν ὡς βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν
(*the*) (this) pretext, that (*he-wishing*) (he wished) to-expel
Πισίδας παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀθροίζει
(the) Pisidians entirely from the territory; and he-collects
ἐνταῦθα ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν
there, as-if against these (Pisidians), the — barbarian
καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν στράτευμα, καὶ παραγγέλλει τε
and the Grecian army, and he-sends-word not-only
τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἥκειν λαβόντι ὅσον στράτευμα
— to-Clearchus to-come (to him) | bringing whatever army

ἦν αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ Ἀρισ-
there-was to-him [taking all the forces he had] but-also — to Aris-

τίππῳ, συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς
tippus, (that) having-been-reconciled (having made terms) with —

οἴκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
(those opposed to him) at-home | (*to-have-sent*) (to send) to him

στράτευμα ὃ εἶχε· καὶ παραγγέλλει Ξενίᾳ τῷ
(the) army which he-had; and he-sent-word to-Xenias the

Ἀρκάδι, ὃς προεστήκει τοῦ ξενικοῦ
Arcadian, who had-been-commander-over(commanded) the mercenaries

ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι αὐτῷ, ἥκειν λαβόντα τοὺς
in the towns for-him, to-come | bringing (all) the (his)

ἄνδρας, πλὴν ὁπόσοι ἦσαν ἱκανοὶ φυλάττειν τὰς
men, except as-many-as were sufficient to-guard the

ἀκροπόλεις. 2. Ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς πολιορκοῦντας
citadels. He-summoned — also — (those) besieging

Μίλητον, καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς φυγάδας στρατεύεσθαι
Miletus, and he-exhorted the exiles to-serve-as-soldiers

σὺν αὐτῷ, ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ
(to march) with him, having-promised to-them, if he-should

καλῶς καταπράζειεν, ἐφ' ἃ ἐστρατεύετο, μή
successfully accomplish (the objects) for which he set out ‖ not

πρόσθεν παύσασθαι πρὶν καταγάγοι αὐτοὺς
(*first*) to-rest before he-might-have-led them

οἴκαδε. Οἱ
home (he would not rest until he had restored them to their homes). —

δὲ ἡδέως ἐπείθοντο· γὰρ ἐπίστευον αὐτῷ· καὶ
— They cheerfully complied; for they-trusted him; and

λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα παρῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις.
having-taken — (their) arms | were-present at [joined him at] Sardis.

3. Ξενίας μὲν δὴ παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις λαβὼν
Xenias also — came to Sardis having-taken

τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων, εἰς
(bringing with him) the (soldiers) from the towns, to-the-number-of

τετρακισχιλίους ὁπλίτας· Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν
four-thousand heavy-armed-men; Proxenus also | was-present

ἔχων ὁπλίτας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους
[came] having heavy-armed-men — to-the-number-of five-hundred
καὶ κιλίους, δὲ πεντακοσίους γυμνῆτας· Σοφαίνετος
and a-thousand, also five-hundred light-armed; Sophænetus
δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ἔχων χιλίους ὁπλίτας· Σωκράτης
too the Stymphalian having a-thousand heavy-armed-men; Socrates
δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους ὁπλίτας,
also the Achaian having about five-hundred heavy-armed-men,
Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς δὲ παρεγένετο ἔχων μὲν
Pasion the Megarean also came having (bringing) —
εἰς τριακοσίους ὁπλίτας, δὲ τριακοσίους
to-the-number-of three-hundred heavy-armed-men, and three-hundred
πελταστὰς· καὶ δὲ οὗτος ἦν καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης
peltasts; both he was and (also) — Socrates
τῶν στρατευομένων ἀμφὶ Μίλητον.
(among) — (those) serving-in-the-army at Miletus.

4. Οὗτοι μὲν ἀφίκοντο αὐτῷ εἰς Σάρδεις.
These now | arrived-at to-him [joined him] at Sardis.
Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανοήσας ταῦτα,
Tissaphernes — having-observed these-things (these proceedings),
καὶ ἡγησάμενος τὴν παρασκευὴν εἶναι μείζονα
and having-considered the preparation to-be greater
ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισίδας,
than as-if against (than was necessary to attack) (the) Pisidians,
πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέα τάχιστα ἦ ἐδύνατο, ἔχων
he-set-out to (the) king as-quickly as he-could, having
ὡς πεντακοσίους ἱππέας. **5.** Καὶ
(taking with him) about five-hundred cavalry. And (the)
βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε παρὰ
king — therefore, when (as soon as) he-heard from
Τισσαφέρνους τὸν στόλον Κύρου
Tissaphernes (of) the military-expedition of-Cyrus
ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.
began-to-prepare-himself-against-it (made preparation to oppose him).
Κῦρος δὲ, ἔχων οὓς εἴρηκα ὡρμᾶ-
Cyrus —, | having (these) which I-have-stated put-himself-in-

το ἀπὸ Σάδεων· καὶ ἐξελαύνει
motion (commenced his journey) from Sardis; (*and*) he-proceeds
διὰ τῆς Λυδίας τρεῖς σταθμοὺς,
through — Lydia | three stations [three days' march], (being
εἴκοσι καὶ δὺο παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν
a distance of) twenty and two parasangs, to the river
Μαίανδρον. Τὸ εὖρος τούτου δύο πλέθρα·
Mæander. The width of-this (river was) two plethra;
γέφυρα δὲ ἐπῆν ἐζευγμένη
[about 200 feet]; (a) bridge — was-over (it) connected-together
ἑπτά πλοίοις. **6.** Δια-
by-seven boats (made by seven boats joined together). Having-
βὰς τοῦτον ἐξελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίας ἕνα
crossed-over this (river) he-advances through Phrygia one
σταθμὸν ὀκτὼ παρασάγγας, εἰς
station [one day's march] (being) eight parasangs, to
Κολοσσάς, οἰκουμένην πόλιν, εὐδαίμονα καὶ
Colossa, (a) well-inhabited town, wealthy and
μεγάλην. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἑπτά ἡμέρας· καὶ
large. There he-remained seven days; and
Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ἦκε ἔχων
Menon the Thessalian came (to him) having (bringing with him) (a)
χιλίους ὁπλίτας καὶ πεντακοσίους πελταστὰς,
thousand heavy-armed-men and five-hundred peltasts [target-
Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους.
eers], (consisting of) Dolopians and Ænians and Olynthians.
7. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς σταθμοὺς
Hence he-advances three stations [three days' march]
εἴκοσιν παρασάγγας εἰς Κελαινάς οἰκουμένην
(making) twenty parasangs to Celænæ (an) inhabited
πόλιν τῆς Φρυγίας, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα.
town of-the Phrygians, large and wealthy.
Ἐνταῦθα ἦν βασίλεια Κύρῳ,
Here there-was (a) palace for-Cyrus, [here Cyrus had a pal-
καὶ μέγας παράδεισος, πλήρης ἀγρίων θηρίων,
ace] and (a) large park, full of-wild beasts,

ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὁπότε
which he used-to-hunt | from horse [on horseback], | whenever

βούλοιτο γυμνάσαι ἑαυτόν
he-might-wish to-have-exercised [when he wished to exercise] himself

τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. Διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ
— and the horses. Through (the) middle — of-the

παραδείσου ῥεῖ ὁ ποταμός Μαίανδρος· δὲ αἱ
park flows the river Mæander; | but the

πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων· δὲ
springs of-it are (issue) from the palace;

καὶ ῥεῖ διὰ τῆς πόλεως Κελαινῶν.
and it-flows through the city of-Celænæ.

8. Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἐρυμνὰ βασίλεια μεγάλου
There-is also — (a) fortified palace of (the) great

βασιλέως ἐν Κελαιναῖς, ἐπὶ ταῖς
king [the king of Persia] in Celænæ, (situated) at (near) the

πηγαῖς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Μαρσύου, ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει·
sources of-the river Marsyas, under the citadel;

οὗτος δὲ καὶ ῥεῖ διὰ τῆς πόλεως, καὶ
this (river) also — flows through the city, and

ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τὸ δὲ εὖρος τοῦ
empties into the Mæander; the — width of-the

Μαρσύου ἐστιν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.
Marsyas is twenty and five | of-feet [feet].

Ἐνταῦθα Ἀπόλλων λέγεται ἐκδεῖρα Μαρσύαν,
Here Apollo is-said to-have-flayed Marsyas,

νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ
having-conquered (him) | contending — (they contending) about

σοφίας, καὶ κρεμάσαι τὸ δέρμα
music (in a trial of musical skill), and to-have-hung-up the (his) skin

ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ τοῦτο δὲ
in the cave whence the springs (rise); from this (on this account)

ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας. 9. Ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης,
the river is-called Marsyas. Here Xerxes,

ὅτε ἀπεχώρει ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς
when he-departed (returned) from — Greece having-been-defeated

τῇ μάχῃ, λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι τε ταῦτά τὰ βασί-
in-the battle, is-said to-have-built both this — pal-
λεια καὶ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν Κελαινῶν. Ἐνταῦθα
ace and the citadel of-Celænæ. There
Κῦρος ἔμεινε τριάκοντα ἡμέρας καὶ Κλέαρχος ὁ
Cyrus remained thirty days and Clearchus the
Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦκε, ἔχων χιλίους
Lacedæmonian exile came (to him), having (bringing) a-thousand
ὁπλίτας, καὶ ὀκτακοσίους Θρᾷκας πελταστὰς,
heavy-armed-men, and eight-hundred Thracian targeteer-,
καὶ διακοσίους Κρῆτας τοξότας. Δὲ καὶ ἅμα
and two-hundred Cretan archers. And also at-the-same-time
Σωκράτης ὁ Συρακόσιος παρῆν ἔχων
Socrates the Syracusian | was-present [arrived] having (bringing)
τριακοσίους ὁπλίτας, καὶ Σοφαίνετος ὁ Ἀρκὰς,
three-hundred heavy-armed-men, and Sophænetus the Arcadian,
ἔχων χιλίους ὁπλίτας. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα
having (bringing) a-thousand heavy-armed-men. And here
Κῦρος ἐποίησεν ἀριθμὸν καὶ ἐξέτασιν τῶν
Cyrus made (an) enumeration and (had a) review of-the
Ἑλλήνων ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμ-
Greeks in the park, and they-were — all-
παντες, μὲν μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι ὁπλῖται, δὲ
together, (in all) ten-thousand and a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and
ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους πελτασταὶ.
about — two-thousand peltasts [light-armed men and targeteers].

10. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει δύο σταθμοὺς,
Hence he-advances two stations [two days' march],
δέκα παρασάγγας εἰς Πέλτας, οἰκουμένην
(a distance of) ten parasangs to Peltæ, (a) well-inhabited
πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας· ἐν αἷς
city. Here he-remained three days; in which (during
Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς ἔθυσε τὰ Λύκαια, καὶ
which time) Xenias the Arcadian celebrated the Lycæan-rites, and
ἔθηκε ἀγῶνα· τὰ δὲ ἆθλα ἦσαν χρυσαῖ
held (a) contest [public games]; the — prizes were golden

στλεγγίδες· καὶ δὲ Κῦρος ἐθεώρει τὸν
strigils (flesh scrapers); and also Cyrus witnessed the
ἀγῶνα. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει δύο σταθμοὺς,
public-games (contest). Hence he-advances two stations,
δώδεκα παρασάγγας εἰς ἀγοράν
(a distance of) twelve parasangs to (the) market-place of
Κεραμῶν, οἰκουμένην πόλιν, ἐσχάτην
(the) Ceramians, (an) inhabited city, (the) last (on the road
πρὸς τῇ Μυσίᾳ χώρᾳ. 11. Ἐντεῦθεν
to Mysia) (and) next-to the Mysian territory. Hence
ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς σταθμοὺς, τριάκοντα
he-advances three stations [a day's march], (travelling) thirty
παρασάγγας, εἰς πεδίον Καΰστρου, οἰκουμένην
parasangs, to (the) plain of-Caÿstrus, (an) inhabited
πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινε πέντε ἡμέρας· καὶ μισθὸς
city. There he-remained five days; and pay
ὠφείλετο τοῖς στρατιώταις πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν,
was-due to-the soldiers (for) more than three months
καὶ ἰόντες πολλάκις ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας
(three months' pay), and going often | to the gates
ἀπήτουν. Δὲ ὁ διῆγε,
[to his tent] they-demanded (it). But — Cyrus | protracted-the-time [put
λέγων ἐλπίδας καὶ ἦν δῆλος
them off], | saying hopes [by giving them hopes] and he-was evidently
ἀνιώμενος· γὰρ ἦν οὐ πρὸς τρόπου
distressed; for it-was not of the-nature (consistent with the
τοῦ Κύρου μὴ ἀποδιδόναι ἔχοντα.
character) — of-Cyrus not to-pay he-having (when he had

the money).

12. Ἐνταῦθα Ἐπύαξα ἡ γυνὴ Συεννέσιος
Here (while he was here) Epyaxa the wife of-Syennesis
τοῦ βασιλέως Κιλίκων ἀφικνεῖται, παρὰ
the king of (the) Cilicians comes, to
Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο δοῦναι Κύρῳ πολλά
Cyrus (paid him a visit); and she-was-said to-have-given Cyrus much

χρήματα. Κῦρος δ' οὖν τότε ἀπεδωκε
money. Cyrus — therefore then (in consequence) paid-to
τῇ στρατιᾷ μισθὸν τεττάρων μενῶν. Ἡ
the army (their) wages for-four months. The
Κίλισσα δὲ καὶ εἶχε φύλακας περὶ αὐτὴν
Cilician (queen) also — had (a) body-guard with her
Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίους· καὶ δὲ
(composed of) Cilicians and Aspendians; and also
ἐλέγετο Κῦρον συγγενέσθαι τῇ
it-was-said (rumored) (that) Cyrus was-intimate with-the
Κιλίσσῃ. 13. Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐξελαύνει δύο σταθμοὺς,
Cilician (queen). Hence — he-advances two stations,
δέκα παρασάγγας εἰς Θύμβριον,
(a distance of) ten parasangs to Thymbrium, (an)
οἰκουμένην πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθα παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν
inhabited town. Here by the road (side)
ἦν κρήνη ἡ καλουμένη Μίδου, τοῦ
was (a) fountain which was-called (the fountain of) Midas, the
βασιλέως Φρυγῶν, ἐφ' ᾗ Μίδας λέγεται θηρεῦσαι
king of-Phrygia, at which Midas is-said to-have-captured
τὸν Σάτυρον, κεράσας αὐτήν οἴνῳ.
the Satyr, having-mixed it [the water] with-wine.
14. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει δύο σταθμοὺς δέκα
Hence he-proceeds two stations (a distance of) ten
παρασάγγας, εἰς Τυριαῖον οἰκουμένην πόλιν.
parasangs, to Tyriæum (an) inhabited town.
Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα
There he-remained three days, and the Cilician (queen)
λέγεται δεηθῆναι Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι αὐτῇ
is-said to-have-asked of-Cyrus | to-have-shown [to show] to-her
τὸ στράτευμα. Βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπιδεῖξαι,
| (*the*) (his) army. Being willing therefore | to-have-shown
ποιεῖται ἐξέτασιν τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν
[to show it], he makes (a) review of-the Greeks and of-the
βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. 15. Ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς
barbarians in the plain. He-orders — the

Ἕλληνας οὕτω ταχθῆναι ὡς
Greeks | so to-have-been-arranged [to be so drawn up] as
νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην, καὶ στῆναι,
(was the) custom for-them (to be) in battle, and to-stand
δὲ ἕκαστον συντάξαι τοὺς
(in such order), but (that) each (captain) was-to-arrange | the
ἑαυτοῦ. Οὖν ἐτάχθησαν ἐπὶ
of-himself [his own men]. | They-were therefore arranged in
τεττάρων· Μένων μὲν δὲ, καὶ οἱ
fours [drawn up four deep]; Menon indeed —, and | (*the*)
σὺν αὐτῷ εἶχε τὸ δεξιὸν, δὲ Κλέαρχος
(those) with him had (held) the right (wing), but Clearchus
καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου τὸ εὐώνυμον, οἱ ἄλλοι
| and the of-him [and his men] the left, the other
στρατηγοί δὲ τὸ μέσον. 16. Ὁ Κῦρος οὖν ἐθεώρει
captains (occupied) the centre. — Cyrus then reviewed
μὲν πρῶτον τοὺς βαρβάρους οἱ δὲ παρήλαυνον
— first (of all) the barbarians — and they-marched-past-him
τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἴλας καὶ κατὰ τάξεις, δὲ εἶτα
drawn-up in troops and in companies, and afterwards
τοὺς Ἕλληνας παρελαὺνων ἐφ' ἅρματος,
(he reviewed) the Greeks driving-by-them in (his) chariot,
καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἁρμαμάξης. Πάντες δὲ
and the Cilician (queen) in (a) covered-carriage. All —
εἶχον χαλκᾶ κράνη, καὶ φοινικοῦς χιτῶνας, καὶ
had brazen helmets, and scarlet tunics, and
κνημῖδας, καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαθαρμένας.
greaves, and the (their) shields burnished.
17. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ παρήλασε πάντας, στήσας τὸ
But when — he-had-driven-past all, having-stopped — (his)
ἅρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, πέμψας Πίγρητα
chariot in-front-of the phalanx, (and) having-sent Pigres
τὸν ἑρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων
the interpreter to the officers of-the Greeks
ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα,
he-commanded (them) to-thrust-forward — (their) arms (present arms),

καὶ τὴν ὅλην φάλαγγα ἐπιχωρῆσαι.
and the entire phalanx | to-have-moved-forward (to advance).

Οἱ δὲ προεῖπον ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις·
The (officers) — communicated these (orders) to-the soldiers;

καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε,
and when it-was-sounded-with-the-trumpet (when the trumpet sounded),

προβαλλόμενοι τὰ ὅπλα, ἐπῆεσαν.
putting-forward - - (their) arms (presenting arms), they-advanced.

Δὲ ἐκ τούτου προϊόντων θᾶσσον σὺν κραυγῇ,
And from this going-on more-quickly with (a) shout, | (a)

δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις
running happened to-the soldiers [the soldiers commenced run-

ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. 18. Καὶ
ning] of — their-own-accord to the tents. And

δὲ πολὺς φόβος ἄλλοις τῶν βαρβάρων,
also (there was) (a) great fear among-others of-the barbarians,

καὶ τε ἡ Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐκ τῆς ἁρμα-
and both — the Cilician (queen) fled from the (Persian) car-

μάξης, καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἔφυγον
riage, and — (the people) in the markets fled

καταλιπόντες τὰ ὤνια· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες
having-left-behind (deserted) the (their) wares; but the Greeks

ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς σὺν γέλωτι. Δὲ ἡ
went (marched up) to the tents with laughter. (And) the

Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν
Cilician (queen) having-seen the splendour and the

τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασε. Δὲ
discipline of-the army was-struck-with-admiration. (*But*)

Κῦρος ἥσθη ἰδὼν τὸν φόβον ἐκ τῶν
Cyrus was-delighted seeing the fear (inspired) by the

Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους. 19. Ἐντεῦθεν
Greeks into the barbarians. Thence

ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς σταθμοὺς, εἴκοσι παρα-
he-advances three stations, (a distance of) twenty para-

σάγγας, εἰς Ἰκόνιον, ἐσχάτην πόλιν τῆς Φρυγίας.
sangs, to Iconium, (the) last town — of-Phrygia.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει
Here he-halted three days. Hence he-went-forward

διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας πέντε σταθμοὺς, τριάκοντα
through — Lycaonia five stations, (a distance of) thirty

παρασάγγας. Ἐπέτρεψε τοῖς Ἕλλησι διαρπάσαι
parasangs. He-permitted the Greeks | (*to-have-plundered*)

τὴν ταύτην χώραν, ὡς οὖσαν πολεμίαν.
(to ravage) — this country, as being hostile

20. Ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος ἀποπέμπει
(since it was hostile). Thence Cyrus sends-back

πὴν Κίλισσαν τὴν ταχίστην ὁδὸν εἰς
the Cilician (queen) by-the | quickest [shortest] route into

τὴν Κιλικίαν· καὶ συμέπεμψεν αὐτῇ στρατιώτας,
— Cilicia; and he-sent-with her (the) soldiers,

οὕς Μένων εἶχε, καὶ αὐτόν. Κῦρος δέ μετὰ
that Menon had, and (Menon) himself. Cyrus then with

τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καππαδοκίας
the others (rest of the army) proceeds through Cappadocia

τέτταρας σταθμοὺς, εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε
four stations, (a distance of) twenty and five

παρασάγγας, πρὸς Δάναν οἰκουμένην πόλιν,
parasangs, to Dana (an) inhabited town,

μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς
large and wealthy. Here they-staid three

ἡμέρας· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινε Μεγαφέρνην,
days; during which (time) Cyrus put-to-death Megaphernes,

Πέρσην ἄνδρα, βασίλειον φοινικιστὴν, καὶ
(a) Persian (*man*), (a) royal purple-wearer, (*and*)

τινα ἕτερόν δυνάστην τῶν ὑπάρχων
a-certain other person-in-power one-of-the officers-high-in-command

αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ
(provincial governors) having-accused (them) | to-conspire to-him

21. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο
[of conspiring against him]. Hence they-made-an-attempt

εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· δὲ ἡ εἰσβολὴ
to-throw themselves (enter) into — Cilicia; but the entrance

ἦν ὁδὸς ἁμαξιτὸς, ἰσχυρῶς
was (a) road (only wide enough for a single) wagon, very

ὀρθία, καὶ ἀμήχανος στρατεύματι εἰσελθεῖν,
steep, and impracticable for (an) army to-enter (pass),

εἴ τις ἐκώλυε. Καὶ δὲ Συέννεσις ἐλέγετο εἶναι
if any-one opposed. And (moreover) Syennesis was-said to-be

ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων, φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολήν· δι' ὃ
on the heights, guarding the entrance; for which

ἐμεινεν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. Δὲ
(reason) he (Cyrus) remained (a) day in the plain. But

τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄγγελος ἦκε λέγων ὅτι Συέννεσις
on-the next-day (a) messenger came saying that Syennesis

εἴη λελοιπὼς τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο ὅτι τὸ
| might-be having-left [had left] the heights, when he-discovered that the

στράτευμα Μένωνος ἦν ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ, εἴσω τῶν
army of-Menon was already in Cilicia, within the

ὀρέων, καὶ ὅτι ἤκουε Ταμῶν ἔχοντα τριήρεις
mountains, and because he-heard (that) Tamos having galleys

τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ Κύρου αὐτοῦ,
(namely) — (those) of (the) Lacedæmonians and of-Cyrus himself,

περιπλεούσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν.
(and that) he (Tamos) was-sailing-around from Ionia into Cilicia.

22. Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, οὐδενὸς
Cyrus — therefore ascended (*on*) the mountains, no-one

κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε τὰς σκηνάς, οὗ οἱ Κίλικες
opposing (him), and saw the tents, where the Cilicians

ἐφύλαττον. Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ κατέβαινεν εἰς μέγα
kept-guard. Thence — he-descended into (a) large

καὶ καλὸν πεδίον, ἐπίῤῥυτον, καὶ ἔμπλεων παντο-
and beautiful plain, well-watered, and (*being*)-full of-all-

δαπῶν δένδρων καὶ ἀμπέλων· καὶ φέρει δὲ πολὺ
kinds of-trees and vines; and it-bears also much

σήσαμον καὶ μελίνην, καὶ κέγχρον καὶ πυροὺς
sesamum, and panic, and millet, and wheat,

καὶ κριθάς. Ὄρος δ' ὀχυρὸν καὶ ὑψηλὸν
and barley. (A) mountain (chain)— strong (steep) and high

περιέχει αὐτὸ πάντη ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.
surrounds it on-all-sides from sea to sea.

23. Καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τοῦτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε
Descending — through this — plain he-advances

τέτταρας σταθμοὺς, πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι παρα-
four days'-march, (a distance of) five and twenty para-

σάγγας, εἰς Ταρσούς μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα πόλιν
sangs, to Tarsus (a) large and wealthy city

τῆς Κιλικίας. Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ βασίλεια
— of-Cilicia. Here were the palaces

Συεννέσιος τοῦ βασιλέως Κιλίκων· δὲ διὰ
of-Syennesis the king of (the) Cilicians; and through (the)

μέσης τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμός Κύδνος
middle of-the city runs (flows) (a) river Cydnus (by)

ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο πλέθρον.
name, (the) width (of which is) two plethra (about two hundred feet).

24. Οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες τὴν ταύτην πόλιν ἐξέλιπον
— (Those) inhabiting — this city deserted (it)

μετὰ Συεννέσιος εἰς ὀχυρὸν χωρίον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη,
together-with Syennesis for (a) fortified place on the mountains,

πλὴν οἱ ἔχοντες τὰ καπηλεῖα· καὶ δὲ οἱ
except — (those) having — shops; and also — (those)

οἰκοῦντες παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν ἔν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν
dwelling near the sea at Soli and at

Ἰσσοῖς ἔμειναν. 25. Ἐπύαξα δὲ, ἡ γυνὴ Συεννέσιος
Issus remained. Epyaxa —, the wife of-Syennesis

ἀφίκετο εἰς Ταρσοὺς πέντε ἡμέρας προτέρα Κύρου·
arrived at Tarsus five days before Cyrus;

δὲ ἐν τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τῶν ὀρῶν, τῶν
but in the crossing-over of-the mountains, — (namely, those which

εἰς τὸ πεδίον, δύο λόχοι στρατεύματος
descend) to the plain, two companies of (the) army

τοῦ Μένωνος ἀπώλοντο. Οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν
— of-Menon perished. — (Some) indeed said | (that

ἁρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι
while) plundering something to-have-been-cut-to-pieces [that they had

ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλίκων· δὲ οἱ
been cut to pieces while plundering] by the Cilicians; but —(others
ὑπολειφθέντας, καὶ οὐ δυναμέους εὑρεῖν τὸ
said) (that) being-left-behind, and not being-able to-find the
ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδούς εἶτα πλανωμέ-
rest (of the) army nor the roads after wandering-
νους ἀπολέσθαι· οὗτοι δὲ οὖν ἦσαν
about to-have-perished; these — moreover were (amounted to)
ἑκατὸν ὁπλῖται. 26. Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι
a-hundred heavy-armed-men. But the rest (of Menon's troops)
ἐπεὶ ἦκον, ὀργιζόμενοι διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν
when they-arrived, enraged at the destruction (fate) —
συστρατιωτῶν διήρπασαν τήν τε πόλιν τοὺς
(of their) fellow-soldiers plundered both the — city —
Ταρσοὺς, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ. Κῦρος
Tarsus, and the palaces — in it. Cyrus
δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσήλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετεπέμπετο
moreover when he-entered into the city, sent-for
τὸν Συέννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὁ δ' ἔφη
— Syennesis (to come) to him; — but he-said (Syennesis
οὔτε πω πρότερον ἐλθεῖν εἰς χεῖρας
answered) | never yet before-this to-have-come into hands [that
οὐδενί κρείττονι
he had never yet put himself in the power of] any-one superior-in-power
ἑαυτοῦ, οὔτε ἤθελε τότε ἰέναι Κύρῳ, πρὶν
(to) himself, neither would-he then | (*to-go*) (go) to-Cyrus, before (until)
ἡ γυνὴ ἔπεισε αὐτὸν, καὶ ἔλαβε πίστεις.
—(his) wife persuaded him (to go), and he-received assurances (of
27. Μετα δὲ ταῦτα, ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις,
safety). After —these-things, when they-met one-another,
Συέννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ πολλὰ χρήματα
Syennesis (*indeed*) gave Cyrus many things (much money)
εἰς τὴν στρατιὰν, δὲ Κῦρος ἐκείνῳ
for (the support of) — (his) army, and Cyrus (gave) to-him
δῶρα, ἃ νομίζεται τίμια παρὰ βασιλεῖ
gifts, which are-accustomed-to-be-held as-valuable by (a) king

ἵππον χρυσοχάλινον, καὶ χρυσοῦν
(namely) (a) horse with-a-golden-bridle, and a-golden

στρεπτὸν, καὶ ψέλλια, καὶ χρυσοῦν ἀκινάκην, καὶ
twisted-collar, and bracelets, and a-golden scimitar, and

Περσικὴν στολὴν, καὶ τὴν χώραν
a-Persian robe, and (he promised that) the country (was)

μηκέτι ἀφαρπάζεσθαι· δὲ ἀπολαμβάνειν
not-hereafter to-be-plundered; and to-receive-back (that he might

τὰ ἡρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἤν που
have returned to him) the captured slaves, if any-where

ἐντυγχάνωσι.
they-meet-with-them.

CHAPTER III.

Cyrus is forced te stay twenty days at Tarsus by a mutiny of the Greek soldiers, who, suspecting that they were led against the king, refuse to go farther, and offer violence to Clearchus, who endeavours to force them to proceed. But being told by Cyrus that the expedition is directed against Abrocomas, and promised an increase of pay, they agree to continue their march.

1. Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατια ἔμεινε εἴκοσιν
HERE Cyrus and the army remained twenty

ἡμέρας· γὰρ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔφασαν οὐκ ἰέναι τοῦ
days; | for the soldiers said not to-go —

πρόσω. Γὰρ ἤδη
farther [for the soldiers refused to go any farther]. For already

ὑπώπτευον ἰέναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα·
they-suspected | to-go against (the) king [that they were marching

δὲ ἔφασαν οὐ
against the king of Persia]; and they-said (that they) were not

μισθωθῆναι ἐπὶ τούτῳ. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρῶτος
hired for this (purpose). Clearchus — first

ἐβιάξετο τοὺς στρατιώτας αὑτοῦ
endeavoured-to-compel | the soldiers of-him [his soldiers]

ἰέναι· οἱ δὲ τε ἐπεὶ ἤρξατο προϊέναι ἔβαλλον
to-go; — but — when he-began to-advance (his men) pelted

αὐτὸν καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου.
him (with stones) and (also) the beasts-of-burden | the of-him

2. Κλέαρχος δὲ μὲν τότε μικρὸν
[belonging to him]. Clearchus indeed — then narrowly
ἐξέφυγε μὴ τὸ καταπετρωθῆναι·
escaped | lest the to-have-been-stoned [being stoned to death];
ὕστερον δ', ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται
at-length —, when he-knew (saw) that he-would not be-able
βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν στρατιωτῶν
to-use-force, he-brought-together (a) meeting | of-the soldiers
αὐτοῦ. Καὶ μὲν πρῶτον ἑστὼς
of-him [of his soldiers]. And — at-first standing (before them)
ἐδάκρυε πολὺν χρόνον· δὲ οἱ ὁρῶντες
he-shed-tears (for a) long time; but — (they) seeing-this
ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε
wondered and were-silent; then — he-spoke-to-them
τοιάδε.
as follows.

3. Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλε-
Men soldiers, do not wonder that I griev-
πῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασι.
ously bear (feel distressed at) the present (state of) things.
Γὰρ Κῦρος ἐγένετο ξένος ἐμοὶ
| For Cyrus became (a) guest-friend to-me (bound himself to
καὶ ἐτίμησε με,
me by the ties of hospitality) and honoured me, (when I was an)
φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος, τε τὰ ἄλλα,
exile from — (my) country, | both (in) other (respects) [both
καὶ ἔδωκε
with other marks of esteem], and (in particular) he-gave (by presenting
μυρίους δαρεικούς· οὓς ἐγὼ λαβών, οὐ
me with) ten-thousand darics; which I having-received, did not
κατεθέμην ἐμοὶ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον, ἀλλ' οὐδε
lay aside for-myself for —(my) own-private (use), — neither
καθηδυπάθησα, ἀλλ' ἐδαπάνων εἰς ὑμᾶς.
did-I-squander-it-in-luxury, but I-spent-it for you.

4. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐπολέμησα πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾷκας,
— First (of all) — I-made-war upon the Thracians,

καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος, μεθ' ὑμῶν
and in —(the cause of) Greece, with you (your assist-

ἐτιμωρούμην ἐξελαύνων αὐτοὺς ἐκ τῆς
ance) I-took-vengeance (on them) driving them out from the

Χερρονήσου, βουλομένους ἀφαι-
Chersonesus, (they) wishing (when they wished) to-take-

ρεῖσθαι τὴν γῆν τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐνοικοῦντας.
away the land (from) the Greeks dwelling-there.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει ἐπορευόμεν, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς.
When — Cyrus called-me I-went, taking you

ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοίην
(with me), in-order-that if — he-might-need (my assistance) I-might-help

αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν ἔπαθον εὖ ὑπ'
him | for (those things) of-which I-was-affected beneficially by

ἐκείνου. 5. Ἐπεὶ
him [in return for the benefits I had received from him]. Since

δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμπορεύεσθαι,
however you-do not wish to-accompany (him) (on this

ἀνάγκε δή μοι ἢ
expedition), | the-necessity — (is) to-me [I am obliged] either (by)

προδόντα ὑμᾶς χρῆσθαι τῇ φιλίᾳ Κύρου,
deserting you | to-use the friendship of-Cyrus [to preserve

ἢ ψευσάμενον πρὸς
the friendship of Cyrus], or having-deceived (him by being false) towards

ἐκεῖνον ἰέναι μεθ' ὑμῶν. Εἰ μὲν δὴ
him to-go (to remain) with you. | If therefore —

ποιήσω δίκαια οἶδα οὐκ
I-shall-make just-things I-know not (whether then I shall do what is

αἱρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς, καὶ συν
right I do not know) but-I-shall-hold(choose)— you, and with

ὑμῖν πείσομαι ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ. Καὶ οὐδείς
you will-submit-to (suffer) what-ever may be-necessary. | And no-one

οὔποτε ἐρεῖ, ὡς ἐγω
shall never have-said [and no one shall ever say], that I

ἀγαγὼν Ἕλληνας εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς
having-led (the) Greeks among the barbarians, deserting

τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἱλόμεν τὴν φιλίαν τῶν βαρβάρων.
the Greeks chose the friendship of-the barbarians.

6. Ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς οὐ θέλετε πείθεσθαι ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ
But since you do not wish to-obey me nor
ἕπεσθαι, ἐγὼ ἕψομαι σὺν ὑμῖν, καὶ πείσομαι ὅ
to-follow (me), I will-follow (*with*) you, and will-suffer what-
τι ἂν δέῃ. Γὰρ νομίζω ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἐμοὶ καὶ
ever — may be-necessary. For I-consider you to-be to-me
πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ
(my) country, (my) friends and (my) allies, and
ἂν μὲν οἶμαι σὺν ὑμῖν εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου
I (may) indeed think (that) with you (I am) to-be honoured wherever
ἂν ὦ, δὲ ἄνευ ἔρημος ὑμῶν, ἂν οἶμαι
I may be, but being deprived (separated from) of-you, I (may) think
οὐκ εἶναι ἱκανὸς οὔτ' ἂν ὠφελῆσαι φίλον,
(myself) not to-be able either — to-help (a) friend,
οὔτ' ἂν ἀλέξασθαι ἐχθρόν. Οὕτο ἔχετε τὴν
or — to repel (an) enemy. Then hold-to — (this)
γνώμην. ὡς οὖν ἐμοῦ ἰόντος, ὅπη
opinion. (Feel assured therefore) that — I am-going, where
καὶ ὑμεῖς ἂν,
also you may (be going) (that I am resolved to go with you wherever

7. Ταῦτα εἶπε· δὲ οἱ στρα-
you go). | These-things he-said [thus he spoke]; and the sol-
τιῶται, οἵ τε ἐκείνου αὐτοῦ
diers, | — as-well of-those of-himself [as well those under his own
καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,
command] as the others, hearing these-things (words),
ἐπήνεσαν· ὅτι φαίη
applauded (him); that he-should-say (for saying) (that he would)
οὐ πορεύεσθαι παρα βασιλέα· πλείους ἢ
not to-march (march) against (the) king; and more than
δισχίλιοι παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος,
two-thousand (soldiers) from — Xenias and Pasion,
γαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρα-
taking — (their) arms and —(their) baggage en-

τοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ. 8. Κῦρος δὲ
camped with Clearchus. Cyrus —

ἀπορῶν τε καὶ λυπούμενος τούτοις, μετε-
being-both-perplexed — and distressed at-these-things, sent-

πέμπετο τὸν Κλέαρχον· ὁ δὲ ἤθελε οὐ μὲν ἰέναι,
for — Clearchus; who however would not — go,

πέμπων ἄγγελον αὐτῷ, λάθρα δὲ τῶν
but-sending (a) messenger to-him, unknown however (to) the

στρατιωτῶν, ἔλεγε θαῤῥεῖν, ὡς τούτων
soldiers, he-told (him) to-be-of-good-cheer, | as these-things

καταστησομένων εἰς τὸ δέον·
being-arranged in the required-manner [as these matters

δὲ μεταπέμπεσθαι
would be satisfactorily arranged]; also (he requested Cyrus) to-send

ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν· δ' αὐτὸς
(and again) ask him (to come to him); but he (after being sent

ἔφη οὐκ ἰέναι. 9. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα
for again) said (that he would) not go. After — this

συναγαγὼν τούς δὲ στρατιώτας ἑαυτοῦ,
having-assembled | the — soldiers of-himself [his own sol-

καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ, καὶ
diers], and — (those) having-joined (who had joined) him, and

τὸν βουλόμενον τῶν ἄλλων,
the desirous of-the other (any of the others who wished to

ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
be present), he-spoke (addressed them) as-follows.

Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὲν δὴ δῆλον ὅτι τὰ
Men, soldiers, (it is) indeed — evident that | the (affairs)

Κύρου ἔχει οὕτως πρὼς ἡμᾶς, ὥσπερ τὰ
of-Cyrus hold (themselves) so to us, as —

ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκεῖνον·
our (affairs do) to him [the situation of Cyrus is in the same

γὰρ οὔτε ἡμεῖς ἔτι
relation to us that ours is to him]; for neither (are) we any-longer

στρατιῶται ἐκείνου γε ἐπεί οὐ
| (the) soldiers of-him [his soldiers] at-least since we-do not

LIBRARY
of the
PACIFIC BIBLE INSTITUTE
FRESNO, CALIFORNIA

συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι μισθοδότης
follow him, nor (is) he any-longer paymaster
ἡμῖν. 10. Ὅτι μήντοι νομίζει ἀδικεῖσθαι
to-us. That however he-thinks (himself) injured (wronged)
ὑφ ἡμῶν οἶδα· καὶ ὥστε αὐτοῦ μεταπεμτομένου
by us I-know; so-that he sending-for (me)
ἐθέλω οὐκ ἐλθεῖν, μὲν τὸ μέγιστον,
I-will not have-gone [go], indeed the greatest, (principally from)
αἰσχυνόμενος, ὅτι σύνοιδα ἐμαυτῷ ἐψευσ-
being-ashamed, because I-am-conscious to-myself (of) having-
μένος αὐτόν πάντα, καὶ δὲ ἔπειτα
deceived him in-all (respects), and indeed then-also (in addition)
δεδιὼς, μή, λαβών με ἐπι-
being-afraid (because I am afraid), lest, having-seized me | he-may-have-
θῇ δίκην, ὧν
inflicted [he may inflict] punishment, (for the things) | of-which [in
νομίζει ἠδικῆσθαι ὑπ' ἐμοῦ. 11. Οὖν
which] he-thinks (himself) to-have-been-injured by me. Therefore
δοκεῖ ἐμοὶ εἶναι οὐχ ὥρα ἡμῖν καθεύδειν, οὐδ'
(this) seems to-me to-be no time for-us to-sleep, nor
ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν ἀλλὰ βουλεύεσθαι
to-neglect our selves (our own safety) but to-consider
ὅ, τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. Καὶ
— what is-necessary to-do | from (under) these (circumstances). And
ἕως τε μένομεν αὐτοῦ, δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι
as (long) indeed (as) we-remain here, it-seems to-me to-be
σκεπτέον, ὅπως, μενοῦμεν ἀσφαλέστατα,
necessary-to-be-considered, how we (may) remain the-most-securely,
εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ἄπιμεν
(but) if — now (it) seems (best) to-depart, how we-may-depart
ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ ὅπως ἕξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·
the-most-safely, and how we-shall-have the necessities-of-life;
γὰρ ἄνευ τούτων οὐδέν ὄφελος οὔτε
for without these (necessities) | (there is) no advantage | neither
στρατηγοῦ οὔτε ἰδιώτου
[either] (to the) commander | nor [or] (to the) private-soldier [the com-

12. Δ᾽ ὁ ἀνὴρ
mander and private soldier are alike inefficient]. But the man

μὲν φίλος ἄξιος πολλοῦ
(Cyrus) (is) indeed (a) friend worthy of-much (most valuable friend)

ᾧ ἂν ᾖ φίλος, δὲ χαλεπώτατος
(to those) to-whom he may be (a) friend, but (a) most-bitter

ἐχθρὸς, ᾧ ἂν ᾖ πολέμος· ἔχει δὲ καὶ
enemy, (to those) to-whom he may be (an) enemy; he-has — also

δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἱππικὴν, καὶ ναυτικήν,
(a) force both foot (infantry) and cavalry, also (a) naval

ἣν πάντες ὁμίως ὁρῶμέν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα·
(power), which we all alike see and also know;

καὶ γὰρ δοκοῦμέν μοι καθῆσθαι
and (this is not strange) for we-seem to-me | to-sit [to be encamped]

οὐδὲ πόῤῥο αὐτοῦ· ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὅ τι
not-indeed far-from him; wherefore (it is) time to-say what —

τις γιγνώσκει εἶναι ἄριστον. Εἰπὼν ταῦτα
any-one knows (thinks) to-be better. Saying this

ἐπαύσατο.
he finished.

13. Ἐκ τούτο δ᾽ ἀνίσταντο, οἱ μὲν ἐκ
Upon this then (several) rose (to speak), — (some) indeed —

τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέξοντες ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον,
— of-their-own-accord, | (*about*)-saying [to express] what they-thought

καὶ οἱ δὲ ἐγκέλευστοι ὑπ᾽ ἐκείνου
(of affairs) and — (others) indeed requested by him

ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἴη ἡ ἀπορία
[Clearchus] (spoke) pointing-out what might-be the difficulty

ἄνευ τῆς γνώμης Κύρου καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι.
without the consent of-Cyrus both to-remain and to-go.

14. Δὲ εἷς δὴ προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν πορεύ-
And one indeed pretending to-be-eager to-

εσθαι ὡς τάχιστα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, εἶπε, (that)
proceed as quickly-as-possible to — Greece, said,

ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς μὲν ἑλέσθαι
other commanders — | to-have-been-chosen [should be chosen]

ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ Κλέαρχος μὴ βούλεται
as quickly-as-possible, if Clearchus is (was) not willing

ἀπάγειν· δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀγοράζεσθαι,
to-lead-them-back; (that) also the necessities-of-life are-to-be-bought,

δ' ἦν ἡ ἀγορὰ ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ στρατεύματι,
for there-was — (a) market in the barbarian army,

καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι· δ' ἐλθόντας
and-also (the) baggage-is-to-be-packed-up; and (that-they), going

Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν·
to-Cyrus to-ask-for ships, in-order-that they-may-set-sail (they might

ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῷ ταῦτα, αἰτεῖν Κῦρον
sail home); if however he-does-not give these, to-ask Cyrus

ἡγεμόνα, ὅστις ἀπάξει διὰ τῆς φιλίας
(for a) guide, who will-lead (them back) through the friendly

χώρας. Ἐὰν δὲ μηδὲ διδῷ ἡγεμόνα,
countries. If however he-does not-even give (them) (a) guide,

συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην,
(they are) to-form-themselves-in-battle-order — as-quickly-as-possible,

καὶ δὲ πέμψαι προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα,
and also | to-have-sent hereafter-preoccupying the heights

ὅπως
[and also to send men to take possession of the heights in advance], so-that

μήτε Κῦρος νήτε οἱ Κίλικες ὧν ἔχομεν
neither Cyrus nor the Cilicians of-whom (said he) we-have

πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἀνηρπακό-
many-prisoners and much property having-taken-it-away-from-

τες μὴ καταλαβόντες φθάσωσι.
them | may not having-seized-upon have-occupied [may not have antic-

Οὗτος μὲν δὴ
ipated us, in taking possession of these heights]. Thus indeed —

τοιαῦτα εἶπε· δὲ μετὰ τοῦτον
(in) this (manner) he-spoke (addressed them); but after this

Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον.
(him) Clearchus spoke just-so-much (as follows).

15. Μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω ὡς μὲν ἐμὲ στρατη-
Let no-one of-you say that — | I (am) about-lead-

γήσοντα ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν·
ing-the-army (in) this the command (thereof) (that I will
γὰρ ἐνορῶ πολλὰ
undertake this command); for I-perceive many-things (see many rea-
δι' ἃ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον ἐμοὶ· δ'
sons) on-account-of which this must not be-done by-me; but
ὡς πείσομαι ᾗ μάλιστα δυνατὸν, τῷ ἀνδρὶ
(let him say) that I-shall-obey as much-as possible, the man
ὧ ἂν ἕλησθε, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἐπίσταμαι
whom you may choose, that you-may-see that also I-know-how
ἄρχεσθαι, καὶ ὥς τις μάλιστα ἄλλος
to-be-commanded, | and even-thus — as-much-as (any) other
ἀνθρώπων. 16. Μετὰ τοῦτων ἄλλος
of-men [as well as any other man]. After this (him) another
ἀνέστη ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τῆν εὐήθειαν τοῦ
arose (to speak) pointing-out — the folly — (of him)
κελεύοντος αἰτεῖν τὰ πλοῖα, ὥσπερ
advising (who advised them) to-ask — (for) ships, just-as-if
Κύρου μὴ ποιουμένου τὸν στόλον πάλιν,
Cyrus would not hereafter | be-making the fleet return
δ' ἐπιδεικνὺς ὡς εὔηθες εἴη
[order the fleet to return], also showing how foolish it-would-be
αἰτεῖν ἡγεμόνα παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λυμαινό-
to-ask-for (a) guide from this (very person) whom we-are-frus-
μεθα τὴν πρᾶξιν.
trating (in) — (his) undertaking (whose plans we are frustrating).
Καὶ δὲ εἰ πιστεύσομεν τῷ ἡγεμόνι ᾧ Κῦρος ἂν
And also if we-shall-trust the guide whom Cyrus may
διδῷ, τί κωλύει Κῦρον καὶ κελεύειν τὰ
give, what prevents (that) Cyrus may also order the
ἄκρα προκαταλαμβάνειν ἡμῖν;
heights | to-preoccupy for-us [from giving orders to occu-
17. Γὰρ ἐγὼ μὲν ὀκνοίην
py the heights before we reach them]? For I indeed shall-be-re-
ἂν ἐμβαίνειν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, ἃ δοίη ἡμίν,
luctant — to-embark on (any) — vessels, which he-might-give us,

μὴ καταδύσῃ ἡμᾶς αὐταῖς ταῖς τριήρεσι·
lest he-should-sink us (together) with-these — galleys

ἂν δὲ φοβοίμην ἕπεσθαι τῷ ἡγεμόνι
themselves; I should indeed be-afraid to-follow the guide

ᾧ δοίη, μὴ ἀγάγῃ ἡμᾶς ὅθεν
whom he-might-give, lest he-might-lead us (into a place) from-which it-

οὐχ ἔσται οἷόν τε ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν
will not be possible — to-escape; | I-would-wish — —

ἀπιὼν, Κύρου ἄκοντος, ἀπελθών λαθεῖν
departing, Cyrus (being) unwilling, depart to-have-concealed

αὐτὸν·
him [I would rather, if departing against the will of Cyrus, depart

ὃ ἐστιν οὐ δυνατόν. 18. Ἀλλ' ἐγώ φημὶ ταῦτα
without his knowledge]; which is not possible. But I say (that) these (propositions)

μὲν εἶναι φλυαρίας· δὲ μοι δοκεῖ ἄνδρας, οἵτινες
indeed are absurdities; but to-me it-seems (my advice is) (that) men (certain persons), who

ἐπιτήδειοι, ἐλθόντας πρὸς Κῦρον σὺν Κλεάρχῳ
(are) fit, having-gone to Cyrus with Clearchus

ἐρωτᾶν ἐκεῖνον τί βούλεται
to-ask (should ask) him (for) what (purpose) he-wishes

χρῆσθαι ἡμῖν· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἡ πρᾶξις ᾖ παραπλησία
to-employ us; and if indeed the undertaking be similar

οἵαπερ καὶ τρόσθεν ἐχρῆτο τοῖς ξένοις, καὶ
(to that) in-which he — before employed — foreign-troops, and

ἡμᾶς ἕπεσθαι, καὶ μὴ εἶναι
(that) we (should) follow (him), and (that we might) not be

κακίους τῶν πρόσθεν συνα-
worse (appear more cowardly) (than) — (those) | before going-

ναβάντων τοῦτῳ. 19. Ἐὰν δὲ ἡ πρᾶξις φαίνηται μείζων τῆς πρόσθεν,
up with-him [who previously went up with him]. But if the (present) undertaking may-seem greater (than) the former,

καὶ ἐπιπονωτέρα, καὶ ἐπικινδυνοτέρα, ἀξιοῦν
and more-difficult, and more-dangerous, (then that we) ask

ἢ πείσαντα ἄγειν ἡμᾶς, ἢ
(him) either (that) having-persuaded (us) to-lead us (with him), or
πεισθέντα ἀφιέναι πρὸς
having-been-persuaded (by us) (he would allow us) to-depart to (a)
φιλίαν· γὰρ οὕτω καὶ ἑπόμενοι αὐτῷ φίλοι,
friendly (country); for thus also accompanying him (as) friends,
καὶ ἂν ἑποίμεθα πρόθυμοι, καὶ ἀπιόντες
we also may accompany (him) (as) zealous (supporters), and leaving
ἂν ἀπίοιμεν ἀσφαλῶς· δεῦρο ἀναγ-
(him) we may depart in safety; (that) here | they-have-
γεῖλαι ὅ τι δ' ἂν λέγῃ πρός ταῦτα·
announced [they report]— what (he) — may say to these
δ' ἡμᾶς ἀκούσαντας βουλεύεσθαι πρός
(things); and we having-heard (it) to-deliberate upon
ταῦτα. 20. Ἔδοξε
these (things) (make our plans accordingly). | It-seemed-
ταῦτα, καὶ
good (respecting) these-things [these suggestions were approved], and
ἑλόμενοι ἄνδρας πέμπουσι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ, οἳ
having-chosen men they-send (them) with Clearchus, who
ἠρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ
asked Cyrus | (respecting) the (things) were-seeming (good) to-
στρατιᾷ. Ὁ δ'
the army [the questions agreed upon by the army]. Who —
ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόναν ἄνδρα
answered, that he-hears (that) Abrocomas (a) man
ἐχθρὸν εἶναι ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ Εὐφράτῃ, ἀπέχοντα
hostile (to him) is on the river Euphrates, being-distant
δώδεκα σταθμούς· ἔφη οὖν βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν
twelve days'-march; he-said(that)therefore he-wished to-march
πρὸς τοῦτον· κἂν μὲν ᾖ ἐκεῖ ἔφη
against this (him); and-if — he-(should be) there he-said (that)
χρῄζειν ἐπιθεῖναι τὴν δίκην αὐτῷ, δ' ἢν
he-was-anxious to-have-inflicted — punishment on-him, but if
φεύγῃ, ἡμεῖς βουλευσόμεθα ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα.
he-retreats, we will-consult there in-reference-to these-things

Οἱ αἱρετοὶ ἀκούσαντες
(how to proceed). The delegates (men who were chosen) having-heard
δὲ ταῦτα ἀγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρα-
— these-things (this answer) reported (it) to-the sol-
τιώταις· δὲ τοῖς μὲν ἦν ὑποψία ὅτι
diers; but — (to them) indeed there-was suspicion that
ἄγει πρὸς βασιλέα, δὲ ὅμως ἐδόκει
he-is-leading (them) against (the) king, but however it-seemed
ἕπεσθαι. Προραιτοῦσι δὲ μισθὸν·
(to them best) to-accompany (him). They-ask-for-more — wages;
ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται δώσειν πᾶσι ἡμιόλιον
— — Cyrus promised to-give-hereafter to-all the-half-more
οὗ ἔφερον πρότερον,
(than that) which they-had-received before (half as much again
ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία
as they received before), (that is) instead of (a) daric three
ἡμιδαρεικα τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· δὲ ὅτι
half-darics (a) — month — to (each) soldier; but that
ἄγοι ἐπὶ βασιλέα, οὐδεὶς
he-might-be-leading (them) against (the) king, no-one
ἤκουσεν, οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα γε ἔν τῷ φανερῷ.
heard, not-even there (at least) — in public (publicly).

CHAPTER IV.

The army reaches Issi, the last city in Cilicia, at which the fleet then arrives. Cyrus proceeds into Syria, where two of the Greek captains, Xenias and Pasion, desert the expedition; the good feeling of Cyrus, in forbearing to pursue them, renders the other Greeks more willing to accompany him. He arrives at Thapsacus on the Euphrates, where he discloses the real object of his expedition to the Greek troops, who express discontent, but are induced by fresh promises, and the example of Menon, to cross the river.

1. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει δύο σταθμοὺς
Thence (Cyrus) proceeds two days'-march (a distance of)
δέκα παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Ψάρον, τὸ
ten parasangs, to the river Psarus, the
εὖρος οὗ ἦν τρία πλέθρα. Ἐντεῦθεν
width of-which was three plethra (three hundred feet). Thence

ἐξελαύνει ἕνα σταθμὸν πέντε παρασάγγας ἐπὶ
he-proceeds one day's-march (a distance of) five parasangs to
τὸν ποταμόν Πύραμον, τὸ εὖρος οὗ στάδιον.
the river Pyramus, the width of-which (is a) stadium.
Ἐνταῦθεν ἐξελαύνει δύο σταθμοὺς πεντε-
Thence he-proceeds two days'-march (a distance of) fif-
καίδεκα παρασάγγας εἰς Ἰσσούς, ἐσχάτην πόλιν
teen parasangs to Issi, the-last town
τῆς Κιλικίας, ἐπι τῇ θαλάττῃ, οἰκουμένην,
— in-Cilicia, (situated) on the sea (coast), well-inhabited,
μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. 2. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς
large and wealthy. Here they-remained three
ἡμέρας· καὶ αἱ τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε νῆες ἐκ
days; and the thirty and five ships from
Πελοποννήσου παρῆσαν Κύρῳ,
Peloponnesus were-present (for) Cyrus [arrived at Cyrus' camp],
καὶ ναύαρχος ἐπ' αὐταῖς Πυθαγόρας
and (the) admiral over them (was) Pythagoras (the)
Λακεδαιμόνιος· Δὲ Ταμὼς Αἰγύπτιος ἡγεῖτο
Lacedæmonian. But Tamos, (an) Egyptian, conducted
αὐτῶν ἐξ Ἐφέσου ἔχων πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν
them from Ephesus having (with him) five and twenty
ἑτέρας ναῦς Κύρου, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει
other ships (belonging to) Cyrus, with-which he-(had)-besieged
Μίλητον ὅτε ἦν φίλη Τισσαφέρνει, καὶ συνε-
Miletus when it-was friendly to-Tissaphernes, and he-
πολέμει Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτον. 3. Καὶ δὲ Χειρίσοφος ὁ
fought-with Cyrus against him. And also Cheirisophos the
Λακεδαιμόνιος παρῆν ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν,
Lacedæmonian was-present (came) on (board) the ships,
μετάπεμπτος ὑπὸ Κύρου, ἔχων ἑπτακοσίους ὁπλίτας,
having-been-sent-for by Cyrus, he-having seven-hundred heavy-armed
ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρῳ. Αἱ δέ
(soldiers), of-whom he-was-commander for Cyrus. The —
νῆες ὥρμουν κατὰ τὴν σκηνήν Κύρου. Ἐνταῦθα
ships (were) moored opposite the tent of-Cyrus. Here

καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες μισθοφόροι παρ' Ἀβροκόμᾳ,
also the Greek mercenaries (who were) with Abrocomas,
τετρακόσιοι ὁπλῖται, ἀποστάντες ἦλθον
four-hundred heavy-armed-men (in number), deserting-him went
παρὰ Κῦρον, καὶ συνεστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ βασιλέα.
to Cyrus, and joined-the-expedition against (the) king.

4. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει ἕνα σταθμὸν,
Hence he-proceeds one day's-march, (a distance of)
πέντε παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ πύλας τῆς Κιλι-
five parasangs, to (the) gates — of-
κίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. Ταῦτα δ' ἦσαν δύο
Cilicia and — of-Syria. There — were two
τείχη, καὶ τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν τὸ πρὸ
walls (fortresses), and the (one) within, namely (that) — before
τῆς Κιλικίας, Συέννεσις καὶ φυλακὴ Κιλίκων
— Cilicia, Syennesis and (a) guard of-Cilicians
εἶχε· δὲ τὸ ἔξω, το πρὸ τῆς Συρίας,
had (held); but the (one) without, — (that) before — Syria,
ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ βασιλέως φυλάττειν
it-was-reported (that a) guard of (the) king's (soldiers) defended-it
Διὰ μέσου δὲ τούτων ῥεῖ
(occupied). | Through (the) middle — of-these [between these two] flows
ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα εὖρος πλέθρου.
(the) river Carsus (by) name, (the) width (being a) plethrum.
Δὲ ἅπαν τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν
But the-entire — middle (space between) the walls was
τρεῖς στάδιοι· καὶ παρελθεῖν βίᾳ ἦν οὐ·
three stadia; and to-have-passed by-force was not (possible);
γὰρ ἡ πάροδος ἦν στενὴ, καὶ τὰ τείχη καθήκοντα
for the passage was narrow, and the walls extending
εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, ὕπερθεν δ' ἦσαν ἠλίβατοι
to the sea, above also were impassable
πέτραι· δὲ πύλαι ἐφειστήκεσαν ἐπὶ ἀμφοτέροις
rocks; and (the) gates stood-by (were-before) each
τοῖς τείχεσιν. 5. Ἕνεκα ταύτης τῆς
(of) the walls. (It was) on-account-of this —

παρόδου Κῦρος μετεπέμψατο τὰς ναῦς, ὅπως
passage (that) Cyrus sent-for the fleet, so-that
ἀποβιβάσειεν ὁπλίτας εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν,
he-might-disembark heavy-armed-men within and without the gates,
καὶ βιασάμενοι παρέλθοιεν τοὺς πολε-
and (who) having-forced (an entrance) might-pass-through the ene-
μίους, εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις
my, if they-might (still) guard — the Syrian
πύλαις ὅπερ ὁ Κῦρος ᾤετο ποιήσειν, τὸν Ἀβρο-
gates which — Cyrus thought would-be-done, — (since) Abro-
κόμαν ἔχοντα πολὺ στράτευμα. Δ' Ἀβροκόμας
comas having (had) (a) great army. But Abrocomas
οὐκ ἐποίησε τοῦτ', ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον
did not do this, but when he-heard (of) Cyrus
ὄντα ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης ἀπήλαυνε
being in Cilicia, having-retreated from Phœnicia he-proceeded
παρὰ βασιλέα ἔχων ὡς ἐλέγετο τριάκοντα
to (join the) king, having (with him) as it-was-said | thirty
μυριάδας στρατιᾶς.
ten-thousands (three hundred thousand) military (men).

6. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας ἕνα σταθ-
Hence (Cyrus) proceeds through Syria one day's-
μὸν πέντε παρασάγγας, εἰς Μυρίανδρον,
march (a distance of) five parasangs, to Myriandrus, (a)
πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ Φοινίκων.
town by the sea inhabited by Phœnicians.
Τὸ χωρίον ἦν δ' ἐμπόριον, καὶ πολλαί ὁλκά-
The country (this place) was also (a) mart, and many merchant-
δες ὥρμουν αὐτόθι. 7. Ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἑπτά
vessels arrived (lay at anchor) there. Here they-remained seven
ἡμέρας· καὶ Ξενίας, ὁ Ἀρκὰς στρατηγός, καὶ
days; and (here) Xenias, the Arcadian commander, and
Πασίων, ὁ Μεγαρεύς, ἐμβάντες εἰς πλοῖον, καὶ
Pasion, the Megarian, having-embarked in (a) ship, and
ἐνθέμενοι τὰ ἄξια πλείστου, ἀπέ-
having-placed-on-board — (their) effects of-the-greatest (value), they-

πλευσαν, ὡς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν φιλο-
sailed-away, as indeed to-the most they-thought having-

τιμηθέντες
been-made-jealous-of-their-honor [being actuated, as most thought, by

ὅτι Κῦρος εἴα τὸν Κλεαρχον ἔχειν
jealous feelings] because Cyrus allowed — Clearchus to-have

τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν, τοὺς
(retain) | the soldiers of-them [their soldiers], (namely) —

ἀπελθόντας παρὰ Κλέαρχον, ὡς ἀπιόντας
(those) deserting to Clearchus, | as departing

πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
back to — Greece [in the expectation of returning to Greece]

καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν
and not (march) against (the) king. | When — they-were

ἀφανεῖς λόγος διῆλθε
invisible [after their disappearance] (a) rumor went-through (the army)

ὅτι Κῦρος διώκοι αὐτοὺς τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ
that Cyrus would-follow them with (the) galleys; and —

μὲν εὔχοντο αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι ὡς ὄντας
(some) indeed prayed (that) they (might) be-taken as being

δολίους, οἱ δ' ᾤκτειρον εἰ ἀλώ-
perfidious (men), — (others) indeed pitied (them) if they-should-be-

σοιντο. 8. Δὲ Κῦρος συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς
captured. But Cyrus having-called-together the captains

εἶπε· "Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς,
said, "Xenias and Pasion have-left us,

ἀλλὰ γε εὖ μέντοι ἐπιστάσθωσαν,
but let-them at-least be well — assured (understand this),

ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδεδράκασι, γὰρ οἶδα
that they-have neither fled (clandestinely), for I-know

ὅπη οἴχονται, οὔτε ἀποπεφεύγασι, γὰρ ἔχω
where they-are-going, nor have-they-escaped, for I-have

τριήρεις ὥστε ἑλεῖν τὸ πλοῖον ἐκείνων.
galleys | in-order-to have-seized the ship of-them [to overtake

Ἀλλά, μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς ἔγωγε οὐκ διώξω
their ship]. But, by the gods I-certainly will-not-pursue

αὐτοὺς· οὐδ' οὐδείς ἐρεῖ, ὡς ἐγώ ἕως μὲν
them; nor (shall) any one say that I, as-long-as indeed

τις ἂν παρῇ χρῶμαι, δ'
any-one might remain-with (me), make-use (of his services), but

ἐπειδὰν βούληται ἀπιέναι συλλαβὼν αὐτοὺς καὶ
when he-may-desire to-leave (me), having-seized him, I both

κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ ἀποσυλῶ τὰ χρήματα.
ill treat (him) and despoil (him of his) — property.

Ἀλλὰ ἰόντων, εἰδότες ὅτι
But let-them-go, | they-having-known [with the consciousness] that

εἰσὶ κακίους περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ
they-are (have acted) worse towards us than we towards

ἐκείνους. Καίτοι ἔχω γε καὶ τέκνα καὶ
them. Although I have indeed both (the) children and

γυναῖκας αὐτῶν φρουρούμενα ἐν Τράλλεσι· ἀλλ'
wives of-them under-guard at Tralles; but

οὐδὲ στερήσονται τούτων, ἀλλ'
they-shall not be-deprived (even) of-these, but

ἀπολήψοντα ἕνεκα τῆς ἀρετῆς
they-shall-receive (them) (back) on-account-of — (their) good-conduct

περὶ ἐμὲ πρόσθεν." 9. Καὶ ὁ μὲν εἶπε
(service) towards me formerly." And — | he indeed said

ταῦτα· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες, εἴ τις καὶ
these [thus Cyrus spoke]; and the Greeks, if any (one) —

ἦν ἀθυμότερος πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν ἀκούοντες
was opposed to the ascent [expedition], hearing

τὴν ἀρετὴν Κύρου, συνεπορεύοντο ἥδιον
the noble-conduct of-Cyrus, accompanied (him) with-great-pleasure

καὶ προθυμότερον.
and with-greater-alacrity-of-mind (more readily).

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει τέτταρας
After these (occurrences) Cyrus advances four

σταθμοὺς εἴκοσιν παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν
days'-march, (a distance of) twenty parasangs, to the

ποταμόν Χάλον, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου,
river Chalus, (it) being the width of (a) plethrum (one hun-

δὲ πλήρη μεγάλων καὶ τραέων ἰχθύων, οὓς
dred feet) and full of-large and tame fish, which
οἱ Σύροι ἐνόμιζον θεοὺς, καὶ οὐκ εἴων
the Syrians considered (to be) gods, and did not allow (any one)
ἀδικεῖν οὐδὲ τὰς περιστεράς. Αἱ δὲ
to-hurt (either them) or the pigeons. The —
κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνουν ἦσαν Παρυσάτιδος
villages in which they-encamped | were of-Parysatis [belonged
δεδομέναι εἰς ζώνην.
to Parysatis], having-been-given (her) | for (her) girdle [for pin-money].

10. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει πέντε σταθμοὺς
Thence he-advances five days'-march (a distance of)
τριάκοντα παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ
thirty parasangs to | the springs [sources] of-the
ποταμοῦ Δάρδητος τὸ εὖρος οὗ πλέθρου.
river Dardes, the width of-which (is that) of (a) plethrum
(one hundred feet). Here were the palaces of-Belesys,
Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ βασίλεια Βελέσυος
τοῦ ἄρξαντος Συρίας, καὶ παράδεισος,
| the having-ruled-over [the ruler] of-Syria, and (a) park (garden),
very large and beautiful, having (containing) all how-
πάνυ μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα
much-so-ever (that) (the) seasons produce. But Cyrus laid-it-
ὧραι φύουσι. Δὲ Κῦρος αὐτὸν
waste and burned the palaces.
ἐξέκοψε καὶ κατέκαυσε τὰ βασίλεια.

11. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαυνει τρεῖς σταθμοὺς
Thence he-proceeds three days'-march, (a distance of)
fifteen parasangs, to the river
πεντεκαίδεκα παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν
Euphrates, (it) being (there) the width of-four stadia;
Εὐφράτην ὄντα το εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων·
and (there was a) city there, Thapsacus by-name, (which)
was-inhabited (and which was) large and wealthy. There
καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι Θάψακος ὀνόματι
ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων. Ἐνταῦθα

ἔμειναν πέντε ἡμέρας· καὶ Κῦρος μεταπεμψάμενος
they-remained five days; and Cyrus having-sent-for
τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἔλεγεν ὅτι
the captains of-the Greeks, said (told them) that
ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο εἰς Βαβυλῶνα
the road might-hereafter-be (the expedition would be) to Babylon
πρὸς μέγαν βασιλέα· καί κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν
against (the) great king; and he-orders them to-tell
ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις, καὶ ἀνα-
these (things) (state this fact) to-the soldiers, and to-
πείθειν ἕπεσθαι. 12. Δ' οἱ
persuade (them) to-follow (him). And who (the captains)
ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν
having-made [having called] (an) assembly (of the soldiers)
ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα. Δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται
communicated these (things to them). But the soldiers
ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς
were-angry with-the captains, and told them
πάλαι εἰδόντας ταῦτα
(that) having already-before known these-things, (that they)
κρύτειν· καὶ ἔφασαν
concealed (the facts from them); and they-said (that they would)
οὐκ ἰέναι, ἐὰν μή τις διδῷ χρήματα αὐτοῖς
not go, unless some-one should-give money to-them
ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς προτέροις ἀνα-
as also (had been given) to-the former (soldiers) having-
βᾶσι μετὰ Κύρου παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Κύρου,
gone-up with Cyrus to the father — of-Cyrus,
καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἰόντων ἐπὶ μάχην, ἀλλὰ τοῦ
and this (when) not going to battle, but the
πατρὸς καλοῦντος Κῦρον. 13. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ
father (merely) summoning Cyrus. The commanders
ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα Κύρῳ· δ' ὁ
reported these (facts) to-Cyrus; and who (in consequence)
ὑπέσχετο δώσειν πέντε μνᾶς ἀργυρίου ἑκάστῳ
promised to-give five minæ of-silver to-each

ἀνδρὶ, ἐπὰν ἥκωσι εἰς Βαβυλῶνα, καὶ τὸν
man, when they-arrived at Babylon, and — (their)
ἐντελῆ μισθὸν μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς
full pay until he should place (bring) the
Ἕλληνας πάλιν εἰς Ἰωνίαν. Τὸ πολὺ μὲν
Greeks back-again to Ionia. The most indeed (greater part)
δὴ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπείσθη.
— of-the Greek (force) was thus prevailed-upon (to accom-

pany him).

Δὲ Μένων, πρὶν εἶναι δῆλον τί οἱ ἄλλοι
But Menon, before | to-be [it is] evident what the other
στρατιῶται ποιήσουσι, πότερον ἕψονται Κύρῳ ἢ
soldiers will-do, whether they-will-follow Cyrus or
οὔ, συνέλλεξε τὸ στράτευμα αὑτοῦ χωρὶς
not, assembled | the army of-himself [his troops] apart
τῶν ἄλλων, καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε. **14.** Ἄνδρες
from-the rest, and spoke | these (things) [as follows]. Men,
ἐάν πεισθῆτε μοι, προτι-
if you-might-be-persuaded by-me (will follow my advice), you-will-
μήσεσθε ὑπὸ Κύρου πλέον τῶν ἄλλων στρατι-
be-honored by Cyrus more (than) the other sol-
ῶτων οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες, οὔτε
diers, (and this) without having either incurred-danger, or
πονήσαντες. Τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι:
having-toiled. What then do-I-ask | to-have-done (would I
Κῦρος νῦν δεῖται τοὺς Ἕλληνας
have you do)? Cyrus at-this-moment wishes the Greeks
ἕπεσθαι ἐπὶ βασιλέα· ἐγὼ οὖν φημι
to-accompany (him) against (the) king; I therefore say
πρὶν εἶναι δῆλον ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι
(suggest) | (that) before | to-be [it is] evident — what the other
Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρῳ ὑμᾶς χρῆναι
Greeks will-answer Cyrus, you to-behove [that you
διαβῆναι τον ποταμόν Εὐφράτην.
ought] to-have-crossed (to cross) the river Euphrates.

15. Γὰρ ἢν μὲν ψηφίσωνται ἕπεσθαι,
For if indeed they-should-determine by-ballot to-follow,

ὑμεῖς δόξετε εἶναι αἴτιοι, ἄρξαντες τοῦ
(then) you will-appear to-be (the) cause (of it), | having-begun of-the

διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὑμῖν ὡς
crossing-over [by being the first to cross the river], and to-you as

οὖσι προθυμοτάτοις Κῦρος εἴσεται
being most-prompt, Cyrus will-perceive (and acknowledge the)

χάριν, καὶ ἀποδώσει· δ' ἐπίσταται εἴ
favor, and will-repay (it); | but he-knows (how to do this) if

καὶ τις ἄλλος·
even-also any other (does) [for he knows how to repay an obligation, as

δ' ἢν οἱ ἄλλοι ἀποψηφίσωνται,
well as any other man]; but if the others should-ballot-against-it

ἅπαντες μὲν ἅπιμεν εἰς
(decide not to go with him), (we shall) all-of-us indeed | depart to

τοὔμπαλιν· δὲ χρήσεται ὑμῖν, ὡς
the-contrary [go back again]; but he-will-use (and employ) you, as

μόνοις πειθομένοις
alone being-persuaded (having alone complied with his wishes)

πιστοτάτοις καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ εἰς
(and as being) most-trustworthy both in garrisons and for

λοχαγίας, καὶ οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φιλοι Κύρου τεύξεσθε
captaincies, and-also I-know that as friends of-Cyrus you-will-obtain

οὑτινος ἄλλου ἂν δέησθε. 16. Ἀκού-
whatever else you may require. (The soldiers), having-

σαντες ταῦτα, ἐπείθοντο, καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν
heard these (words), were-persuaded, and crossed-over before

τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ Κῦρος
the others had-given-their-answer. But when Cyrus

ᾔσθετο διαβεβηκότας,
perceived (them) having-crossed-over (that they had crossed) (the river),

τε ἥσθη, καὶ πέμψας Γλοῦν τῷ
he not-only was-(much)-pleased, but-also, having-sent Glus to-the

στρατεύματι εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ μέν ὦ ἄνδρες,
army (of Menon), said, I indeed, O men,

ἤδη ἐπαινῶ ὑμᾶς· δὲ μελήσει ἐμοὶ ὅπως καὶ
now praise you; | but it-shall-be-a-care to-me how also

ὑμεῖς ἐπαινέσητε ἐμὲ,
you might-praise me [but I will take care that you also shall

ἢ μηκέτι νομίξετε με Κῦρον. 17. Οἱ
praise me], or no-longer consider me Cyrus. The

στρατιῶται ὄντες δὴ μὲν ἐν μεγάλαις ἐλπίσι
soldiers being now indeed in great hopes

εὔχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυχῆσαι·
| wished him to-have-been-fortunate [prayed that he might suc-

δὲ Μένωνι καὶ ἐλέγετο πέμψαι δῶρα μεγα-
ceed]; and to-Menon also he-was-said to-have-sent presents on-a-

λοπρεπῶς. Δὲ, ποιήσας ταῦτα, διέβαινε·
magnificent-scale. And, having-done these (things), he-crossed-over

δὲ καὶ ἅπαν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα
(the river); and also all the other (the rest of the) army

συνείπετο αὐτῷ. Καὶ οὐδεὶς τῶν διαβαινόντων
followed him. And no-one — (of those) crossing

τὸν ποταμὸν ἐβρέχθη ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀνωτέρω
the river was-wet by the river higher

τῶν μαστῶν. 18. Δὲ οἱ Θαψακηνοὶ
(than) (above) the breasts. But the people-of-Thapsacus

ἔλεγον, ὅτι οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς οὐ πώποτε γένοιτο
said that this (*the*) river never at-any-time might-be (had

διαβατος πεζῇ εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ
been) fordable on-foot | if not [except] then, but (only by means

πλοίοις· ἃ Ἀβροκόμας προϊὼν τότε
of) in-boats; which Abrocomas going-before had then

κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα Κῦρος μὴ διαβῇ.
burned, that Cyrus might not (be able to) cross-over (the

Δὴ ἐδόκει εἶναι θεῖον, καὶ
river). (This) then seemed to-be (a) divine (interposition), and (that)

τὸν ποταμὸν σαφῶς ὑποχωρῆσαι Κύρῳ ὡς
the river plainly receded (made way) for-Cyrus as

βασιλεύσοντι. 19. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει
about-reigning (the future king). Hence he-proceeds

διὰ τῆς Συρίας ἐννέα σταθμοὺς, πεντήκοντα
through — Syria nine days'-march, (a distance of) fifty
παρασάγγας, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν
parasangs, and they-came to the river
Ἀράξην. Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν πολλαὶ κῶμαι μεσταὶ
Araxes. Here there-were many villages full
σίτου καὶ οἴνου. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας,
of-corn and wine. Here they-remained three days,
καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
and provisioned (collected provisions for) (the army).

CHAPTER V.

The army proceeds through Arabia, having the Euphrates on the right. They suffer from want of provisions, and many of the beasts of burden perish; but supplies are procured from the opposite bank of the Euphrates. A dispute occurs between Clearchus and Menon, which is quelled by Cyrus.

1. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας, ἔχων
THENCE he-advances through — Arabia, having
τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην ἐν δεξιᾷ, πέντε ἐρήμους
the river Euphrates on (the) right, five desert
σταθμοὺς,
stations [five days' march through the desert], (a distance of)
τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε παρασάγγας. Δὲ ἐν τούτῳ
thirty and five parasangs. But in this
τῳ τόπῳ ἡ γῆ ἦν μὲν πεδίον, ἅπαν
— district-of-country the ground was indeed (a) plain, entirely
ὁμαλὸν ὥσπερ θάλαττα, δὲ πλῆρες ἀψινθίου,
level as (the) sea, and full of-wormwood,
εἰ δὲ καὶ τι ἄλλο ὕλης ἢ καλάμου
if indeed also any other (kind) of-shrub or reed
ἐνῆν, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη ὥσπερ ἀρώματα·
was-(grew)-on-it, all were (as) sweet-smelling as perfumes;
δ' οὐδὲν δένδρον ἐνῆν. 2. Δὲ
but no tree was-there (grew there). But (here there
παντοῖα θηρία, πλεῖστοι μὲν ἄγριοι
were) various wild-animals, the-most (numerous) indeed (were) wild

ὄνοι, δὲ πολλοὶ στρουθοὶ οἱ μεγάλοι· δὲ καὶ
asses, also many | sparrows the large [ostriches]; and also
ὠτίδες καὶ δορκάδες ἐνῆσαν· δὲ οἱ ἱππεῖς ἐνίοτε
bustards and antelopes were-there; and the horsemen sometimes
ἐδίωκον ταῦτα τὰ θηρία. Καὶ μὲν οἱ ὄνοι
pursued (hunted) these — wild-animals. And indeed the wild-asses,
ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες
when any-one might-pursue (them), having-run-forward (some distance)
ἔστασαν· γὰρ ἔτρεχον πολὺ θᾶττον τῶν
stood-still; for they-ran much (more) swiftly (than) the
ἵππων· καὶ πάλιν ἐπεὶ οἱ ἵπποι πλησιάζοιεν
horses; and again when the horses might-approach
ἐποίουν ταὐτόν· καὶ ἦν οὐ λαβεῖν
they-did the-same (thing); and it-was not (possible) to-take (catch)
εἰ μὴ οἱ ἱππεῖς διαστάντες θηρῷεν
(them), | if not [unless] the horsemen stationed-at-intervals should-hunt
διαδεχόμενοι τοῖς ἵπποις. Δὲ
(them), succeeding (one another) with (fresh) — horses. And
τὰ κρέα τῶν ἁλισκομένων ἦν παραπλήσια
the flesh of — (those) caught was like
τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, δὲ ἀπαλώτερα. 3. Δὲ οὐδεὶς
the deer's (flesh), but more-tender. But no-one
ἔλαβε Στρουθὸν: δὲ οἱ τῶν ἱππέων διώ-
caught (an) ostrich; | and — (those) of-the horsemen having-
ξαντες ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο·
pursued [and those horsemen that pursued them] quickly desisted
γὰρ ἀπεσπᾶτο πολὺ
(from the pursuit); | for it-withdrew-itself much [for it far outstripped
φεύγουσα, χρωμένη μὲν τοῖς
the horsemen] fleeing (in its flight), using — —
ποσὶ δρόμῳ, δὲ ταῖς πτέρυξιν αἴρουσα,
(its) feet in-running, and — (its) wings raising (them)
ὥσπερ ἱστίῳ. Δὲ ἔστι λαμβάνειν
as (like) (a) sail. But it-is (possible) to-take
τὰς ὠτίδας, ἄν τις ἀνιστῇ ταχὺ·
(capture) the bustards, if any-one should-start (them) up suddenly;

γὰρ πέτονται βραχύ ὥσπερ πέρδικες, καὶ
for they-fly (a) short (distance) like partridges, and
ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύουσι. Δὲ τὰ κρέα αὐτῶν ἦν
soon tire. But the flesh of-them was
ἥδιστα.
very-delicious.

4. Πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφι-
Marching — through this — country, they-
κοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Μάσκαν, τὸ εὖρος
come to the river Mascas, the width
πλεθριαῖον. Ἐνταῦθα ἦν μεγάλη
(of which is a) plethrum. Here there-was (a) large
ἐρήμη πόλις, δ' ὄνομα αὐτῇ Κορσωτή·
deserted city, (the) name (*to-it*) (of it) (was) Corsote;
δ' αὕτη περιεῤῥεῖτο ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα
| and this (city) was-flowed-round by the Mascas in (a)
κύκλῳ. Ἐνταῦθ'
circle [was entirely surrounded by the Mascas]. Here
ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
they-remained three days and provisioned (the army).

5. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς καὶ δέκα
Thence he (Cyrus) proceeds | three and ten [thirteen]
ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς
desert stations (days' march through the desert), (a distance of)
ἐνενήκοντα παρασάγγας, ἔχων τὸν ποταμὸν
ninety parasangs, (still) having (keeping) the river
Εὐφράτην ἐν δεξιᾷ, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας.
Euphrates on (the) right, and he-arrives at (the) Gates.
Ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑπο-
In these — stations (marches) many of-the beasts-
ζυγίων ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· γὰρ ἦν οὐ χόρτος
of-burden perished of hunger; for there-was no grass
οὐδὲ οὐδὲν ἄλλο δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ἡ ἅπασα χώρα
nor any — (kind of) tree, but the entire country
ἦν ψιλή· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικοῦντες
was bare (destitute of vegetation); | the — inhabiting [the

ὀρύττοντες καὶ τοιοῦντες
inhabitants of this desert district], quarrying and fashioning
ἀλέτας ὄνους παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν, ἦγον
| grinding upper-stones [millstones] near the river, carried
εἰς Βαβυλῶνα καὶ ἐπώλουν, καὶ ἀντα-
(them) to Babylon and sold (them), and buying-
γοράζοντες σῖτον ἔζων. 6. Ὁ δὲ σῖτος ἐπελιπε
in-return corn lived (upon it). — But corn failed
τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἦν οὐ πρίασθαι
the army, and it-was not (possible) to-buy (any)
εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδίᾳ ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ βαρ-
| if not [unless] in the Lydian market among the bar-
βαρικῷ Κύρου, τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων ἢ
barian (forces) of-Cyrus, the capithe of-wheat-flour or
ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. Ὁ δὲ σίγλος
barley-meal (being sold for) four sigli. The — siglus
δύναται ἑπτὰ Ἀττικούς ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιοβόλιον·
is-worth seven Attic oboli and (a) half-obolus;
δὲ ἡ καπίθη ἐχώρει δύο Ἀττικὰς χοίνικας.
and the capithe contained two Attic chœnices.
Οὖν οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο ἐσθίοντες κρέα.
| Therefore the soldiers continued eating flesh
7. Ἦν δὲ
[therefore the soldiers lived entirely on meat]. There-were also (some)
τουτων τῶν σταθμῶν, οὓς ἤλαυνε
of-these — days'-marches, which he-urged-on (made)
πάνυ μακροὺς, ὁπότε βούλοιτο διατελέσαι
very long, whenever he-might-wish | to-finish-the-road [to
ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ, ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. Καὶ δή
get] either to water, or to pasture. And indeed
ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος δυσπο-
once-when | narrow-place and mud having-appeared difficult-
ρεύτου ταῖς ἁμάξαις,
of-passage for-the wagons [a narrow and muddy road appeared,
ὁ Κῦρος ἐπέστη συν
almost impassable for the wagons), — Cyrus stood (halted) with

τοῖς ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις περὶ
the most-distinguished and most-wealthy about

αὐτὸν, καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα, λαβόντας
him, and ordered Glus and Pigres, having-taken

τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ, συνεκβιβάζειν
(a part) of-the barbarian army, to-help-extricate

τὰς ἁμάξας. 8. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ ποιεῖν
the wagons. But when they-seemed to-him to-do (this)

σχολαίως, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς κρα-
tardily (too slowly), as-if in-anger he-ordered the most-

τίστους Πέρσας περὶ αὐτὸν συνεπισπεῦσαι
distinguished Persians about him | together-to-have-accelerated (to

τὰς ἁμάξας. Ἔνθα δὴ ἦν θεάσασθαι
assist in hastening on) the wagons. There then was to-be-seen

τι μέρος τῆς εὐταξίας.
some portion (specimen) (of) — good-order (and discipline).

Γὰρ ῥίψαντες τοὺς πορφυροῦς κάνδυς, ὅπου
For having-thrown-off — (their) purple cloaks, where

ἕκαστος ἔτυχεν ἑστηκώς ἵεν-
each ‖ happened having-been-standing [to be standing] | they-sent-

το, ὥσπερ τις ἂν δράμοι
themselves [they rushed], as | any-one might run [on a race]

περὶ νίκης, καὶ κατὰ μάλα πρανοῦς γηλόφου,
for victory, and down (a) very steep hill,

ἔχοντες τε τούτους τοὺς πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας,
having also (on) those — rich (costly) vests,

καὶ τὰς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, δὲ καὶ
and — variegated (embroidered) trowsers, and also

ἔνιοι στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις,
some-of-them (having) chains around — (their) necks,

καὶ ψέλλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ
and bracelets on — (their) | hands [wrists]; directly —

εἰσπηδήσαντες σὺν τούτοις εἰς τὸν πηλὸν
having-leaped with these (equipments) into the mud,

ἐξεκόμισαν τὰς ἁμάξας μετεώρους θᾶττον ἢ ὡς
they-brought-out the wagons lifted-up quicker than (*even thus*)

τις ἂν ᾤετο. 9. Δὲ τὸ σύμπαν
any-one might have-thought (possible). And, (on) the whole,
Κῦρος ἦν δῆλος σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν
| Cyrus was evident hastening all the road [Cyrus
καὶ οὐ διατρίβων, μὴ
was evidently hastening the march], and not delaying, unless
ὅπου ἐκαθέζετο ἕνεκα ἐπισιτισμοῦ ἤ τινος ἄλλου
where he-halted for-sake-of provisions or for-some other
ἀναγκαίου, νομίξων ὅσῳ μὲν
necessary (purpose), thinking (that) by-how-much —
θᾶττον ἔλθοι τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρῳ
the-more-speedily he-might-go, by-so-much the-more-unprepared
μαχεῖσθαι βασιλεῖ,
(he might come) to-fight (the) king (the quicker he went, the

more unprepared he would find the king when he encountered him),
δὲ ὅσῳ σχολαιότερον τοσούτῳ
and by-how-much the-more-slowly (he might march), by-so-much
πλέον στράτευμα συναγείρεσθαι
the-more (numerous) army is-to-(would)-be-collected for (the)
βασιλεῖ. Καὶ δ' ἦν συνιδεῖν τῷ προσέ-
king. | And also it-was to-perceive to-the direct-
χοντι τὸν νοῦν
ing the mind [and it might readily be perceived by any one
ἡ ἀρχὴ βασιλέως οὖσα
directing his attention to it] | the empire of (the) king (as) being
ἰσχυρὰ μὲν
strong indeed [that the empire of the king was indeed strong] from
πλήθει χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων,
(the) multitude (in extent of) territory and (the number) of-men
δὲ ἀσθενὴς τοῖς μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ
(inhabitants), but weak through-the length of-the roads and | in-the
διεσπάσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις, εἴ τις
to-have-separated [in the dispersion] (of) — (its) forces, if any-one
ἐποιεῖτο τὸν πόλεμον διὰ ταχέων.
(enemy) made — war (against it) by (rapid) (movements).

10. Δὲ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ Εὐφράτου,
But beyond (on the other side) the river Euphrates,

κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμούς
through (opposite) — | desert stations [their course through

ἦν εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη πόλις, δὲ
the desert] there-was (a) wealthy and large city, and

ὄνομα Χαρμάνδη. Ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται
(its) name (was) Charmande. From this (city) the soldiers

ἠγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια διαβαίνοντες
brought the necessaries-of-life (provisions), crossing-over

σχεδίας ὧδε· ἐπίμπλασαν κούφου χόρτου
on-temporary-rafts (made) thus; they-filled with | light grass

διφθέρας ἃς εἶχον στεγάσματα,
[hay] (the) skins, which they-had (as) covering (for their tents),

εἶτα συνῆγον καὶ συνέσπων
then they-united-together (the edges) and | drew (them) together

ὡς τὸ ὕδωρ μὴ ἅπτεσθαι τῆς
[sewed them] so-that the water (could) not (*to*)-touch the

κάρφης· ἐπὶ τούτων διέβαινον, καὶ ἐλάμβανον
hay; on these they-crossed-over, and procured

τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, τέ οἶνον πεποιημένον ἐκ τῆς
the necessaries, not-only wine made of the

βαλάνου τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνικος, καὶ σῖτον μελίνης·
fruit — from the palm-tree, but-also corn of-panic;

γὰρ τοῦτο ἦν πλεῖστον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.
for this was most-plentiful in — (this) country.

11. Δὲ ἐνταῦθα τῶν στρατιωτῶν τε τοῦ Μένωνος
And here the soldiers not-only — of-Menon

καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ἀμφιλεξάντων
but-also — (those) — of-Clearchus, having-been-disputing-about

τι, ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνας τὸν τοῦ
something, — Clearchus | having-judged [judging] the (soldier) —

Μένωνος ἀδικεῖν ἐνέβαλε πληγὰς·
of-Menon | to-do-wrong [to be in the wrong] inflicted blows (on-him);

δὲ ὁ ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ στράτευμα ἑαυτοῦ
but who (he) having-gone | to the army of-himself [to the

ἔλεγε·
quarters of his own troops] told (his comrades) [what had occurred];
δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες ἰσχυρῶς ἐχαλέ-
— the soldiers having-heard(this) were vehemently irri-
παινον, καὶ ὠργίζοντο τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. 12. Δὲ
tated, and enraged — (at) Clearchus. And (on)
τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν
the same day Clearchus, having-gone to the crossing
τοῦ ποταμοῦ, καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν ἀγοράν,
of-the river, and there having-inspected the market,
ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν ἑαυ-
he-rides-away (was returning on horseback) | to the tent of-him-
τοῦ διὰ τοῦ στρατεύματος Μένωνος, σὺν
self [to his own tent] through the army of-Menon, | with
ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· δὲ Κῦρος
(a) few (attendants, namely) (*the*) (those) about him; but Cyrus
οὔτω ἦκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι προσήλαυνε· δὲ
had not-yet come, but-was still advancing (on his march); but
τις τῶν στρατιωτῶν Μένωνος σχίζων ξύλα,
some-one of-the soldiers of-Menon (who was) splitting wood,
ὡς εἶδε τὸν Κλέαρχον διελαύνοντα, ἵησι
when he saw — Clearchus riding-through (the camp), throws (aims)
τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ αὐτος μὲν ἥμαρτεν
(at him) with — (his) axe; but this (he) indeed missed
αὐτοῦ· δ' ἄλλος λίθῳ καὶ ἄλλος,
him; but another (throws) (at him) with (a) stone and-also another,
εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομένης.
then many, (a) shout (uproar) (at the same time) having-ensued.
13. Δε ὁ καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα ἑαυτοῦ,
But — (Clearchus) takes-refuge | in the army of-himself
καὶ εὐθὺς παραγγέλλει εἰς
[in his own camp], and immediately calls [his men] to
τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς μὲν ὁπλίτας
— arms; and he-ordered | the — heavy-armed-men
οὐτοῦ μεῖναι θέν-
of-him [his heavy-armed men] | to-have-remained [to remain] having-

τας τὰς ἀστίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα· δὲ αὐτὸς
placed — (their) shields against — (their) knees; but he

λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾷκας καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας,
having-taken [taking] the Thracians and the horsemen

οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ
that were with-him in the army, more than

τετταράκοντα, δὲ οἱ πλεῖστοι τούτων
forty (in number), but the most of-these (were)

Θρᾷκες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ'
Thracians, advanced against the (troops) of-Menon, so (that)

ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλῆχθαι καὶ Μένωνα
they were-struck (with terror, as was) also Menon

αὐτὸν, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα. Δὲ καὶ οἱ
himself, and ran to — arms. But — (some)

ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγματι.
stood hesitating (perplexed) (about) the affair

(not knowing how to act under the circumstances).

14. Ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος, γὰρ ἔτυχε προσιὼν ὕστερος,
— But Proxenus, for he-happened approaching last

καὶ τάξις τῶν ὁπλι-
(in order) [who brought up the rear], and (a) division of-the heavy-

τῶν ἑπομένη αὐτῷ, ἄγων οὖν
armed-men following him, leading thereupon (his soldiers)

εὐθὺς εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρου
immediately into the middle of-both [into the space be-

ἔθετο τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλε-
tween both], stood (under) — arms, and begged of — Cle-

άρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. Δὲ ὁ
archus not to-do these (things). But — (Clearchus)

ἐχαλέπαινεν, ὅτι αὐτοῦ δεήσαντος ὀλίγου
was-indignant, because (when) he having-wanted little

καταλευσθῆναι,
to-have-been-stoned (had narrowly escaped stoning), (Proxenus)

λέγοι πράως τὸ πάθος αὐτοῦ
should speak mildly (of) the suffering of-him [his ill treatment]

ἐκέλευέ τε αὐτὸν ἐξίστασθαι ἐκ τοῦ μέσου.
he-ordered — him (then) to-stand-out from the middle.

15. Δὲ Κῦρος καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἐπῆει, καὶ
But Cyrus also at this (juncture) came-up, and

ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα· δ' εὐθὺς ἔλαβε
inquired-into the affair; — (then) he immediately took

τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας, καὶ σὺν τοῖς
— javelins in — (his) hands, and with — (those)

παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν, ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ
present of — (his) faithful-attendants, came hastening into the

μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε. 16. Κλέαρχε καὶ
midst, and speaks (addressed them) thus. O-Clearchus and

Πρόξενε, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες οἱ παρόντες,
Proxenus, and (you) the other Greeks who are-present,

ἴστε οὐκ ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. Γὰρ εἰ συνάψετε
you-know not what you-are-doing. For if you-shall-engage-in

τινα μάχην ἀλλήλοις, νομίξετε ἐμέ
any battle with-one-another, | think [be assured] (that) I

τε κατακεκόψεσθαι ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, καὶ
not-only will-instantly-be-cut-off in this (*the*) (very) day, but-also

ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ὕστερον ἐμοῦ· γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων
you not long after me; | for — our-affairs

ἐχόντων κακῶς
having badly [for if our affairs are in an unfavorable state]

πάντες οὗτοι βάρβαροι, οὓς ὁρᾶτε ἔσονται πολεμι-
all these barbarians that you-see will-be more-

ώτεροι ἡμῖν τῶν ὄντων
hostile to-us (than) — (those barbarians) | being [who are]

παρὰ βασιλεῖ. 17. Ὁ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας
with (the) king. — Clearchus hearing

ταῦτα ἐγένετο ἐν ἑαυτῷ·
these (remonstrances) | became in himself [recovered self-pos-

καὶ ἀμφότεροι παυσάμενοι
session]; and both (parties) having-ceased (from strife)

ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα κατὰ χώραν.
placed — (their) arms in (their respective) place (encampments).

CHAPTER VI.

Traces of the king's troops are perceived. Orontes, a Persian nobleman, a relative of Cyrus, offers to go forward with a body of cavalry, and lay an ambush for the king's army. Before he sets out, however, he is found to be in correspondence with the king, and is put to death.

1. Προϊόντων ἐντεῦθεν
PROCEEDING thence (as they advanced from this place) (the)

ἴχνια καὶ κόπρος ἵππων ἐφαίνετο· ὁ στίβος δ'
footsteps and dung of-horses appeared; the track indeed

εἰκάζετο εἶναι ὡς δισχιλίων ἵππων. Οὗτοι
was-conjectured to-be about (that) of-two-thousand horses. These

προϊόντες ἔκαιον καὶ χιλὸν καὶ τι ἄλλο εἴ
going-before burned both (the) fodder and anything else, if (it)

ἦν χρήσιμον. Ὀρόντης δὲ, Πέρσης ἀνήρ
was useful (to Cyrus.) Orontes indeed, (a) Persian man

τε προσήκων βασιλεῖ γένει, καὶ
not-only being-related to (the) king by-birth, but-also (as respects)

τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις
— warlike-affairs being considered among the most-distinguished of

Περσῶν, ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ, καὶ πρόσθεν
(the) Persians, plots-against Cyrus, — he had formerly

πολενήσας δὲ καταλλαγεὶς. 2. Οὗτος
been-at-war (with Cyrus), but had-become-reconciled. This (he)

εἶπε Κύρῳ εἰ δοίη αὐτῷ χιλίους ἱππέας, ὅτι
said to-Cyrus, if he-would-give him a-thousand horsemen, that

ἐνεδρεύσας ἂν ἢ κατακάνοι τοὺς ἱππέας
having-lain-in-ambush he would either cut-off the horsemen

προκατακαίοντας ἢ ἕλοι πολλοὺς αὐτῶν
burning-down-everything-before-them, or might-take many of-them

ζῶντας, καὶ κωλύσειε ἐπιόντας τοῦ καίειν,
alive, | and would-hinder (them) going-against of-the to-burn

[and would prevent them as they advanced from burning everything

καὶ ποιήσειεν, ὥστε
before them], | and would-make [and would bring it to pass], that

αὐτούς ἰδόντας τὸ στράτευμα Κύρου μήποτε
they having-seen the army of-Cyrus would never
δύνασθαι διαγγεῖλαι βασιλεῖ. Δὲ
be-able | to-have-told [to report] (it) to (the) king. | But
τῷ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα ἐδόκει εἶναι
to— Cyrus hearing these (things) it-seemed to-be
ὠφέλιμα,
advantageous [but Cyrus hearing these propositions approved of them
καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν
as being advantageous], and he-requested him to-take
μέρος παρ' ἑκάστου τῶν ἡγε-
(a) part (of the troops) from each of-the (different) com-
μόνων. 3. Ὁ δ' Ὀρόντης, νομίσας τοὺς ἱππέας
manders. — But Orontes, having-thought the horsemen
εἶναι ἑτοίμους αὐτῷ, γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ
to-be (were) ready for-him, writes (a) letter to
βασιλέα, ὅτι ἥξοι ἔχων πλείστους
(the) king, (saying) that he-would-come having the-most
ἱππέας ὡς ἂν δύνηται·
horsemen that he might be-able (to obtain) [that he would come to
ἀλλὰ
him with the greatest number of horsemen he could obtain]; but
ἐκελευε φράσαι τοῖς ἱππεῦσιν ἑαυτοῦ
he-requested (him) | to-have-told the horsemen of-him [to
ὑποδέχεσθαι αὐτὸν ὡς φίλιον.
direct his own cavalry] to-receive him as (a) friend.
Καὶ ἐνῆν ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ δὲ ὑπομνήματα
And there | was [were] in the letter not-only reminiscences
πρόσθεν φιλίας καὶ πίστεως. Δίδωσι ταύτην
of-his-former friendships but-also of-his-fidelity. He-gave this
τὴν ἐπιστολὴν πιστῷ ἀνδρί, ὡς ᾤετο· δὲ ὁ
the letter to (a) faithful man, as he-supposed; but —
λαβὼν δίδωσι Κύρῳ. 4. Δὲ ὁ
(he) taking (the letter) gave (carried) (it) to-Cyrus. But —
Κῦρος ἀναγνοὺς αὐτὴν συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόντην, καὶ
Cyrus, having-read it, arrests Orontes, and

συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν σκηνὴν ἑαυτοῦ τοὺς
be-summoned | in the tent of-himself [to his own tent] the
ἑπτά ἀρίστους Περσῶν τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν·
seven most-distinguished of (the) Persians — about him;
καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων
and he ordered the commanders of-the Greeks
ἀγαγεῖν ὁπλίτας, δὲ θέσθαι τούτους
to-bring-up heavy-armed-men, and | to-have-placed [to place] these
τὰ ὅπλα περὶ τὴν σκηνήν αὐτοῦ. Δὲ οἱ
— (under) arms around | the tent of-him [his-tent]. And —
ἐποιήσαν ταῦτα ἀγαγόντες
(they) did these (things) (as he desired), bringing (with them)
ὡς τρισχιλίους ὁπλίτας. 5. Δὲ καὶ
about three-thousand heavy-armed-men. And he also
παρεκάλεσε εἴσω Κλέαρχον σύμβουλον, ὅς γε
called within Clearchus (as) counsellor, who at-least
ἐδόκει καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις μάλιστα
seemed both to-himself and the others to-be the-most
προτιμηθῆναι τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐξῆλθεν
honored of-the Greeks. But when he-came-out
εξήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις ὡς τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ
he-related to — (his) friends how the trial —
Ὀρόντου ἐγένετο· γὰρ ἦν οὐκ ἀπόῤῥητον.
of-Orontes was (conducted); for there-was no secrecy
Ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου ὧδε.
(enjoined). He-said — (that) Cyrus began the subject thus

(thus opened the proceedings):

6. Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως
"I-have-summoned you, (*O-men*), (my) friends, in-order-that
βουλευόμενος σὺν ὑμῖν πράξω περὶ τουτουί
(on) consulting with you I-will-do respecting this
Ὀρόντου τοῦτο ὅ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ
Orontes | that whatever just is [that which is just], both
πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων. Γὰρ πρῶτον
before gods and before men. For in-the-first-place

μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκε τοῦτον εἶναι
indeed — my father gave (appointed) this (him) to-be
ὑπήκοον ἐμοί. Δ' ἐπεὶ ταχθείς, ὡς αὐτός
subject to-me. But when having-been-ordered, as he himself
ἔφη, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ, οὗτος ἐπολε-
said, by (*the*) my brother, this (Orontes) made-war-
μησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἐν Σάρδεσι, καὶ
against me (he) having the citadel in Sardis, and
ἐγὼ προσπολεμῶν αὐτὸν ἐποίησα
I making-war-against him | made (it so) [carried it on so]
ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ παύσασθαι
that (it) seemed (best) to-this (person) to-have-put-an-end (to) (to
τοῦ πολέμου πρὸς ἐμέ, καὶ ἔλαβον
desist from) the war against me, and I-took
δεξιὰν καὶ ἔδωκα. 7. Μετὰ
(his) right-hand and gave (him mine in friendship)." After
ταῦτα ἔφη, Ὦ Ὀρόντα ἔστιν ὅ τι
these (this) he-said, "O Orontes, is-there | what any [anything in
ἠδίκησα σε; Ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐ.
which] I-have-wronged you?" He-answered that (there was) not.
Δὲ ὁ Κύρος πάλιν ἠρώτα, οὐκοῦν ὕστερον,
And — Cyrus again asked, "(Did you) not-then afterwards,
ὡς σὺ αὐτὸς ὁμολογεῖς, ἀποστὰς εἰς Μυσούς
as you yourself confess, having-gone-over to (the) Mysians,
ἀδικούμενος οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἐποίεις κακῶς
being-injured (in) no (way) by me, act ill
τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν, ὅ τι
(against) — my territory, | what anything [in whatever]
ἐδύνω; Ὁ
you-could (do all the injury you could to my territories)?" —
Ὀρόντης ἔφη. Οὐκοῦν ἔφη ὁ
Orontes said (that he did). "(Did you) not-then," said —
Κῦρος ὁπότ' αὖ ἔγνως τὴν δύναμιν σεαυτοῦ
Cyrus, | "when again you-knew the strength of-yourself [when
ἐλθὼν
you were aware of the little strength you possessed against me], coming

ἐπὶ τὸν βωμόν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος, ἔφησθα τε
to the altar — of-Diana, you-said (that it) not-only
μεταμέλειν σοι, καὶ, πείσας
repented you (you repented), but-also, having-persuaded
ἐμέ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι
me (prevailed upon me by entreaties), you again gave me
πιστά, καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; Καὶ
pledges (of good faith), and received (the same) from me?" And
ὁ Ὀρόντης ὡμολόγει ταῦτα. 8. Τί οὖν, ἔφη
— Orontes acknowledged these (facts). "(In) what then," said
ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ,
— Cyrus, | "having-been-injured by me [hast thou been injured by
νῦν· τὸ τρίτον γέγονας φανερὸς
me], (that) now (for) the third (time) you-have-been manifestly
ἐπιβουλεύων μοι; Δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντου
(detected) plotting-against me?" But — Orontes (answered him)
εἰπόντος ὅτι ἀδικηθεὶς οὐδέν.
saying that having-been-injured (in) nothing (no way) (he did so).
Ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτησεν αὐτόν· Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν
— Cyrus (then) asked him, "You-confess, therefore,
γεγενῆσθαι ἄδικος περὶ ἐμέ; Γὰρ
to-have-been (you have acted) unjust towards me?" "(I confess it) for
ἦ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη ὁ
certainly (there is a) necessity (I am obliged to do so)," said (replied) —
Ὀρόντης. Ἐκ τούτο ὁ Κῦρος πάλιν ἠρώτησεν·
Orontes. After this — Cyrus again asked,
Ἄν ἔτι οὖν γένοιο πολέμιος τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ,
"Would you yet then become hostile — to-my brother,
δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός ἐμοί; Ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι
but friendly and faithful to-me?" — And he-answered that
οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, ἄν ἔτι
neither (not even) if I-should-become (so), O Cyrus, would-it (I)-ever
δόξαιμι, σοί γε ποτε. Πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος
seem-so, to-you at-least —. On (hearing) this Cyrus
εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν· 9. Ὁ ἀνὴρ μὲν
said — (to those) present; "— (This) man, indeed, has

μὲν πεποίηκε τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει τοιαῦτα.
certainly done such-things (deeds) and he-acknowledges the-same.
Δὲ ὑμῶν σὺ ὦ Κλέαρχε πρῶτος ἀπόφηνα
And of-you (present) do you, O Clearchus, first declare
γνώμην, ὅ τι δοκεῖ σοι. Δὲ
(express) (your) opinion, whatever seems (right) to-you." And
Κλέαρχος εἶπε τάδε· Ἐγὼ συμβουλεύω τὸν
Clearchus spoke thus: "I advise (that) —
τοῦτον ἄνδρα ποιεῖσθαι ἐκποδὼν ὡς τάχιστα,
this man be-put out-of-the-way as quickly (as
ὡς μηκέτι δέῃ φυλάττεσθαι
possible), that it-may no-longer be-necessary to-be-on-(our)-guard-against
τοῦτον, ἀλλὰ ᾖ σχολὴ ἡμῖν,
this (him), but (that) there-may-be leisure to-us (we may have
κατὰ τὸ εἶναι τοῦτον ποιεῖν
time) | concerning the to-be this-one [so far as he is concerned] to-do
εὖ τούτους τοῖς ἐθελοντὰς φίλους. 10. Δὲ
good (to) those — willing (to be) our-friends." And
ἔφη ταύτῃ τῇ γνώμῃ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους
he-said (that) in-this — opinion also the others
προσθέσθαι. Μετὰ ταῦτα, Κύρου κελεύοντος,
agreed. After these (things), Cyrus ordering (it),
ἅπαντες καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς ἀναστάντες ἔλαβον
all even the relatives (of Orontes) rising-up took
τὸν Ὀρόντην τῆς ζώνης ἐπὶ Θανάτῳ·
— Orontes (by) the girdle | as-to death [in token that he
δὲ εἶτα οἷς προσετάχθη
was to suffer death]; and then (those) to-whom it-was-assigned
ἐξῆγον αὐτόν. Δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἵπερ
led him (out). But when (those) saw him who
πρόσθεν προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσε-
formerly used-to-bow-down (before him), — then they-
κύνησαν, καίπερ εἰδότες, ὅτι ἄγοιτο ἐπι
bowed-down, although knowing that he-might-be-led to
θάνατον. 11. Δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσηνέχθη τὴν σκηνὴν
death. And then he-was-led to-the tent

Ἀρταπάτου, τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν σκηπτού-
of-Artapatas, the most-faithful (and trusted) of-the | sceptre-
χων Κύρου, μετὰ ταῦτα οὐδεὶς πώποτε εἶδε
bearers [ushers] of-Cyrus, after this no-one ever saw
Ὀρόντην, οὔτε ζῶντα οὔτε τεθνηκότα, οὐδέ οὐδεὶς
Orontes, neither living nor having-died (dead), | nor any-one
εἰδως ἔλεγεν
having-known was-said [nor could any one say from certain knowledge]
ὅπως ἀπέθανε δ' ἄλλοι εἴκαζον ἄλλως.
how he-died | and others conjectured otherwise [various con-
Δὲ οὐδεὶς τάφος αὐτοῦ
jectures were made]. But no tomb (grave) of-him was
τώποτε ἐφανη.
ever seen.

CHAPTER VII.

Cyrus enters Babylonia, and reviews his troops; he addresses the Greeks, and promises them great rewards in case of victory. He advances in order of battle, but afterwards, supposing that his brother had no immediate intention to engage, proceeds with less caution.

1. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας
HENCE he-proceeds through the Babylonian
τρεῖς σταθμοὺς δώδεκα παρα-
(province) three days'-march, (a distance of) twelve para-
σάγγας. Δ' ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κῦρος ποιεῖται,
sangs. And on the third days'-march Cyrus makes,
περὶ μέσας νύκτας, ἐξέτασιν τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ
about (the) middle of-night, a-review of-the Greeks and
τῶν Βαρβάρων, ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ· γὰρ ἐδόκει
of-the Barbarians, on the plain; for he-thought (that the)
βασιλέα ἥξειν εἰς τὴν ἕω ἐπιοῦσαν
king would-arrive on the morning coming (next morning)
σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι μαχούμενον· καὶ μὲν
with the army (and) offering-battle (fight); and —
ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον ἡγεῖσθαι τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως, δὲ
he-ordered Clearchus to-take-command of-the right wing, and

Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ εὐωνύμου· δὲ αὐτὸς
Menon the Thessalian of-the left; but he-himself
διέταξε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ. 2. Δὲ
drew-up-in-order-of-battle | the of-himself [his own troops]. But
μετὰ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ
after the review | at-the-same-time with-the coming
ἡμέρᾳ, αὐτόμολοι ἦκοντες παρὰ
day [at dawn of day], deserters coming from (the)
μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ περὶ τῆς
great king brought-news to-Cyrus concerning the
στρατιᾶς βασιλέως. Δὲ Κῦρος, συγκαλέσας
army of (the) king. — Cyrus, having-called-together
τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων,
the generals and captains of-the Greeks,
συνεβουλεύετό τε, πῶς ἂν ποιοῖτο τὴν
consulted (with them)—, how he might | make the
μάχην, καὶ αὐτὸς θαῤῥύνων
battle [conduct the engagement], and (then) he encouraging
τοιάδε παρήνει. 3. Ὦ Ἕλληνες ἄνδες,
thus exhorted (them): "O Grecian men, (it is)
οὐκ ἀπορῶν βαρβάρων ἀνθρώπων
not (on account of) being-in-want of-barbarian men (that)
ἄγω ὑμᾶς συμμάχους, ἀλλὰ νομίζων
I-lead you (with me as) auxiliaries, but thinking
ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἀμείνονας καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν
you to-be more-efficient and better (than) many
βαρβάρων, διὰ τοῦτο
(a great multitude of) barbarians, I for this (reason alone)
προσέλαβον. Οὖν ὅπως ἔσεσθε
take-you-with (me). (See) then that you-will-be (prove
ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς κέκτη-
yourselves) men worthy of-the liberty which you-have-
σθε καὶ ὑπὲρ ἧς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω ὑμᾶς.
acquired and for which I esteem you fortunate.
Γὰρ εὖ ἴστε, ὅτι ἂν ἐλοίμην τὴν ἐλευθερίαν
For you well know, that I would prefer — liberty

ἀντὶ πάντων ὧν ἔχω καὶ ἄλλων
before all (that) which I-have (possess) and other (pos-
πολλαπλασίων. 4. Δὲ καὶ
sessions) numerous (many times as great). But —
ὅπως εἰδῆτε εἰς οἷον
(now) in-order-that you (may) know to what (sort of) (an)
ἀγῶνα ἔρχεσθε, ἐγὼ εἰδὼς διδάξω
encounter you-come, | I having-known [I knowing well] will-inform
ὑμᾶς. Γὰρ τὸ πλῆθος μὲν
you. For the multitude (enemy's numbers) (are) indeed
πολύ καὶ ἐπίασι πολλῇ κραυγῇ·
large, and they-come-on (advance) with (a) great shout;
δ' ἂν ἀνάσχησθε ταῦτα, καὶ τὰ ἄλλα
but should you-have-sustained this, and (in) — other (respects)
δοκῶ μοι αἰσχύνεσθαι γνώσεσθε
I-seem to-myself to-be-ashamed (I feel ashamed) (that) you-will-know
οἷους τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὄντας
(to have you find) what (little value) the men | being
ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἡμῖν. Δὲ ὑμῶν
[born] in — (this) country (are) to-us (as soldiers). But you
ὄντων ἀνδρων, καὶ γενομένων εὐτόλμων,
being men (of courage), and having-become brave
ἐγὼ
(and spirited) (so as to conquer in the approaching engagement), I
μὲν ποιήσω τὸν ὑμῶν βουλόμενον ἀπιέναι
indeed will-make (enable) (*the*) (those) of-you wishing to-go
οἴκαδε ἀπελθεῖν ζηλωτὸν τοῖς οἴκοι·
home | to-have-departed [to return] envied — (by those) at-home;
δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσειν πολλοὺς
but I-think to-make (I shall induce) many hereafter
ἐλέσθαι τὰ
| to-have-taken-for-yourselves [to prefer] the (advantages obtained by
παρ' ἐμοὶ ἀντὶ τῶν
remaining) with me before (to) — (those that may be obtained)
οἴκοι.
at-home."

5. Ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης Σάμιος φυγὰς, δέ
Then Gaulites, (a) Samian exile, but (a)
πιστὸς Κύρῳ παρών εἶπε· καὶ μήν ὦ
faithful (adherent of) Cyrus, being-present said, "And yet, O
Κῦρε τινες λέγουσι, ὅτι νῦν ὑπισχνῇ πολλὰ
Cyrus, some say that now you-promise many (things)
διὰ τὸ εἶνα ἐν τοιούτῳ τοῦ προ-
on-account-of | the to-be [being] in such (a state) of— ap-
σιόντος κινδύνου· δὲ ἄν τι γένηται εὖ,
proaching danger; but should anything happen well [but
φασὶ σε οὐ μεμ-
should success attend you], they-say, | (that) you would not have-
νῆσθαι·
remembered [that you would not hereafter remember your promises];
δ' ἔνιοι οὐδ' εἰ μεμνῷό τε καὶ
— some (also say that) neither if you-(did)-remember and also
βούλοιο δύνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα
may-wish (were willing) will-you-be-able — to-give what
ὑπισχνῇ. 6. Ὁ Κῦρος ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἔλεξεν·
you-promise." — Cyrus having-heard this said:
Ἀλλ' ἔστι ἡμῖν ὦ ἄνδρες ἡ ἀρχὴ ἡ
"But there-is to-us (we have), O men, | the empire the
πατρῴα, μὲν
paternal [the empire that belonged to my father], (which) indeed
μέχρι πρὸς μεσημβρίαν οὗ ἄνθρωποι
(extends) so-far to (the) south where (that) men
οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν διὰ καῦμα, δὲ
are not able to-dwell on-account-of (the) heat, and
μέχρι πρὸς ἄρκτον οὗ διὰ
so-far to (the) north where (that) (they cannot live) on-account-of
χειμῶνα· δὲ οἱ φίλοι τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σατρα-
the-cold; and the friends of— my brother govern-as-
πεύουσι πάντα τὰ ἐν μέσῳ τούτων.
satraps all (the countries situated) — in (the) middle of-these
(between these northern and southern limits). 7. Δὲ ἦν νική-
But if we-

σωμεν δεῖ ἡμᾶς ποιῆσαι τοὺς ἡμετέρους
conquer it-will-be-proper-for us to-make — our
φίλους ἐγκρατεῖς τούτων. Ὥστε οὐ
friends masters of-these (countries). So-that I-have not
δέδοικα τοῦτο μὴ ἔχω οὐκ τι ὅ
feared this, lest I-have not anything (enough) which
δῶ ἑκάστῳ τῶν φίλων, ἂν γένηται
I-may-give to-each — of (my) friends, | should it-happen
εὖ, ἀλλὰ, μὴ ἔχω οὐκ ἱκανοὺς,
well [should we be successful], but lest I-have not (friends) enough,
οἷς δῶ. Δὲ καὶ δώσω ἑκάστῳ ὑμῶν
to-whom I-may-give. But I-will also give to-each of-you
Ἑλλήνων χρυσοῦν στέφανον. 8. Δὲ οἱ
Greeks (a) golden crown." But the (Greeks
ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, ἦσαν αὐτοί
present), having-heard these (assurances), were themselves
τε πολὺ προθυμότεροι, καὶ
not-only much more (encouraged and) more zealous, but-also
ἐξήγγελλον τοῖς ἄλλοις.
they-reported (what they had heard) to-the others (of the
Δὲ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρ᾽ αὐτὸν, καὶ τινὲς
Greeks). And not-only the commanders about him, but-also some
τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων εἰσῆεσαν ἀξιοῦντες
of-the other Greeks, went-into (his tent), desiring
εἰδέναι τι ἔσται σφίσιν, ἐὰν
to-know what (reward) shall-be (there would be) for-them, if
κρατήσωσι. Δὲ ὁ ἐμπιπλὰς τὴν γνώμην
they-should-conquer. But — (he), having-satisfied the minds
ἁπάντων, ἀπέπεμπε. 9. Δὲ πάντες ὅσοιπερ
of-all, sent (them) away. And all who
διελέγοντο παρεκελεύοντο αὐτῳ, μὴ μάχε-
conversed (with him) urged him not to-
σθαι, ἄλλ᾽ τάττεσθαι ὄπισθεν ἑαυτῶν.
fight (personally), but to-station-himself behind themselves (the line
Ἐν δὲ τῷ τούτῳ καιρῷ Κλέαρχος ἤρετο
of battle). About — — this time Clearchus inquired-of

τὸν Κῦρον πως ὧδε· Οἴει
(asked) — Cyrus some-how thus (something like this): "Do-you-think
γὰρ σοι ὦ Κῦρε τὸν ἀδελφόν μαχεῖσθαι;
then (*with-you*), O Cyrus, (that) — (your) brother will-fight?"
Νὴ Δί' ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος εἴπερ γε ἐστί παῖς
"Yes, by-Jupiter," said — Cyrus, "if indeed he-is (the) son
Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος, δὲ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός, ἐγὼ
of-Darius and Parysatis, and my brother, I
οὐ λήψομαι ταῦτ' ἀμα-
shall not take (gain) (possession of) these (dominions) without-a-
χεί.
fight (battle)."

10. Ἐνταῦθα δή ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ
There indeed (of those) (*in*) — under-arms (the)
ἀριθμὸς τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἐγένετο μυρία καὶ
number of-the — Greeks was ten-thousand and
τετρακοσία ἀσπὶς, δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πέντα-
four-hundred heavy-armed-men, and two-thousand and five-
κόσιοι πελτασταὶ, δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων
hundred targeteers, and (the number) of-the barbarians
μετὰ Κῦρου δέκα μυριάδες, καὶ
with Cyrus (was) | ten ten-thousands [one hundred thousand], and
ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι δρεπανηφόρα ἅρματα. 11. Δὲ
about — twenty scythe-bearing chariots. And (the
τῶν πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ
number) of-the enemy was-said to-be | a-hundred and
εἴκοσι μυριάδες, καὶ διακόσια δρεπανηφόρα
twenty ten-thousands [1,200,000], and two-hundred scythe-bearing
ἅρματα. Δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἄλλοι ἱππεῖς,
chariots. And there-were six-thousand other horsemen,
ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης ἦρχεν· οὗτοι ἦσαν
of-whom Artagerses had-the-command; these (horsemen) were
τεταγμένοι πρὸ βασιλέως αὐτοῦ. 12. Δὲ
drawn-up in-front-of (the) king himself. But of (the)
στρατεύματος τοῦ βασιλέως ἦσαν τέτταρες
army of-the king there-were four

ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες, ἕκαστος
commanders (or) generals (or) leaders, each

τριάκοντα μυριάδων
(having under his command) | thirty ten-thousands [300,000],

Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας,
(their names were) Abrocomas, Tissaphernes, Gobryas,

Ἀρβάκης. Δὲ τούτων παρεγένοντο ἐν
Arbaces. But of-these (this number) there-were-present in

τῇ μάχῃ ἐνενήκοντα μυριάδες, καὶ
the battle (only) | nine-hundred ten-thousands [900,000], and

ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα δρεπανηφόρα ἅρματα· γὰρ
a-hundred and fifty scythe-bearing chariots; for

Ἀβροκόμας ἐλαύνων ἐκ Φοινίκης ὑστέρησε τῆς
Abrocomas, marching from Phœnicia, arrived-after the

μάχης πέντε ἡμέρας. 13. Δὲ οἱ αὐτομολή-
battle five days. And — (those) having-

σαντες πρὸ τῆς μάχης ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων
deserted before the battle from the enemy (that were)

παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἤγγελλον ταῦτα
with (the) great king announced these (things)

πρὸς Κῦρον· καὶ, μετὰ τὴν μάχην, οἳ
to Cyrus; and, after the battle, — (those who)

ὕστερον ἐλήφθησαν ἤγγελλον ταὐτὰ.
then were-taken-prisoners reported the-same (things).

14. Δὲ ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει ἕνα σταθμὸν
And thence Cyrus proceeds one day's-march, (a

τρεῖς παρασάγγας παντί τῷ στρατεύματι,
distance of) three parasangs, with-all the army,

καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ συντε-
both the Greek and the barbarian, drawn-up-in-

ταγμένῳ· γὰρ ᾤετο βασιλέα μαχεῖσθαι
order-of-battle; for he-thought (that the) king would-offer-battle

ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· γὰρ κατὰ μέσον τὸν
(on) that — (same) day; for about (the) middle (of) the

σταθμὸν ἦν τάφρος ὀρυκτή βαθεῖα, τὸ
day's-march there-was (found) a-ditch dug deep, the

εὖρος μὲν πέντε ὀργυιαί, δὲ τὸ βάθος τρεῖς
width indeed (was) five fathoms, and the depth three
ὀργυιαί. 15. Δὲ ἡ τάφρος παρετέτατο ἄνω διὰ
fathoms. And the ditch (was)-extended up through
τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας, μέχρι
the plain a-distance-of twelve parasangs, just-to
τείχους τοῦ Μηδίας. Ἔνθα δή εἰσιν
(as far as) (the) walls — of-Media. Here — are
αἱ διώρυχες ῥέουσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
the canals flowing (which flow) from the river
Τίγρητος· δὲ εἰσὶ τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος
Tigris; — there-are four (of them), the — width
πλεθριαῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς
(of each is) of-the-size-of-a-plethrum (one hundred feet), and very
βαθεῖαι, καὶ σιταγωγὰ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς·
deep, and corn-carrying vessels sail in (along) them;
δὲ εἰσβάλλουσι εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, δὲ
and they-discharge-their-water (empty) into the Euphrates, and
διαλείπουσι ἑκάστη
they-leave (between) each (are distant from each other)
παρασάγγην, γέφυραι δ' ἔπεισιν. Ἦν
a-parasang, bridges also are over (them). There-was
δὲ στενή πάροδος παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην, μεταξὺ
— (a) narrow passage along the Euphrates, between
τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ
the river and the trench, about twenty feet (the)
εὖρος. 16. Ταύτην δε τὴν τάφρον μέγας
(in) width. This — — trench (the) great
βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ ἀντι ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ
king makes (had made) for (a) defence, when
πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα. Ταύτην
he-heard Cyrus (was) marching-against (him). This
τὴν πάροδον δὴ τε Κῦρός καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ
— passage indeed not-only Cyrus but-also the army
παρῆλθε, καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου.
went-through, and (so) came (got) within (inside) the trench.

17. Βασιλεύς μὲν οὐκ οὖν ἐμαχέσατο
(The) king indeed did not — offer-battle
ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἀλλὰ πολλά ἴχνη καὶ ἵππων
on-that — day, but many tracks both of-horses
καὶ ἀνθρώπων ὑποχωρούντων ἦσαν φανερὰ.
and of-men retreating were visible.
18. Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος καλέσας Σιλανὸν τὸν Ἀμβρα-
There Cyrus having-called Silanus, the Ambra-
κιώτην μάντιν, ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ τρισχιλίους δαρεικοὺς,
cian soothsayer, gave him three-thousand darics,
ὅτι πρότερον τῇ ἑνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης τῆς
because previously on-the eleventh (day) from that —
ἡμέρας θυόμενος, εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς
day, (while) sacrificing, he-said to-him that (the) king
οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν· Κῦρος δ'
would not fight (for) ten days; Cyrus then
εἶπεν, οὐκ ἄρα μαχεῖται ἔτι, εἰ οὐ
said, "He-will not then fight at all, if he-will (does) not
μαχεῖται ἐν ταύταις ταῖς ἡμεραῖς· δ'
fight in these — days (within that time); but
ἐὰν ἀληθεύσῃς, ὑπισχνοῦμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα.
if you-speak-the-truth, I-promise you ten talents."
Τοῦτο τὸ χρυσιόν τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ αἱ δέκα
This — gold he then paid, since the ten
ἡμέρα παρῆλθον. 19. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ,
days (had) elapsed. But since at the trench
βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐκώλυε τὸ στράτευμα Κύρου
(the) king did not prevent the army of-Cyrus
διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς
to-go-(from going)-through (it), it-seemed both to-Cyrus and to-the
ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεθαι·
others to-have-given-up (he had given up) the (intention) to-fight
ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο
(of fighting); so-that on-the following (day) Cyrus proceeded
μᾶλλον ἠμελημένως. 20. Δὲ τῇ τρίτῃ
(on his march) more negligently. But on-the third

ἐποιεῖτο τὴν πορείαν τε καθήμενος ἐπὶ
(day) he-made the march — being-seated (sitting) in
τοῦ ἅρματος, καὶ ἔχων πρὸ αὑτου ὀλίγους
— (his) chariot, and having in-front-of him few (men,
ἐν τάξει· δὲ τὸ πολὺ αὐτῷ
drawn up) in order; but the greater (part of his army) for-him
ἐπορεύετο ἀνατεταραγμένον,
advanced | having-been-put-in-disorder [without observing any
καὶ πολλὰ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρα-
order], and many of-the arms (belonging to) the sol-
τιώταις ἤγοντο ἐπὶ ἁμαξῶν καὶ ὑποζυγίων.
diers were-carried on wagons and beasts-of-burden.

CHAPTER VIII.

The enemy are seen advancing in order of battle, and the army of Cyrus hastily prepare for action. The Greeks, in the right wing, put to flight the troops opposed to them, and pursue them some distance. Cyrus, in the centre, directs his attack against the king, and is killed.

1. Καὶ ἦν ἤδη τε ἀμφὶ πλήθουσαν ἀγοράν,
AND it-was now — about full market (time),
καὶ ὁ σταθμός ἦν πλησίον ἔνθα ἔμελλε κατα-
and the station was near where he-was-about to-
λύειν ἡνίκα Παταγύας Πέρσης ἀνὴρ, τῶν πιστῶν
halt, when Pataguas, (a) Persian man, of-the faithful
ἀμφὶ Κῦρον προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ
(adherents) about Cyrus, appears riding at
κράτος τῷ ἵππῳ ἱδροῦντι· καὶ εὐθὺς ἐβόα
full-speed — (with his) horse sweating; and immediately he-shouted
πᾶσίν, οἷς ἐνετύγχανε, καὶ βαρβαρικῶς
to-all whom he-met, both | in-barbarian [in Persian
καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς, ὅτι βασιλεὺς προσέρ-
language] and in-the-Greek, that (the) king is-ap-
χεται σὺν πολλῷ στρατεύματι, παρεσκευασμένος
proaching with (a) large army, prepared
ὡς εἰς μάχην. 2. Ἔνθα δὴ ἐγένετο πολὺς
as (if) for battle. Then indeed there-was (arose) great

τάραχος· γὰρ οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ δὲ πάντες ἐδόκουν
confusion; for the Greeks and also all thought

αὐτίκα ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι
(imagined) (that) he (the king) would suddenly fall-upon

σφίσιν ἀτάκτοις. 3. Κῦρός
them in-disorder (before they could form their ranks). Cyrus

τε, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἅρματος, ἐνέδυ τὸν
—, having-leaped-down from the (his) chariot, put-on —

θώρακα, καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἔλαβε
(his) breastplate, and mounting (on) — (his) horse he-took

τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας, τε παρήγγελλε
— (his) javelins in — (his) hands, (and) not-only did-he-give-orders

πᾶσι τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξοπλίζεσθαι, καὶ ἕκαστον
to-all the rest to-arm-themselves, but-also each-one

καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν τάξιν ἑαυτοῦ.
| to-place-himself in the rank of-himself [to take their station,

4. Ἔνθα δὴ
each in his own place]. Then indeed (in their proper place)

καθίσταντο σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ, Κλέαρχος
they-placed-themselves (formed) with great haste, Clearchus

μὲν ἔχων τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος πρὸς
indeed having (occupying) the right of-the (right) wing close-to

τῷ ποταμῷ Εὐφράτῃ, δὲ Πρόξενος ἐχόμενος
the river Euphrates, but Proxenus having (his

δ' οἱ ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον.
place next to him) and the others after this (him) (in succession).

Δὲ Μένων καὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἔσχε τὸ
But Menon and — (his) army had (occupied) the

εὐώνυμον κέρας τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. 5. Δὲ τοῦ
left wing of-the Greek (army). But of-the

βαρβαρικοῦ ἱππεῖς μὲν Παφλαγόνες εἰς
barbarian (force) horsemen, namely (the) Paphlagonian, about

χιλίους ἔστησαν παρὰ Κλέαρχον καὶ το
a-thousand stood near Clearchus and the

Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ· δὲ ἐν τῷ
Greek targeteers on the right; but on the

εὐωνύμῳ τε Ἀριαῖος ὁ ὕπαρχος Κύρου, καὶ
left (was) not-only Ariæus, the lieutenant of-Cyrus, but-also
τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν. 6. Κῦρος δὲ
the other (rest of the) barbarian (army). Cyrus also
καὶ ἱππεῖς μετ' αὐτοῦ ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι,
and (the) horsemen with him, about six-hundred, (were in the
αὐτοὶ μὲν ὡπλισμένοι θώραξι καὶ
centre), they indeed having-been-armed with-breastplates and
παραμηριδίοις, καὶ πάντες κράνεσι πλὴν Κύρου·
armor-for-the-thighs, and all with-helmets, except Cyrus;
Κῦρος δὲ καθίστατο εἰς τὴν μάχην
Cyrus indeed stationed-himself in (went into) the battle
ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν ψιλήν· δὲ καὶ λέγεται
having — (his) head bare (unprotected); and (it is) also said
τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας διακινδυνεύειν ἐν τῷ
(that) the other Persians expose-themselves in —
πολέμῳ ταῖς ψιλαῖς κεφαλαῖς. 7. Δὲ
battle — with-bare (uncovered) heads. Also
πάντες οἱ ἵπποι, οἱ μετὰ Κύρου, εἶχον καὶ
all the horses, (namely) — (those) with Cyrus, had both
προμετωπίδια καὶ προστερνίδια·
defensive-armor-on-their-foreheads and defensive-armor-for-the-breast;
δὲ οἱ ἱππεῖς καὶ εἶχον Ἑλληνικὰς μαχαίρας.
and the horsemen also had Grecian swords.

8. Καὶ ἦν ἤδη τε μέσον ἡμέρας, καὶ
And it-was now — (the) middle of (the) day, and
οὔπω ἦσαν οἱ πολέμοι καταφανεῖς· δὲ ἡνίκα
not-yet were (was) the enemy in-sight; but when
ἐγίγνετο δείλη κονιορτός ἐφάνη, ὥσπερ λευκή
it-was afternoon a-dust appeared, like (a) white
νεφέλε, δὲ οὐ συχνῷ χρόνῳ ὕστερον
cloud, but in no much time after (not long after),
τις ὥσπερ μελανία ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ
something like blackness (appeared) on the plain | on
πολύ. Δὲ ὅτε ἐγίγνοντο
much (extending a long distance). But when they-approached

ἐγγύτερον, καὶ δὴ τάχα τις χαλκός
nearer, — — presently something (like) brass

ἤστραπτε, καὶ αἱ λόγχαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις ἐγίγνοντο
flashed-forth, and the spears and the ranks became

καταφανεῖς. 9. Καὶ ἦσαν ἱππεῖς μὲν
visible. And there-were horsemen, — (having)

λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων,
white-breastplates, on the left of-the enemy,

Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο ἄρχειν τούτων· ἐχόμενοι
Tissaphernes was-said to-command these; next

δὲ τούτων γερροφόροι· ἐχόμενοι δὲ
then (to) these (were the) wicker-shield-bearers; next also (to these

ὁπλῖται σὺν ξυλίναις ἀσπίσι ποδή-
were) heavy-armed-soldiers with wooden shields reaching-to-their-

ρεσι· δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι Αἰγύπτιοι· δ'
feet; and these were-said to-be Egyptians; and (next

ἄλλοι ἱππεῖς ἄλλοι τοξόται. Πάντες δ'
followed) other horsemen, (then) other bowmen. All —

οὗτοι κατὰ ἔθνη, ἕκαστον τὸ
these (marched together) according-to (their) nation, each —

ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώ-
nation marched (separately) | in (an) oblong full of-

πων. 10. Δὲ πρὸ αὐτῶν
men [in solid column]. And in-front-of them (were stationed)

ἅρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν ἀπ'
chariots leaving (a) considerable (distance) between

ἀλλήλων, τὰ δὴ καλούμενα δρεπανηφόρα·
one-another, — (these) — were-called scythe-chariots;

εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἀποτεταμένα ἐκ τῶν
they-had — the scythes extended (projecting) from the

ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον, καὶ ὑπὸ
axles in (an) oblique (direction), and (others) under

τοῖς δίφροις βλέποντα εἰς γῆν ὡς
the drivers'-seats looking (pointing) towards (the)ground, so-as

διακόπτειν ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν. Δὲ ἡ γνώμη
to-cut-through whatever they-might-meet. And the | design (intention)

ἦν ὡς ἐλώντων καὶ διακοψόντων εἰς
(of them) was that driving-into, and cutting-through into,
τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
the ranks of-the Greeks. [The design of these chariots

was to drive into, and cut through (divide), the ranks of the Greeks.]

11. Ὅ Κῦρος εἶπεν μέντοι ὅτε παρεκελεύετο
As-to-what Cyrus (had) said, however, when he-exhorted
τοῖς Ἕλλησι καλέσας ἀνέχεσθαι
the Greeks, having-called (them together), to-sustain (unmoved)
τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων, τούτο ἐψεύσθη· γὰρ
the shout of-the barbarians, in-this he-was-deceived; for
προσήεσαν οὐ κραυγῇ, ἀλλὰ σιγῇ,
they-approached not with (a) shout, but in (as much) silence
ὡς ἀνυστόν, καὶ ἡσυχῇ, ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ
as (was) possible, and quietly, with (an) even (step) and
βραδέως. 12. Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ · Κῦρος,
slowly. And at this (in the meantime) Cyrus,
παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι, τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ, καὶ
riding-by (himself) with Pigres, the interpreter, and
τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι ἄλλοις, ἐβόα τῷ Κλέαρχῳ
three or four others, called-out — to-Clearchus
ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ τὸ μέσον τῶν
to-lead — (his) army against the centre of-the
πολεμίων, ὅτι βασιλεὺς εἴη ἐκεῖ· κἂν ἔφη
enemy, that (the) king might-be (was) there; and-if, said-he,
νικῶμεν τοῦτο πάντα πεποίηται ἡμῖν.
we-conquer (in) this (quarter), all has-been-done for-us (our

13. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ὁρῶν τὸ
object is fully accomplished). But — Clearchus, seeing —
μέσον στῖφος,
(that) middle dense-body (great collection of soldiers in centre
καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου
of enemy's line), and hearing from-Cyrus (of the) (that the)
βασιλέα ὄντα ἔξω τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ
king being (was) beyond (outside) the Grecian

εὐωνύμου, γὰρ βασιλεύς περιῆν τοσοῦτον
left (wing), for (the) king excelled so-much
πλήθει, ὥστε
in-multitude (so much superior was the king in numbers) | that,
ἔχων τὸ μέσον ἑαυτοῦ
having (occupying) the middle of-himself (his own line) [so stationed
ἦν οὐκ
in the centre of his army], he-was (still beyond Cyrus' left), did not
ἤθελεν ἀποσπάσαι τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας ἀπὸ τοῦ
wish to-draw-off the right wing from the
ποταμοῦ, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθείη ἑκατέ-
river, fearing lest he-might-be-surrounded on-both-
ρωθεν, δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο τῷ Κύρῳ, ὅτι μέλοι
sides, so he-replied — to-Cyrus | that it-would-be-a-care
αὐτῷ ὅπως ἔχοι καλῶς.
to-him that it-may-have (itself) well [that he would take care
that all should go well].

14. Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν
And during this — time the — barbarian
στράτευμα προήει ὁμαλῶς, δὲ τὸ
army advanced steadily (with a uniform pace), and the
Ἑλληνικόν ἔτι μένον ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ, συνε-
Grecian (army), still remaining in the same (place), was-forming-
τάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. Καὶ ὁ
in-order-of-battle from — (those) still coming-up. And —
Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ
Cyrus, riding-past not very near to-this (at a moderate
τῷ στρατεύματι, κατεθεᾶτο
distance from) (his) — army, surveyed (the armies),
ἀποβλέπων ἑκατέρωσε, τε εἰς τοὺς
looking-at each-side (both sides), not-only towards the
πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς φίλους. **15.** Δὲ
enemy, but-also (towards) — (his) friends (own men). But
Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος ἰδὼν αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλλη-
Xenophon, (an) Athenian, seeing him from the Gre-

νικοῖ, ὑπελάσας ὡς συναντῆσαι,
cian (line), having-ridden-up as-if to-have-met (to meet) (him),
ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι·
asked if he-may-have anything to-order (had any command);
ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε, καὶ ἐκέλευε
he (Cyrus) — having-stopped (his horse), said, and-also requested (him)
λέγειν πᾶσιν, ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια
to-tell all, that both the sacrifices and the victims (were)
καλα. **16.** Λέγων δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσε
favorable. (As he was) saying — this, he-heard (a)
θορύβου ἰόντος διὰ τῶν τάξεων, καὶ ἤρετο τίς
noise going through the ranks, and he-inquired what
ὁ θόρυβος εἴη. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν, ὅτι τὸ
the noise might-be. — And Xenophon said, that the
σύνθημα ἤδη παρέρχεται δεύτερον.
watchword is now passing (through the ranks) for-the-second-time.
Καὶ ὃς ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει,
And | (*who*) (Cyrus) wondered who gives (the command),
καὶ ἤρετο ὅ τι τὸ σύνθημα εἴη. Ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο,
and he-asked what the watchword might-be. — And he-replied,
ὅτι Ζεὺς σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη. **17.** Ὁ δὲ
that (it was) Jupiter (the) Preserver and Victory. — And
Κῦρος ἀκούσας, ἔφη, ἀλλὰ τε δέχομαι
Cyrus having-heard (it), said, but I not-only receive (it)
καὶ ἔστω τοῦτο. Δὲ εἰπών
(accept it as a good omen), but let-it-be so. And having-said
ταῦτα ἀπήλαυνε εἰς τὴν χώραν ἑαυτοῦ·
this, he-rode-away to | the place of-himself [to his own
καὶ τῷ φάλλαγγε διειχέτην ἀπ'
place in the line]; and the-two armies were-distant from
ἀλλήλων οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια, ἡνίκα οἱ
one-another not-more-than three or four stadia, when the
Ἕλληνες τε ἐπαιάνιζον, καὶ ἤρχοντο ἰέναι ἀντίοι
Greeks not-only sang-the-pæan, but began to-go against
τοῖς πολεμίοις. **18.** Δὲ ὡς
(march forward to meet) the enemy. But (when) as

πορευομένων τι τῆς φάλαγγος ἐξεκύ-
(they) were-marching-forward some (part) of-the phalanx fluctu-

μαινε τὸ ἐπιλειπόμενον ἤρξατο θεῖν
ated (out of line), the (part) left-behind began to-run

δρόμῳ· καὶ πάντες ἅμα ἐφθέγξαντο
with-speed; and (they) all at-the-same-time cried-out

οἱόνπερ ἐλελίζουσι τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ, καὶ δὲ πάντες
same-as they-shout to — Mars, and — all

ἔθεον. Δὲ τινες λέγουσι, ὡς καὶ ἐδούπησαν
ran. And some say that they also made-a-noise

ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα,
— with (their) shields against the spears, (to frighten)

ποιοῦντες φόβον τοῖς ἵπποις. 19. Δὲ πρὶν
causing fear (to)-the horses. But before (an)

τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι, οἱ βάρβαροι ἐκκλίνουσι,
arrow could-reach (them), the barbarians give-way

καὶ φεύγουσι. Καὶ δὴ ἐνταῦθα μὲν οἱ
(turn), and flee. And — then indeed the

Ἕλληνες ἐδίωκον κατὰ κράτος, δὲ ἐβόων
Greeks pursued with (all their) might, and calling-out

ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλὰ ἕπεσθαι ἐν
to-one-another not to-run with-speed, but to-follow in

τάξει. 20. Δὲ τὰ ἅρματα, κενὰ ἡνιόχων,
order. But the chariots, void (abandoned by) (of) drivers,

ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν διὰ τῶν πολεμίων
were-borne — (some) indeed through (the ranks) of-the enemy

αὐτῶν, δὲ τὰ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
themselves, but — (others) — through (the ranks) of-the Greeks.

Δὲ οἱ, ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν διίσ-
But — (they), when they-could-see (saw) (them coming), | they-

ταντο· δ' ἔστι ὅστις
stood-apart [opened their ranks]; but there-was some-one (one

καὶ κατελήφθη, ὥσπερ ἐν
man) (who) — was-caught, as (might happen) in (a)

ἱπποδρόμῳ, ἐκπλαγείς· καὶ ἔφασαν μέντοι
race-course, he-having-been-struck-with-fear; and they-said, however,

οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν οὐδὲν·
(that) neither did this-person suffer | nothing [any material injury];
οὐδ' οὐδεὶς ἄλλος δὲ τῶν
| neither did no-one other indeed [nor did any one else] of-the
Ἑλλήνων ἐπαθεν οὐδέν ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ
Greeks | suffer nothing (receive any injury) in this —
μάχῃ, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τις ἐλέγετο
battle, except on the left (wing) some-one (a man) was-said
τοξευθῆναι.
to-have-been-shot-with-an-arrow.

21. Δὲ Κῦρος ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας
But Cyrus seeing (though he saw) the Greeks
νικῶντας καὶ διώκοντας τὸ καθ' αὑτοὺς
conquering and pursuing the (army) opposed-to them, (though)
ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασι-
being-(much)-pleased, and being-saluted already as king
λεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς
by — (those) about him, nor (yet) was-he thus (still he
ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ ἔχων συ-
was not) led-away to-pursue (to join in the pursuit), but keeping drawn-
νεσπειραυμένην τὴν τάξιν τῶν ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων
up-in-close-order the band of six-hundred horsemen (who
σὺν ἑαυτῷ, ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅ τι βασιλεύς
were) with him, he-carefully-watched what (the) king
ποιήσει· γὰρ καὶ ᾔδει αὐτόν ὅτι ἔχοι μέσον
would-do; for he well knew (*him*) that he-occupied the-centre
τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. 22. Καὶ δὲ πάντες
of-the Persian army. And — all
οἱ ἄρχοντες πῶν βαρβάρων ἔχοντες τὸ μέσον
the commanders of-the barbarians occupying the centre
αὑτῶν ἡγοῦντο, νομίξοντες
of-their (own men) led (their troops to battle), thinking
οὕτω καὶ εἶναι ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ ἢν ἡ
thus also to-be — (they will be) the-most-secure if | the
ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ᾖ ἑκατέρωθεν, καὶ εἰ
strength of-them [their force] should-be on-either-side, and if

χρήζοιεν παραγγεῖλαι τι, τὸ στράτευμα
they-should-want to-issue any-orders, (that) the army
ἂν αἰσθάνεσθαι ἡμίσει χρόνῳ. 23. Καὶ
may perceive (will receive them) in-half (the) time. And
δὴ βασιλεὺς ἔχων τότε μέσον τῆς
indeed (the) king, occupying then (the) centre of-the
στρατιᾶς αὐτοῦ ἐγένετο ὅμως ἔξω
army of-him [of his army], was nevertheless beyond (the)
εὐωνύμου κέρατος τοῦ Κύρου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς
left wing — of-Cyrus. When indeed no-one
ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου αὐτῷ
fought from the opposite (part) (either) against-himself (no enemy
οὐδὲ τοῖς τεταγμένοις
attacked him) (*nor*) (or) — (those of his own troops) drawn-up
ἔμπροσθεν αὐτοῦ, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς
before him, he-commenced (to wheel around) as-if
εἰς κύκλωσιν. 24. Ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος
for-the-purpose-of surrounding (Cyrus). Then indeed Cyrus,
δείσας μὴ γενόμενος ὄπισθεν κατακόψῃ τὸ
fearing lest having-got in-the-rear he-might-cut-to-pieces the
Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν
Grecian (forces), advances against (him); and having-charged
σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ
(assailed him) with the six-hundred (horsemen with him), conquers
τοὺς τεταγμένους πρὸ βασιλέως,
(routed) (the troops) — drawn-up before (the) king,
καὶ ἔτρεψε εἰς φυγὴν τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους,
and turns into (put to) flight the six-thousand (horsemen
καὶ αὐτὸς λέγεται ἀποκτεῖναι
who were guarding the king), and he (Cyrus) is-said to-have-killed
τῇ χειρὶ ἑαυτοῦ Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν
with-the hand of-himself [with his own hand] Artagerses, the
ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν. 25. Δὲ ὡς ἡ τροπὴ
commander of-them. But as the rout (flight of enemy)
ἐγένετο, καὶ οἱ ἑξακόσιοι Κύρου, δια-
occurred, — the six-hundred (horsemen) of-Cyrus (also) are-

σπείρονται ὁρμήσαντες εἰς τὸ διώκειν·
(become)-dispersed, having-rushed-on | to the pursuing (in their eager-

πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι κατελείφθησαν
ness to pursue); except (a) very few (that) were-left

ἀμφ' αὐτὸν, σχεδὸν οἱ
about him, (and who were) nearly-all (mostly) — (those who)

καλούμενοι ὁμοτράπεζοι. 26. Ὢν δὲ
are-(were)-called (his) table-companions. Being therefore (only)

σὺν τούτοις, καθορᾷ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ στῖφος
with these, he-sees (the) king and the close-body-guard

ἀμφ' ἐκεῖνον, καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο
around him, and immediately he-did (could) not restrain-himself,

ἀλλ' εἰπών, ὁρῶ τὸν ἄνδρα, ἵετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν· καὶ
but exclaiming, "I-see the man," he-rushed upon him; and

παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον, καὶ τιτρώσκει
strikes (him) on — (his) breast, and wounds (him)

διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὡς Κτησίας ὁ ἰατρός φησί,
through the (his) breastplate, as Ctesias, the physician, says,

καὶ φησί αὐτὸς ἰᾶσθαι τὸ τραῦμα.
and (moreover) he-says (that) he-himself healed (dressed) the wound.

27. Δὲ τις παίοντα ἀκοντίζει αὐτὸν
But some-one (while he was) striking (at the king) hits him

βιαίως παλτῷ ἱπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν· καὶ
(Cyrus) violently with (a) javelin under the eye; and

ἐνταῦθα καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος μαχόμενοι·
there (then were) both (the) king and Cyrus fighting,

καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου,
and — (likewise those) about them (were fighting) for each

ὁπόσοι μὲν τῶν
(in defence of each of their own chiefs); how-many indeed —

ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἀπέθνησκον
(of those) about (the) king died (were killed) (in this

Κτησίας λέγει· γὰρ ἦν παρ' ἐκείνῳ· δὲ
battle) Ctesias tells (us); for he-was with him; and

τε Κῦρος αὐτός ἀπέθανε, καὶ ὀκτὼ, οἱ
not-only Cyrus himself died, but-also eight, the

ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν,
most-important (principal officers) — (of those) about him,
ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. 28. Δὲ Ἀρταπάτης, ὁ
lay (dead) upon him (his body). But Artapates, the
πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν σκηπτούχων θεράπων,
most-faithful to-him — (of all his) sceptre-bearing servants,
λέγεται ἐπειδὴ εἶδε Κῦρον πεπτωκότα, καταπη-
is-said, when he-saw Cyrus fallen, having-
δήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ.
leaped from — (his) horse to-have-thrown (himself) on-him
29. Καὶ οἱ μὲν φασι
(the body of his master). And — (some) indeed say (that)
βασιλέα κελεῦσαί τινα ἐπισφάξαι
(the) king ordered some-one | to-have-killed [to slay]
αὐτον Κῦρῳ, οἱ δὲ σπασάμενον
him on-(the body of)-Cyrus, — but (others say that), having-drawn
τὸν ἀκινάκην, ἐπισφάξασθαι ἑαυτὸν· γὰρ εἶχε
— (his) scimitar, he-killed himself; for he-had
χρυσοῦν· δὲ καὶ ἐφόρει στρεπτὸν,
(a) golden (scimitar-by-his-side); and also wore (a) chain,
καὶ ψέλλια, καὶ τἄλλα, ὥσπερ οἱ
and bracelets, and (such) other (ornaments) as the
ἄριστοι Περσῶν·
most-distinguished of (the) Persians (are accustomed to wear);
γὰρ ἐτετίμητο ὑπὸ Κύρου τε δι'
for he-had-been-honored by Cyrus, not-only for (his)
εὔνοιαν καὶ πιστότητα.
good-will-and-affection, but-also (for his) faithfulness.

CHAPTER IX.

The character of Cyrus. All his personal friends are killed, except Ariæus, who takes to flight.

1. Οὕτως οὖν μὲν Κῦρος ἐτελευτησε, ὢν ἀνὴρ
Thus then — Cyrus died, being (a) man
τε τῶν Περσῶν γενομένων
(who) not-only of (all) the Persians existing (who lived)

μετὰ Κῦρον τὸν ἀρχαῖον βασιλικώτατος,
since Cyrus the elder (was most) princely,
καὶ ἀξιώτατος ἄρχειν, ὡς ὁμολογεῖται
but-also the-most-worthy to-reign, as is-agreed (acknowledged)
παρὰ πάντων τῶν δοκούντων γενέσθαι ἐν
by all — | (those) appearing to-have-been in (the)
πείρᾳ Κύρου. 2. Γὰρ
experience of-Cyrus [those intimately acquainted with him]. For
μὲν πρῶτον, ὢν ἔτι παῖς, ὅτε
in-the-first-place —, being (while) yet (a) boy, when
ἐπαιδεύετο καὶ σὺν τῷ
he-was-educated (was receiving his education) both with — (his)
ἀδελφῷ καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισί, ἐνομίζετο
brother and with the other boys, he-was-thought
κράτιστος πάντων πάντα.
(to be) the-best of-all in-all-things (surpassed them all in
3. Γὰρ πάντες οἱ παῖδες Περσῶν
everything). For all the sons of-Persians
τῶν ἀρίστων παιδεύονται ἐπὶ ταῖς
— eminent-in-rank (Persian nobles) are-educated | at the
θύραις βασιλέως· ἔνθα τις ἄν
gates of (the) king [in the royal palace]; there one may
καταμάθοι μὲν πολλὴν σωφροσύνην, δ' ἔστι
learn indeed much (wisdom) (and)-modesty, but it-is
οὔτ' ἀκοῦσαι οὔτ' ἰδεῖν οὐδὲν αἰσχρόν.
(impossible) either to-hear or to-see anything base
4. Δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ θεῶνται τοὺς
(disgraceful). But the boys both see — (those)
τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι,
honored by (the) king and hear (of them),
καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους· ὥστε εὐθὺς
and (in like manner of) others (being)-disgraced; so-that straightway
ὄντες παῖδες μανθάνουσι τε
being (yet) boys (in their very childhood) they-learn not-only
ἄρχειν καὶ ἄρχεσθαι. 5. Ἔνθα Κῦρος μὲν
to-govern, but-also to-be-governed. There Cyrus indeed

ἐδόκει πρῶτον εἶναι αἰδημονέστατος
appeared first (of all) to-be the-most-modest (respectful)

τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν, πείθεσθαι
— (of those) equals-in-age (of his own age), (and) not-only to-obey

τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις καὶ μᾶλλον τῶν
the elders, but-also much-more (readily than) — (those)

ὑποδεεστέρον ἑαυτοῦ· δ' ἔπειτα
more-inferior (lower) (to) him (in rank); and then

φιλιππότατος, καὶ χρῆσθαι τοῖς
he-was-most-fond-of-horses, and (was able) to-use (manage) the

ἵπποις ἄριστα. Δ' ἔκρινον αὐτὸν
horses (in the) best (manner). And they-discerned (found) him

εἶναι καὶ φιλομαθέστατον καὶ μελετηρότατον
to-be also the-most-fond-of-learning, and most-diligent-and-untiring

τῶν ἔργων εἰς τὸν πόλεμον, τε
| (in) the exercise for — war [in warlike exercises], not-only

τοξικῆς καὶ ἀκοντίσεως. 6. Ἐπεὶ
(that) of-archery, but-also (that) of-hurling-the-javelin. When

δὲ ἔπρεπε τῇ ἡλικίᾳ, ἦν καὶ φιλοθηρότα-
indeed it-became (suited) — (his) age, he-was both extremely-fond-

τος, καὶ μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος
of-hunting, and also fond-of-the-danger (of encountering)

πρὸς τὰ θηρία. Καὶ ποτὲ οὐκ ἔτρεσεν ἄρκτον
— — wild-beasts. And once he-did not fear (a) she-bear

ἐπιφερομένην, ἀλλὰ συμπεσὼν
attacking (that rushed upon him), | but falling-together

κατεσπάσθη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου,
(but in grappling with her) he-was-dragged from — (his) horse,

καὶ μὲν ἔπαθε τὰ καὶ τὰς
| and indeed he-suffered the [he received some wounds], and the

ὠτειλὰς ὧν εἶχε φανερὰς, δὲ τέλος
scars of-which he-had (were) visible (on his body), but at-last

κατέκανε καὶ μέντοι ἐποίησε τὸν πρῶτον
he-killed (her). Furthermore he-made the (person) first

βοηθήσαντα μακαριστὸν πολλοῖς.
coming-to-assist (him) to-be-considered-very-happy by-many.

7. Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς
When indeed he-was-sent-down by — (his) father (as)
σατράπης Λυδίας τε καὶ τῆς μεγάλης Φρυγίας
satrap of-Lydia, and also of-the Great Phrygia,
καὶ Καππαδοκίας, δὲ καὶ ἀπεδείχθη στρατηγὸς
and Cappadocia, and likewise appointed commander
πάντων, οἷς καθήκει ἀθροί-
of-all (the troops), to-whom it-appertains (whose duty it is) to-be-
ζεσθαι εἰς πεδίον Καστωλοῦ, πρῶτον
assembled (to muster) in (the) plain of-Castolus, first
μὲν ἐπέδειξεν αὐτὸν, ὅτι ποιοῖτο
indeed he-showed himself (he soon showed) | that he-made (it)
περὶ πλείστου,
for himself very-much [that he deemed it of the utmost importance],
εἴ σπείσαιτο τῳ καὶ εἴ σύνθοιτο
if he-made-a-treaty — (with any one), and if he-made-an-agreement
τῳ καὶ εἴ τῳ ὑπόσχοιτό τι
— (with any one), and if — (to any one) he-promised anything,
ψεύδεσθαι μηδὲν. 8. Καὶ γὰρ
to-deceive (in) nothing (not to break his word). And —
οὖν μὲν αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι αὐτῷ
therefore indeed the cities entrusting-themselves to-him
ἐπίστευον δ'
(committed to his charge) confided (in him), as-also (in like
οἱ ἄνδρες ἐπίστευον·
manner did private) — men (individuals) trust (him);
καὶ εἴ τις ἐγένετο πολέμιος, Κύρου
and if any-one became hostile (his enemy), Cyrus
σπεισαμένου ἐπίστευε ἂν
having-made-a-treaty (with him) he-was-confident (that) he would (have
παθεῖν μηδὲν παρὰ τὰς σπονδάς. 9. Τοιγαροῦν
to) suffer nothing contrary to-the treaty. Therefore
ἐπεὶ ἐπολέμησε Τισσαφέρνει, πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις
when he-waged-war (against) Tissaphernes, all the cities
ἑκοῦσαι εἵλοντο Κῦρον ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνους
of-their-own-accord chose Cyrus (instead-of) Tissaphernes,

πλὴν Μιλησίων· δὲ οὗτοι ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν ὅτι
except (the) Milesians; but they feared him because

οὐκ ἤθελε προέσθαι τοὺς φεύγοντας.
he-did not wish to-abandon | — (those) fleeing [the exiles].

10. Γὰρ καὶ ἐπεδείκνυντο ἔργῳ, καὶ ἔλεγεν,
For he both showed by (his) deeds, and said,

ὅτι ἂν οὐ ποτε προοῖτο ἐπεὶ ἅπαξ ἐγένετο
that he would not ever desert (them), when once he-became (had

φίλος αὐτοῖς, οὐδ' εἰ μὲν γένοιντο
become) (a) friend to-them, not (even) if — they-should-become

ἔτι μείους δὲ πράξειαν ἔτι κάκιον.
yet less (still fewer) (in number), and should-suffer yet worse (be

11. Καὶ εἴ τίς ποιήσειεν
in worse condition than they were). And if any-one should-do

αὐτόν τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν, ἦν δὲ
him anything good (a kindness) or bad (an injury), it-was indeed

φανερὸς πειρώμενος νικᾶν·
evident (that he was) striving (always anxious) to-conquer (to outdo

καὶ δὲ τινες ἐξέφερον εὐχὴν
him) (in these respects); and — some used-to-mention (a) wish

αὐτοῦ, ὡς εὔχοιτο ζῆν τοσοῦτον χρόνον, ἔστε
of-his, that he-desired to-live so-long (a) time, until he,

ἀλεξόμενος, νικῴη καὶ τοὺς ποιοῦντας
repaying (them), might-outdo both — (those) doing (who

εὖ καὶ τοὺς κακῶς. **12.** Καὶ
did him) good and — (those who did him) ill (an injury). And

γὰρ οὖν δὴ πλεῖστοι ἐπεθύμησαν
— therefore — the-greatest (number of people) desired

τροέσθαι αὐτῷ ἑνί ἀνδρὶ γε τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν
to-commit to-him (the) one (only) man at-least — in our

καὶ χρήματα καὶ
(time) (to him alone of the men of our time) — (their) property, —

πόλεις καὶ τὰ σώματα ἑαυτῶν.
(their) cities, | and the bodies of-them [their own persons].

13. Οὐ μὲν δὴ ἄν τις εἴποι οὐδὲ τοῦτ', ὡς εἴα
Nor indeed — can any-one say — this, that he-allowed

τοὺς κακούργους καὶ ἀδίκους καταγελᾶν,
the evil-doers and unjust (lawless men) deride

ἀλλ' εἰτιμωρεῖτο ἀφειδέστατα
(his authority), but (for) he-punished (transgressors) most-unsparingly

πάντων. Δ' ἦν πολλάκις ἰδεῖν,
of-all (men). | And it-was often to-see [and there were often

παρὰ τὰς στειβομένας ὁδούς,
to be seen], | on the trodden roads [along the most

ἀνθρώπους στερομένους καὶ ποδῶν,
frequented roads] men deprived — of-(their)-feet,

καὶ χειρῶν καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν· ὥστε ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ
— (or) hands, — (or) eyes; so-that in the dominion

Κύρου ἐγένετο καὶ Ἕλλησι καὶ βαρβάρῳ,
of-Cyrus it-was (possible) for both Greek and barbarian,

μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντι, πορεύεσθαι ἀδεῶς
doing nothing wrong (if he did no harm), to-travel without-fear

ὅποι τις ἤθελεν, ἔχοντι ὅ τι προ-
wherever one wished, (and) having (with him) whatever he-might-

χωροίη. 14. Ὡμολόγητο
proceed-with (suited his convenience). It-has-been-acknowledged

γε μέντοι τιμᾶν διαφερόντως τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς
— indeed (that) he-honored preëminently | — (those) good

εἰς πόλεμον.
for war [those having ability for, and skilled in, military tactics].

Καὶ μὲν πόλεμος ἦν αὐτῷ πρῶτον
And indeed | (a) war was to-him first [his first war was]

πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς· καὶ οὖν αὐτὸς
against (the) Pisidians and Mysians; and therefore himself

στρατευόμενος εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας,
leading-an-army (marching in person) into these — countries,

οὓς ἑώρα ἐθέλοντας κινδυμεύειν
(those) whom he-saw willing to-expose-themselves-to-danger (in

τούτους καὶ ἐποίει ἄρχοντας χώρας
his service), the-same (*also*) he-made rulers of (the) territory

ἧς κατεστρέφετο, δὲ ἔπειτα καὶ ἐτίμα
which he-subjugated, and besides he — honored (them)

δώροις ἄλλῃ. 15. Ὥστε μὲν τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς
with-rewards in-other (ways). So (that) indeed | the good

φαίνεσθαι εὐδαιμονεστάτους, δὲ
[brave] appear (to be) the-most-fortunate (of men), but (while)

τοὺς κακοὺς ἀξιοῦσθαι εἶναι
the bad [cowards] were-considered-worthy (only) to-be (the)

δούλους τούτων. Τοιγαροῦν ἦν πολλὴ
slaves of-these (their slaves) Therefore there-was (a) great

ἀφθονία αὐτῷ τῶν θελόντων
abundance to-him (there were a great number) of-those willing

κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις οἴοιτο Κῦρον
to-encounter-danger, when any-one might-think (thought) (that) Cyrus

αἰσθήσεσθαι.
would-perceive (it).

16. Μὲν γε εἰς δικαιοσύνην, εἴ τις γένοιτο
In-truth — as-regards justice, if any-one might-become

φανερὸς αὐτῷ βουλόμενος ἐπι-
apparent (appeared) to-him (as) desiring (inclined) to-

δείκνυσθαι, περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο ποιεῖν
display (that virtue), above all, he-caused to-make

τούτους πλουσιωτέρους τῶν φιλο-
such (persons) richer (than) — (those) seeking-

κερδούντων ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου. 17. Καὶ γὰρ
(who sought)-gain by — injustice. And therefore

οὖν τε πολλὰ ἄλλα διεχειρίζετο δικαίως
— both many other (things) were-administered with-justice

αὐτῷ, καὶ ἐχρήσατο ἀληθινῷ στρατεύματι.
for-him, and he-had-the-use-of (possessed) (a) real army

Γὰρ καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ
(one worthy of the name). For both generals and captains

ἔπλευσαν πρὸς ἐκεῖνον
| sailed to him [came to him from other countries to enter

οὐ ἕνεκα χρημάτων, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ
into his service] not on-account of-money, but because

ἔγνωσαν εἶναι κερδαλεώτερον πειθαρχεῖν
they-knew (it) to-be (was) more-profitable to-obey

Κύρῳ καλῶς, ἢ τὸ κέρδος κατὰ μῆνα.
(and serve) Cyrus well | than the gain for (a) month

18. Ἀλλὰ μὲν εἴ τίς
[than any amount of monthly wages]. But indeed if any-one

γέ, αὐτῷ προστάξαντί τι, ὑπηρετήσειεν
at-least, he having-commanded anything, should-have-assisted-to-do

καλῶς οὐδενὶ πώποτε
(it) (executed his orders) well, to-no-one (acting thus) did-he ever

εἴασε τὴν προθυμίαν ἀχάριστον.
allow — (his) alacrity (diligence) (to go) unrewarded.

Τοιγαροῦν δὴ κράτιστοι ὑπηρέται παντὸς
Consequently — | the-best servants-and-officers of-every

ἔργου ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι Κύρῳ.
work (or undertaking) were-said to-be to-Cyrus [the best

19. Εἰ δὲ
talents for every undertaking were at Cyrus' command]. If also

ὁρᾷη τινα ὄντα δεινὸν οἰκονόμον
he-saw (noticed) any-one (*being*) (that was) (a) skilful manager |

ἐκ τοῦ δικαίου, καὶ κατασκευά-
from — justice [with strict regard to justice], and improving-the-

ζοντά, τε χώρας, ἧς ἄρχοι, καὶ ποιουντα
land, not-only of (the) country which he-governed, but-also making

προσόδους ἂν πώποτε
(an) increased produce (securing income from it), he would never

ἀφείλετο οὐδένα ἀλλ' ἀεὶ
take-away anything (from such a person), but always (rather)

προσεδίδου πλείω· ὥστε
added more (gave him something in addition); so-that

καὶ ἐπόνουν ἡδέως, καὶ ἐκτῶντο θαῤῥαλέως,
— (men) toiled cheerfully, and acquired (property) confidently,

καὶ αὖ ὅ τις ἐπέπατο ἥκιστα ἔκρυπτε
and moreover what any-one had-acquired the-least did-he-conceal

Κῦρον· γὰρ ἐφαίνετο οὐ φθονῶν
(it) from-Cyrus; | for he-was-evidently not envying [for he evidently

τοῖς πλουτοῦσιν φανερῶς,
did not envy] — (those who) acquired-wealth openly

ἀλλὰ πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς χρήμασι
but was-endeavoring to-use (bring into use) the wealth
τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων. 20. Ὅσους
of-those concealing (who concealed) (it). As-many
φίλους γε μὴν ποιήσαιτο, καὶ γνοίη
friends as — indeed he-might-make, and knew (them)
ὄντας εὔνους, καὶ κρίνειε εἶναι
being (to be) well-disposed (to him), and might-judge (them) to-be
ἱκανοὺς συνεργούς, ὅ τι
fit coöperators (capable of assisting him), | in whatever
βουλόμενος τυγχάνοι κατεργάζεσθαι,
wishing he-might-happen to accomplish [in anything he
ὁμολογεῖται πρὸς πάντων
might wish to accomplish], he-is-acknowledged by all
γενέσθαι δὴ κράτιστος θεραπεύειν.
to-have-been certainly the-best (and most successful) to-gain-their-favor
21. Γὰρ καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο
(in attaching them to him). For also (for) this same (reason)
ἕνεκα οὗπερ αὐτὸς ᾤετο δεῖσθαι φίλων
on-account of-which he-himself thought (that) he-needed friends, (namely)
ὡς ἔχοι συνεργούς, καὶ αὐτὸς
that he-might-have coöperators (in his undertakings), — he-himself
ἐπειρᾶτο εἶναι κράτιστος συνεργὸς τοῖς
endeavored to-be the-best (an efficient) assistant to —
φίλοις ὅτου τοῦτου αἰσθάνοιτο ἕκαστον
(his) friends (in) whatever that he-might-perceive each-one
— ἐπιθυμοῦντα.
(any of them) desiring (to accomplish).
22. Δὲ μὲν οἶμαι γε ὢν εἷς ἀνὴρ
And indeed I-think | (that) he at-least being one man
ἐλάμβανε πλεῖστα δῶρα
[that he] received the-most presents (more presents, perhaps,
διὰ πολλά· δὲ
than any other single individual), (and) for many (reasons); but
ταῦτα διεδίδου τοῖς φίλοις μάλιστα
these (presents) he-distributed (among) — (his) friends most

δὴ πάντων, σκοπῶν πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους
indeed (of) all (men), looking to the manners
ἑκάστου, καὶ ὅτου ὁρῴη ἕκαστον μάλιστα
of-each, and (to that) of-which he-saw each-one the-most
δεόμενον. 23. Καὶ ὅσα τις πέμποι
in-want. And whatever (present) any-one might-send
κόσμον τῷ σώματι αὐτοῦ
(sent) (him as an) ornament | for-the body of-him [for his person],
ἢ ὡς εἰς πόλεμον, ἢ ὡς εἰς
either as-if (whether) for (use in) war, or merely for (personal)
καλλωπισμόν, καὶ περὶ τούτων ἔφασαν
ornament (dress), — concerning these (presents) they-said
λέγειν, ὅτι μὲν τὸ σῶμα ἑαυτοῦ ἂν οὐ
(that) he-remarked, | that indeed the body of-himself could not
δύναιτο κοσμηθῆναι
be-able to-have-been-adorned [that he could not decorate his own
πᾶσι τούτοις, δὲ νομίζοι
person] with-all these (presents), but he-might-think (considered)
φίλους καλῶς κεκοσμημένους
friends handsomely adorned (well equipped) (to be)
μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ. 24. Καὶ
the-greatest ornament to (a) man (man could have). | And
μὲν τὸ νικᾶν τὰ μεγάλα
indeed the to-surpass [the surpassing] the great [greatly] [and in-
τοὺς φίλους ποιοῦντα
deed that he should greatly outdo] — (his) friends (in) doing
εὖ οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, ἐπειδή γε ἦν καὶ
good (is) nothing wonderful, since at-least he-was also
δυνατώτερος· δὲ τὸ περιεῖναι
the-more-able; | but the to-be-superior [but that he should excel]
τῶν φίλων τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ, καὶ τῷ προθυμεῖσθαι
— (his) friends — in-kind-attentions, and | the to-be-eager
χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἔμοιγε
[his eagerness] to-gratify (and oblige), these, to-me-at-least,
δοκεῖ εἶναι μᾶλλον ἀγαστά.
seem (appear) to-be more admirable (worthy of admiration).

25. Γὰρ Κῦρος πολλάκις ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου ἡμι-
For Cyrus often sent jars of-wine half-
δεεῖς ὁπότε λάβοι
empty (to some of his friends) whenever he-might-receive (received) (any)
πάνυ ἡδὺν λέγων, ὅτι οὔπω δὴ πολλοῦ
very sweet (fine-flavored), saying, that never-yet truly for (a) long
χρόνου ἐπιτύχοι ἡδίονι οἴνῳ τούτου·
time did-he-meet (had he met) with-sweeter wine (than) this;
οὖν ἔπεμψε τοῦτον σοὶ, καὶ δεῖταί σου
therefore he-sent this (some of it) to-you, and he-begs you
ἐκπιεῖν τοῦτον τήμερον σὺν οἷς φιλεῖς
to-drink (it) this to-day with those-whom you-love
μάλιστα. 26. Πολλάκις δὲ ἤπεμπε ἡμιβρώτους
most (best). Often indeed he-sent | half-eaten
χῆνας καὶ ἡμίσεα ἄρτων, καὶ ἄλλα
geese (partly eaten) and halves of-loaves, and other
τοιαῦτα, κελεύων τὸν φέροντα ἐπιλέγειν·
such (things), requesting the bearer to-say
Κῦρος ἥσθη τούτοις· οὖν
[when he presented them]: "Cyrus was-delighted with-these; therefore
βούλεται καὶ σὲ γεύσασθαι τούτων. 27. Ὅπου
he-wishes — you (also) to-taste of-them." Whenever
δὲ χιλὸς εἴη πάνυ σπάνιος, δ' αὐτὸς ἐδύνατο
indeed fodder was very scarce, and he was-able
παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ ἔχειν
to-procure-it | through the to-have [on account of
πολλοὺς ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν
his having] many servants and on-account-of the
ἐτιμέλειαν, διαπέμπων τοὺς
care (which he took), sending-it-about (among) — (his)
φίλοις ἐκέλευε ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χιλόν
friends, he-ordered (them) to-throw this — fodder
τοῖς ἵπποις ἄγουσιν τὰ σώματα ἑαυτῶν
to-the horses | carrying the bodies of-them [that carried them],
ὡς πεινῶντες μὴ ἄγωσι τοὺς
so-that (the horses) hungering (hungry) may not carry the

φίλους ἑαυτοῦ. 28. Εἰ δὲ δή ποτε
friends of-himself (his friends). If — indeed at-any-time

πορεύοιτο, καὶ πλεῖστοι μέλλοιεν
he-might-proceed (went anywhere), and many might-be-about

ὄψεσθαι, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους
(were likely) to-see (him), calling-to — (his) friends

ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὡς δηλοίη οὓς
he-held-earnest-conversation-with-them, that he-might-show (those) whom

τιμᾷ. Ὥστε ἔγωγε ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω
he-honored. So-that I-at-least from (that) which I-hear (from what

κρίνω οὐδένα οὔτε
I have heard) judge (think) (that) no-one either of (the)

Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρβάρων πεφιλῆσθαι
Greeks or of (the) barbarians to-have-been-(was)-loved

ὑπὸ πλειόνων. 29. Δὲ καὶ τόδε
by more (persons). And — this (the following)

τεκμήριον τούτου, οὐδεὶς μὲν ἀπῄει πρὸς
(is a) proof of-this, no-one indeed deserted to (the)

βασιλέα παρὰ Κύρου, ὄντος
king from Cyrus, he-being (though he was a subject no

δούλου· πλὴν Ὀρόντας
better than a) slave (of the king); except Orontes (who)

ἐπεχείρησε· καὶ δὴ οὗτος ταχὺ εὗρε
attempted (to do so); and indeed this (he) soon found

αὐτὸν ὃν ᾤετο εἶναι πιστόν οἱ φιλαίτε-
him (the person) whom he-thought to-be faithful to-him more-

ρον Κύρῳ ἢ ἑαυτῷ· δὲ πολλοὶ ἀπῆλθον παρὰ
friendly to-Cyrus than to-himself; but many deserted from

βασιλέως πρὸς Κῦρον, ἐπειδὴ ἐγένοντο
(the) king to Cyrus, after they-became

πολέμιοι ἀλλήλοις, καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα
enemies to-one-another, and these too — (men) the-most

ἀγαπώμενοι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ, νομίζοντες
(greatly) beloved by him (the king), thinking (that)

ὄντες ἀγαθοὶ παρὰ Κύρῳ, ἂν τυγχάνειν
being brave (soldiers) under Cyrus, — to-obtain

ἀξιωτέρας τιμῆς
(they would obtain) more-worthy honor (adequate reward for their

ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ. 30. Δὲ καὶ τὸ
services) than from (the) king. And also — (that)

γενόμενον αὐτῷ ἐν τῇ τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου
happening (what occurred) to-him at the end — of (his) life

μέγα τεκμήριον, ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς
(time of his death) (is a) great proof that — he

ἦν ἀγαθὸς, καὶ ἐδύνατο ὀρθῶς κρίνειν τοὺς
was brave, and could accurately judge — (those)

πιστοὺς καὶ εὐνους καὶ βεβαίους. 31. Γὰρ
faithful (to him), — well-disposed and constant. For

αὐτοῦ ἀποθνήσκοντος, πάντες οἱ
he dying (when he was killed), all —

φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι παρ᾽ αὐτὸν ἀπέθανον
(his) friends and table-companions with him died

μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου, πλὴν Ἀριαίου· οὗτος
fighting in-defence-of Cyrus, except Ariæus; this

δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν ἐπὶ
(he) indeed | stationed happened [happened to be stationed] on

τῷ εὐωνύμῳ, ἄρχων τοῦ ἱππικοῦ· δ᾽ ὡς
the left (wing), commanding the cavalry; but when

ἤσθετο Κῦρον πεπτωκότα
he-learned (of) Cyrus having-fallen (that Cyrus had fallen in the

ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ τὸ πᾶν
battle) he-fled having (taking) — (with him) the entire

στράτευμα οὗ ἡγεῖτο.
army which he-commanded.

CHAPTER X.

The head and right hand of Cyrus are cut off. Artaxerxes pursues Ariæus, plunders the camp of Cyrus, and then returns to attack the victorious Greeks, who put him to flight, recover what he had seized, and return to their camp.

1. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἡ κεφαλὴ Κύρου ἀποτέμνεται
THEN indeed the head of-Cyrus is-cut-off,
καὶ ἡ δεξιά χεὶρ. Δὲ βασιλεὺς, καὶ οἱ
and-also the (his) right hand. But (the) king, and — (the
σὺν αὐτῷ, διώκων εἰσπίπτει εἰς τὸ Κυρεῖον
troops) with him, pursuing fall | upon the Cyrean
στρατόπεδον· καὶ μὲν οἱ
camp [upon the camp of Cyrus]; and indeed — (those soldiers)
μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἵστανται ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι
with Ariæus no-longer stand, but flee
διὰ τοῦ στρατοπέδου αὑτῶν εἰς τὸν
through | the camp of-them [their own camp] to the
σταθμὸν, ἔνθεν ὥρμηντο· δ᾽ ἐλέγοντο εἶναι
station whence they-had-(last)-started; | and there-were-said to-be
τέτταρες παρασάγγαι τῆς ὁδοῦ.
four parasangs of-the road [which was said to be four
2. Δὲ βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν
parasangs distant). But (the) king and — (those) with
αὐτῷ τε διαρπάζουσι τὰ ἄλλα πολλὰ,
him not-only plunder — other (things) many (in great
καὶ λαμβάνει τὴν Φωκαΐδα τὴν
quantities), but-also take the Phocæan (woman), the
παλλακίδα Κύρου καὶ λεγομένην εἶναι, τὴν
mistress of-Cyrus, — (who) was-said to-be —
σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν. 3. Δὲ ἡ νεωτέρα ἡ
accomplished and beautiful. But the (his) younger (mistress), —
Μιλησία, ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν
(a) Milesian (woman), having-been-taken by — (some of the sol-
ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἐκφεύγει γυμνὴ
diers) about (the) king, escapes • | naked [without her outer
πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, οἳ ἔχοντες ὅπλα
garments] to (those of) the Greeks who having arms

ἔτυχον ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις·
happened (to be stationed) among (to guard) the baggage-train;
καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες
and having-been-drawn-up-(drawing themselves up)-against (the Per-
ἀπέκτειναν πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν ἁρπαζόντων,
sians), they-killed many — of — (those) plundering,
δὲ οἱ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέθανον· γε
but — (some) also of-themselves (their own number) died; at-least
μὴν οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔσωσαν ταύτην,
indeed they-did not flee, but not-only saved this
καὶ ἄλλα, ὁπόσα ἐγένοντο ἐντὸς
(woman), but-also other (things), whatever were within (the
αὐτῶν καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνθρωποι,
lines) of-them (their lines), both property and men,
πάντα ἔσωσαν. 4. Ἐνταῦθα τε βασιλεὺς καὶ
all were-saved. There both (the) king and
οἱ Ἕλληνες διέσχον ἀλλήλων ὡς τριάκοντα
the Greeks were-distant from-one-another about thirty
στάδια, οἱ μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς
stadia, the (Greeks) — pursuing — (those who had been
καθ' αὑτοὺς, ὡς νικῶντες πάντας,
opposed) to them, as conquering all (as if they had con-
δ' οἱ ἁρπάζοντες, ὡς ἤδη νικῶντες
quered all), — the (Persians) plundering, as now conquering
πάντες. 5. Δ' ἐπεὶ μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες
all (as if they were victorious). But when indeed the Greeks
ᾔσθοντο, ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι
perceived (found) that (the) king with (his) army
εἴη ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις, δὲ βασιλεὺς
might-be (was) among — (their) baggage-train, and (the) king
αὖ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους, ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες
on-the-other-hand heard from-Tissaphernes, that the Greeks
νικῷεν τὰ
might-be-(were)-conquering (had routed) the (the part of his army)
καθ' αὑτοὺς, καὶ διώκοντες οἴχονται εἰς τὸ
opposed to-them, and pursuing, they-advance to — (were

πρόσθεν, ἐνταῦθα δὴ βασιλεὺς μὲν
going) forward, there truly (then the) king indeed
τε ἀθροίζει τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ
not-only | collects —(those) of-himself [assembles his forces], but-also
συντάττεται· δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος καλέσας
draws-them-up-in-line; but — (while) Clearchus having-called
Πρόξενον, γὰρ ἦν πλησιαίτατος, ἐβουλεύετο,
Proxenus, for he-was the-nearest, consulted (with
εἰ πέμποιέν τινας, ἢ πάντες
him), if (whether) they-should-send some (of the troops), or all
ἴοιεν ἀρήξοντες ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
should-go | about-helping [to relieve] (*to*) the camp.

6. Ἐν τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς ἦν πάλιν
During this (time) also (the) king was again
δῆλος προσιὼν, ὡς ἐδόκει ὄπισθεν. Καὶ μὲν οἱ
evidently approaching, as it-seemed in-the-rear. And indeed the
Ἕλληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο
Greeks having-faced-about (wheeling around) prepared-themselves,
ὡς προσιόντος ταύτῃ καὶ δεξόμενοι·
as-if (the king) were-advancing in-that (direction) and-also receiving
δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς μὲν οὐκ ἦγε
(to receive) (him); but the king, however, did not lead (his
ταύτῃ, δὲ ᾗ παρῆλ-
troops) in-that (direction), but (by the same route) by-which he-had-
θεν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου
(before)-passed beyond (on the outside of) — (their) left
κέρατος, ταύτῃ καὶ ἀπήγαγεν, ἀναλαβὼν
wing, by-the-same (way) also he-led-back (his forces), taking-with
καὶ τοὺς αὐτομολήσαντας ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
(him) both — (those) having-deserted in (during) the battle
κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καὶ Τισσαφερνην, καὶ τοὺς
to the Greeks, and Tissaphernes, and —
σὺν αὐτῷ. 7. Γὰρ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, οὐκ
(those) with him. For — Tissaphernes did not
ἔφυγεν ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ, ἀλλὰ διήλασε κατὰ
flee in the first encounter, but charged against

τοὺς Ἕλληνας πελταστὰς παρὰ τὸν
the Greek targeteers along (close to the banks of) the

ποταμὸν· δὲ διελαύνων μὲν κατέκαυνε
river; but breaking-through (the ranks) he — killed

οὐδένα, δ᾽ οἱ Ἕλληνες διαστάντες
no-one, but the Greeks standing-apart (to let them pass through)

ἔπαιον καὶ ἠκόντιζον
struck (his men with their swords) and hurled (their javelins)

αὐτοὺς· Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης ἦρχε τῶν
at-them; Episthenes, — (the) Amphipolite, commanded the

πελταστῶν, καὶ ἐλέγετο γενέσθαι φρόνιμος.
targeteers, and was-said to-be (a) prudent (and able

8. Δ᾽ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης οὖν, ὡς ἔχων
commander.) But — Tissaphernes therefore, when having

μεῖον ἀπηλλάγη, μὲν
| less [the worst of it], was-forced-to-depart (withdrew), indeed he-does

οὐκ ἀναστρέφει πάλιν, δὲ ἀφικόμενος εἰς τὸ
not turn-back again, but having-arrived at the

στρατόπεδον τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, συντυγχάνει
camp — of-the Greeks, he-meets-with (the)

βασιλεῖ ἐκεῖ, καὶ δὴ συνταξάμενοι ἐπο-
king there, and — (then) having-drawn-up-their-forces they-

ρεύοντο πάλιν ὁμοῦ. 9. Δ᾽ ἐπεὶ ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ
marched back together. But when they-were opposite the

εὐώνυμον κέρας τῶν Ἑλλήνων, οἱ Ἕλληνες
left wing of-the Greeks, the Greeks

ἔδεισαν, μὴ προσάγοιεν πρὸς τὸ κέρας
feared | lest they-might-lead against — (that) wing [lest

καὶ περιπτύξαντες ἀμφο-
they should attack that wing] and enclosing (them) on-

τέρωθεν κατακόψειαν αὐτούς· καὶ ἐδόκει
both-sides they-might-cut them off; and it-seemed (best)

αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ κέρας, καὶ
to-them (therefore) to-fold-back (draw back) the wing, and

ποιήσασθαι τὸν ποταμὸν ὄπισθεν. 10. Ἐν
to-put the river in-the-rear. In (the time)

ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο,
in-which (while) indeed — they-were-planning (this manœuvre),
καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς παραμειψάμενος εἰς τὸ
— — (the) king having-changed (his line) into the
αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν φάλαγγα,
same form, he-placed (it) fronting the phalanx
ὥσπερ τὸ πρῶτον
(he presented his force opposite them), | just-as — (at) first
συνήει μαχούμενος.
he-might-have-come fighting [just as he had at first come to
Δὲ ὡς οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶδον ὄντας τε
battle]. But when the Greeks saw (the enemy) being not-only
ἐγγύς καὶ παρατεταγμένους, αὖθις παιανίσαντες
near but-also drawn-up-in-order-of-battle, again singing-the-pæan
ἐπῆεσαν ἔτι πολὺ προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ
they-advanced (upon them) still much more-spirited than —
πρόσθεν. 11. Δ' αὖ οἱ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἐδέχοντο,
before. But again the barbarians did not await
ἀλλ' ἔφευγον ἐκ πλέονος ἢ τὸ
(their attack), but fled from a-greater (distance) | than —
πρόσθεν·
before (when the Greeks were at a greater distance from them
δ' οἱ ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι τινός
than before); but — (the Greeks) pursued (them) as-far-as a-certain
κώμης· δ' ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔστησαν. 12. Γὰρ
village; but there the Greeks halted. For
ἦν γήλοφος ὑπὲρ τῆς κώμης, ἐφ' οὗ οἱ
there-was (a) hill above the village, upon which — (those)
ἀμφὶ βασιλέα, ἀνεστράφησαν, μὲν
about (the) king stood-collected-together, (there-were) indeed
οὐκέτι πεζοὶ, δὲ ὁ λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη
no-longer (any) infantry (to be seen), but the hill was-filled
τῶν ἱππέων, ὥστε μὴ γιγνώσκειν τὸ
with-the cavalry, | so-that they-did not know the (what)
ποιούμενον.
was-doing [so that the Greeks could not tell what the infantry

Καὶ ἔφασαν ὁρᾶν τὸ βασίλειον
might be doing]. And they-said (that) they-saw the royal
σημεῖον τινα χρυσοῦν ἀετόν ἀνατεταμένον ἐπὶ
standard, a-kind-of golden eagle mounted on
πέλτης.
(a) shield.

13. Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐχώρουν ἐνταῦθ',
When indeed — the Greeks advanced to-that-place,
οἱ ἱππεῖς δὴ καὶ λείπουσι τὸν λόφον, οὐ μὴν ἔτι
the cavalry then — leave the hill, not however —
ἀθρόοι, ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν,
in-a-body, | but others in-other-direction [but dispersed in different
δ' ὁ λόφος ἐψιλοῦτο τῶν ἱππέων·
directions], and the hill was (gradually) thinned of-the cavalry;
δὲ τελος καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. 14. Ὁ
till at-last — all (had) gone. —
Κλέαρχος οὖν οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον,
Clearchus therefore did not march up the hill,
ἀλλ' στήσας ὑπὸ αὐτὸν πέμπει
but having-halted | under [at the foot of] it, he-sends
Δύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον,
Lycius the Syracusan and another up the hill,
καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ
and he-orders (them), after-having-viewed (seen) — (what) (was going
ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου ἀπαγγεῖλαι τί ἐστι.
on) on the hill, to-report (to him) what is (there) (what
15. Καὶ ὁ Λύκιος ἤλασε τε
they saw). And — Lycius (accordingly) rode-up — (the hill),
καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγγέλλει ὅτι
and, seeing (having made his observations), reports that
φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. Δὲ σχεδὸν ὅτε
they-flee — with-all-their-might. And nearly when (just
ταῦτα ἦν ἥλιος καὶ ἐδύετο.
as) these (things) | were [happened] (the) sun — set.
16. Δ' ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔστησαν, καὶ θέμενοι
And here the Grecks halted, and placing

τὰ ὅπλα ἀνεπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα
(stacking) — (their) arms rested; and at-the-same-time
μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὐδαμοῦ φαίνοιτο
indeed they-wondered that Cyrus nowhere appeared
οὐδ' ἄλλος οὐδεὶς παρείη
nor did (any) other one (any one) come (bring word)
αὐτοῦ. Γὰρ ᾔδεσαν οὐ αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα,
from-him. For they-did-not-know (that) he was-dead,
ἀλλ' εἴκαζον ἢ οἴχεσθαι διώκοντα
but they-supposed (him) either to-go-away pursuing (that he
ἢ προεληλακέναι
had gone in pursuit of) (the enemy), or to-have-pushed-on-before
καταληψόμενον τι. **17.** Καὶ
about-to-seize (had pushed on to secure) some (post). And
αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ μείναντες αὐτοῦ ἄγοιντο
they deliberated whether remaining there they-should-bring
ἐνταῦθα τὰ σκευοφόρα, ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ
thither the baggage-train, or return to the
στρατόπεδον· ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς οὖν ἀπιέναι·
camp; it-seemed to-them, thereupon, (best) to-return;
καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς ἀμφὶ δόρπηστον.
and they-arrived at the tents about supper-time.
18. Τοῦτο ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος μὲν ταύτης τῆς
Such was the end (close) indeed of-this —
ἡμέρας. Δὲ καταλαμβάνουσι τε τὰ πλεῖστα
day. But they-find not-only the most
τῶν ἄλλων χρημάτων διηρπασμένα,
of — (their) other things (baggage) plundered
καὶ τι σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν εἴ ἦν·
(and wasted), but-also whatever food or drink there may-be (was);
καὶ τὰς ἁμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ οἴνου, ἃς
and the wagons (too) full-of meal and wine, which
Κῦρος παρεσκευάσατο, ἵνα εἴ ποτε σφοδρὰ
Cyrus (had) provided, so-that if ever great-scarcity
ἔνδεια λάβοι τὸ στράτευμα, διαδοίη
(of provisions) — should-seize the army, he-might-distribute

τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, αὗται ἅμαξαι δ' ἦσαν
(them) among-the Greeks, these wagons — were

τετρακόσιαι ὡς ἐλέγοντο, καὶ ταύτας τότε
four-hundred (in number) as they-said, and these — then

οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ διήρπασαν. 19. Ὥστε
— (the soldiers) with (the) king plundered. So-that

οἱ πλεῖστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἦσαν ἄδειπνοι·
the most of-the Greeks were (in consequence) supperless;

δὲ καὶ ἦσαν ἀνάριστοι· γὰρ δὴ πρὶν
but also they-were (had been) without-dinner; for — before

τὸ στράτευμα καταλῦσαι πρὸς ἄριστον
the army (had) halted for dinner (the)

βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. Οὕτως οὖν μὲν
king appeared. Thus (in this condition), therefore, —

διεγένοντο ταύτην τὴν νύκτα.
they-passed that (the) — night.

BOOK II. — CHAPTER I.

The Greeks are surprised to hear of the death of Cyrus. Ariæus resolves to return to Ionia, contrary to the advice of Clearchus, who incites him to make an attempt on the throne of Persia. Artaxerxes sends a message to the Greeks; their reply.

1. Ὡς μὲν οὖν τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἠθροίσθη
How — then the Grecian (force) was-collected
Κύρῳ, ὅτε ἐστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν
for-Cyrus, when he-led-his-army (undertook his expedition) against —
ἀδελφὸν Ἀρταξέρξην, καὶ ὅσα ἐπάχθη
(his) brother Artaxerxes, and what was-done (occurred)
ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ, καὶ ὡς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο, καὶ ὡς
in the march-up, and how — (the) battle took-place, and how
Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε, καὶ ὡς οἱ Ἕλληνες
Cyrus died (was killed), and how the Greeks,
ἐλθόντες ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐκοιμήθησαν, οἰόμενοι
having-come to the camp, went-to-rest, | thinking
νικᾶν τὰ πάντα,
to-conquer — all [believing that they were completely victorious],
καὶ Κῦρον ζῆν, δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ
and (that) Cyrus (still) lived, (all this) has-been-related in the
πρόσθεν λόγῳ. 2. Δὲ ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ
preceding book. But | at-the-same-time with-the day
οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνελθόντες ἐθαύμαζον,
[at dawn of day] the generals having-come-together were-surprised
ὅτι Κῦρος οὔτε πέμποι ἄλλον σημανοῦντα
that Cyrus had neither sent any-one-else signifying (to
ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν, οὔτε
give directions) what is-necessary to-do (how they should act), nor
αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. Ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς
did-he himself appear. It-seemed therefore (best) to-them,
συσκευασαμένοις ἃ εἶχον, καὶ ἐξοπλι-
having-packed-up what (baggage) they-had, and having-armed-
σαμένοις, προϊέναι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν ἕως
themselves, | to-march in the forward [to advance] until

συμμίξειαν Κύρῳ. 3. Δὲ ἤδη ὄντων
they-formed-a-junction (met) with-Cyrus. But now being

ὁρμῇ, ἅμα
in-motion (when they were on the point of starting) at-the-same-time

ἀνίσχοντι ἡλίῳ Προκλῆς ὁ ἄρχων
with-the-rising sun (as the sun was rising), Procles, the governor-of

Τευθρανίας γεγονὼς ἀπὸ Δημαράτου τοῦ
Teuthrania, having-(who was)-descended from Damaratus the

Λάκωνος, καὶ Γλοῦς ὁ Ταμώ ἦλθε.
Lacedæmonian, and (with him) Glus, the (son of) Tamos, came

Οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος μὲν τέθνηκε,
(to them). These informed (them) that Cyrus indeed was-dead,

δὲ Ἀριαῖος πεφευγὼς εἴη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων
and (that) Ariæus, having-fled, was, with the other

βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ ὅθεν ὡρμῶντο τῇ
barbarians, at the station from-which they-started on-the

προτεραίᾳ, καὶ λέγοι, ὅτι ἂν μὲν
day-before, and (that) he-said that he might — (would)

περιμείνειεν αὐτούς ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν, εἰ μέλ-
wait-for them that — day, if they-

λοιεν ἥκειν, δὲ φαίη
might-intend to-come (would come), — (for) he-said (that he should) (to)

ἀπιέναι τῇ ἄλλῃ ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας, ὅθενπερ ἦλθε.
depart on-the next (day) for Ionia, whence he-had-come.

4. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα καὶ
The generals, hearing these (this news), and

οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πυνθανόμενοι
the other Greeks, hearing (on learning it from them),

ἔφερον βαρέως. Δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε
bore-it grievously. But Clearchus spoke (to them)

τάδε· Ὤφελε ἀλλὰ μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν·
thus: "Would — indeed (that) Cyrus (still) lived;

δὲ ἐπεὶ τετελεύτηκεν, ἀπαγγελλετε
but since he-has-died, carry-back-word (from us)

Ἀριαίῳ, ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε
to-Ariæus that we are-victorious not-only (over the)

βασιλέα, καὶ ὡς ὁρᾶτε, οὐδεὶς ἔτι μάχεται
king, but, as you-see, no-one any-longer offers
ἡμῖν, καὶ εἰ μὴ ἤλθετε ὑμεῖς, ἂν
us battle, and if you-had not come to-us, we-should
ἐπορυόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλέα. Ἐπαγγελλόμεθα δὲ
have-marched against (the) king. We-promise also
Ἀριαίῳ, ἐὰν ἔλθῃ ἐνθάδε, καθίσειν
Ariæus, if he-(will)-come here, to-place (we will place)
αὐτόν εἰς τὸν θρόνον τὸν βασίλειον· γὰρ
him on the throne, the royal (of the king); for
τῶν νικώντων μάχῃ καὶ ἐστί τὸ
— (to those) conquering in-battle also (to them) | is the
ἄρχειν. 5. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ᾽
to-rule [it belongs also to rule]." Saying these (words)
ἀποστελλει τοὺς ἀγγελους, καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς Χειρί-
he-sends-away the messengers, and with them Chei-
σοφον τὸν Λάκονα καὶ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλόν·
risophus the Lacedæmonian and Menon the Thessalian;
γὰρ καὶ Μένων αὐτὸς ἐβούλετο· γὰρ ἦν
for indeed Menon himself desired (to go); for he-was (a)
φίλος καὶ ξένος Ἀριαίου.
friend and guest of-Ariæus (connected by the ties of hospitality).
6. Οἱ μὲν ᾤχοντο, δὲ Κλέαρχος
— (These) then departed (on their mission), but Clearchus
περιέμενε. Δὲ τὸ στράτευμα ἐπορίζετο
waited (for them to return). And the army supplied-itself
σῖτον ὅπως ἐδύνατο ἐκ τῶν ὑποζυγίων,
with-food as-well-as they-were-able from — (their) beasts-of-burden,
κόπτοντες τοὺς βοὺς καὶ ὄνους· δὲ προϊόντες
slaughtering — (their) oxen and asses; and going-forward
μικρὸν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, οὗ ἡ μάχη
(a) little from the army, (to) where the battle
ἐγένετο ἐχρῶντο ξύλοις,
took-place, they-got (they collected and used) wood (for fuel),
τε τοῖς οἰστοῖς, οὖσιν πολλοῖς
not-only (from) the arrows, being many (which lay in great

οὓς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἠνάγκαζον τοὺς
quantities), which the Greeks compelled — (those)
αὐτομολοῦντας παρὰ βασιλέως ἐκβάλλειν,
deserting from (the) king to-throw-away,
καὶ τοῖς γέρροις, καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι
and the wicker-shields (of the Persians), and the shields
ταῖς ξυλίναις ταῖς Αἰγυπτίαις. Δὲ καὶ πολλαὶ
the wooden-ones (of) the Egyptians. And also many
πέλται καὶ ἅμαξαι ἔρημοι ἦσαν
light-shields and wagons emptied (of their contents) were
φέρεσθαι· χρώμενοι πᾶσι οἷς, ἕψοντες
to-be carried-off; using all which (material) (for) cooking
κρέα ἤσθιον ἐκείνην τὴν
(the) meat, they-eat (appeased their hunger for) that —
ἡμέραν.
day.

7. Καὶ ἦν ἤδη τε περὶ πλήθουσαν ἀγοράν,
And it-was now not-only | about full market (time)
καὶ κήρυκες ἔρχονται
[about the middle of the forenoon] when heralds arrived
παρὰ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι
from (the) king and Tissaphernes, | the — others
βάρβαροι δὲ εἷς αὐτῶν ἦν
(all of them) barbarians (foreigners), but one of-them was (a)
Ἕλλην Φαλῖνος, ὃς ἐτύγχανε ὢν
Greek, Phalinus (by name), who | happened being (chanced to be)
παρὰ Τισσαφέρνει, καὶ ἔχων ἐντίμως· [and
with Tissaphernes, | and (who) holding (him) honorably
καὶ γὰρ προσεποιεῖτο εἶναι
was highly esteemed by him]; — for he-pretended to-be
ἐπιστήμων τῶν τε ἀμφὶ τάξεις
skilled (in) the (matters) not-only pertaining-to (military) tactics,
καὶ ὁπλομαχίαν. 8. Δὲ οὗτοι
but-also (in the use of) fighting-with-heavy-arms. But these
προσελθόντες, καὶ καλέσαντες τοὺς
(heralds) having-approached, and having-called-to the

ἄρχοντας τῶν Ἑλλήνων, λέγουσιν ὅτι βασιλεὺς
generals of-the Greeks, said that (the) king
κελεύει τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει,
commanded the Greeks, | since conquering he-happens [since
καὶ ἀπέκτονε Κῦρον, παρα-
he had gained the victory], and slain Cyrus, (that) having-
δόντας τὰ ὅπλα, ἰόντας ἐπὶ
delivered-up (to deliver up) — (their) arms, (and) going (to go) | to
τὰς θύρας βασιλέως, εὑρίσκε-
the gates of (the) king [to the palace of the king], to-obtain-
σθαι ἄν δύνωνται τι ἀγαθόν.
for-themselves if they-can anything good [some favor from him].

9. Ταῦτα μὲν οἱ κήρυκες βασιλέως εἶπον· δὲ
Thus — the heralds of (the) king spoke; but
οἱ Ἕλληνες μὲν ἤκουσαν βαρέως,
the Greeks indeed heard (them) indignantly (were indignant),
δὲ Κλέαρχος ὅμως εἶπε τοσοῦτον, ὅτι εἴη οὐ
but Clearchus only said so-much (this), that it-was not
τῶν νικώντων παραδιδόναι τὰ
(the duty) of — (those) conquering to-deliver-up — (their)
ὅπλα· ἀλλ', μὲν ἔφη ὑμεῖς ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί
arms; "but," — said-he, "do you, O fellow- generals,
ἀποκρίνασθε τούτοις τε ὅ τι ἔχετε
reply to-these (men), not-only what you-hold (think)
κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον· δὲ ἐγὼ ἥξω
most-proper, but best; and I will-come (return)
αὐτίκα. Γὰρ τις τῶν ὑπηρετῶν
immediately." For one of-the attendants (just then)
ἐκάλεσε αὐτὸν, ὅπως ἴδοι τὰ ἱερὰ
called him, that he-might-see the (entrails of a) victim
ἐξῃρημένα· γὰρ ἔτυχε θυόμενος.
(that) had-(just)-been-taken-out; for he-happened (to be) sacrificing.

10. Ἔνθα δὴ Κλέανωρ μὲν ὁ Ἀρκὰς, ὢν
Then indeed Cleanor, — the Arcadian, being (since he was)
πρεσβύτατος, ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἂν πρόσθεν
the-oldest, answered that they would sooner

ἀποθάνοιεν ἢ παραδοίησαν
(rather) die than (that) they-would-deliver-up (surrender)
τὰ ὅπλα· δὲ Πρόξενος ὁ Θηβαῖος ἔφη, Ἀλλ'
— (their) arms; — Proxenus the Theban said, "But
ἐγώ ὦ Φαλῖνε θαυμάζω, πότερα βασιλεὺς αἰτεῖ
I, O Phalinus, wonder whether (the) king asks
τὰ ὅπλα ὡς κρατῶν ἢ ὡς δῶρα διὰ φιλίαν.
(for) — (our) arms as conquering or as gifts through friendship.
Γὰρ εἰ μὲν ὡς κρατῶν, τί δεῖ αὐτὸν
For if indeed as conquering, why does-it-become him (is it neces-
αἰτεῖν καὶ οὐκ ἐλθόντα
sary for him) to-ask (for them at all), but not (rather) coming
λαβεῖν; δὲ εἰ πείσας βούλεται γαβεῖν,
take (them)? but if having-persuaded (us) he-desires to-take
λεγέτω, τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις,
(them from us), let-him-say what will-be (left) to-the soldiers
ἐὰν χαρίσωνται αὐτῷ ταῦτα. 11. Πρὸς ταῦτα
if they-should-gratify him (in) this." To this
Φαλῖνος εἶπε, βασιλεὺς ἡγεῖται νι-
Phalinus said, "(The) king considers (himself) to-be-the-con-
κᾶν, ἐπεὶ ἀπέκτονε Κῦρον· γὰρ τίς ἔστιν
queror, since he-has-slain Cyrus; for who is-there (now)
αὐτῷ, ὅστις ἀντιποιεῖται τῆς ἀρχῆς; δὲ
against-him who disputes the sovereignty (with him)? | and
καὶ νομίζει ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἑαυτοῦ
also considers you to-be to-himself [he moreover considers you
ἔχων ἐν τῇ μήσῃ χώρᾳ ἑαυτοῦ,
as his captives], | having (you) in the middle country of-himself [hav-
καὶ ἐντὸς ἀδιαβάτων
ing you in the middle of his dominions], and within impassable
ποταμῶν, καὶ δυνάμενος ἀγαγεῖν ἐφ' ὑμᾶς
rivers, and being-able to-lead against you (such a)
πλῆθος ἀνθρώπων ὅσον εἰ παρέχοι ὑμῖν
multitude of-men (and) so-great (that) if he-should-allow-it to-you
οὐδὲ ἂν δύναισθε ἀποκτεῖναι.
neither would you be-able (it would be impossible) to-kill (them)."

12. Μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθηναῖος
After this-one (him) Theopompus (the) Athenian
εἶπεν, Ὦ Φαλῖνε, νῦν, ὡς σὺ ὁρᾷς, ἔστιν οὐδὲν
spoke, "O Phalinus, now, as you see, there-is nothing
ἄλλο ἀγαθὸν ἡμῖν, εἰ μὴ ὅπλα
else good (of value) to-us, | if not (except) (our) arms
καὶ ἀρετή. Οὖν μὲν ἔχοντες ὅπλα,
and courage. Therefore, indeed, having (our) arms,
οἰόμεθα ἂν καὶ χρῆσθαι τῇ
we-are-of-the-opinion (think) (that) we could also make-use —
ἀρετῇ, δὲ παραδόντες ἂν ταῦτα
(of our) courage, but giving-up — these (would be)
στερηθῆναι καὶ τῶν
to-deprive (us) (we should expect to be deprived) also —
σωμάτων. Οὖν μὴ οἴου
(of our) bodies (lives). Therefore do not suppose (that)
παραδώσειν ὑμῖν τὰ μόνα ἀγαθὰ ὄντα ἡμῖν·
we-will-give-up to-you the only good existing for-us
ἀλλὰ σὺν τούτοις
(the only things of value which we possess); but with these (in our
καὶ μαχούμεθα περὶ τῶν ἀγαθῶν
hands) we also may-fight (will fight) for the good-things
ὑμετέρων. 13. Δὲ ὁ Φαλῖνος ἀκούσας
of-yourselves (you possess)." But — Phalinus, having-heard
ταῦτα ἐγέλασε, καὶ εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὲν, ὦ
these (words), smiled, and said: "But indeed, O
νεανίσκε, ἔοικας φιλοσόφῳ, καὶ λέγεις
young-man, you-seem (to be like a) philosopher, and you-speak
οὐκ ἀχάριστα· ἴσθι μέντοι ὤν ἀνόητος,
not without-grace; | know, however, (you) being out-of-your-senses
εἰ οἴει τὴν
[be assured that you are foolish], if you-imagine (that) —
ὑμετέραν ἀρετὴν ἂν περιγενέσθαι
your valor — is-to-be-superior (could overcome) (to)
τῆς δυνάμεως βασιλέως. 14. Δὲ ἔφασαν
the power of (the) king." But they-reported

τινας ἄλλους ὑπομαλακιζο-
(that) certain others (of the generals), having-become-somewhat-

μένους λέγειν, ὡς καὶ ἐγένοντο πιστοὶ
timid-and-apprehensive, said, since — they-had-been faithful

Κύρῳ, καὶ ἂν γένοιντο ἄξιοι πολοῦ
to-Cyrus, — they might prove-themselves | worthy of-much to (the)

βασιλεῖ εἰ βούλοιτο γενέσθαι
king [of great service to the king] if he-was-willing to-become

φίλους· καὶ εἴτε θέλοι χρῆσθαι τι
(their) friend; and whether he-might-wish to-employ (them) in-any

ἄλλο, εἴτε στρατεύειν ἐπ'
other (service), (or if) — to-march (in an expedition) against

Αἴγυπτον, ἂν συγκαταστρέψαιντο αὐτῷ.
Egypt, they would assist-in-reducing-it for-him.

15. Ἐν τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ἦκε, καὶ
During this (in the meantime) Clearchus came, and

ἠρώτησεν εἰ ἀποκεκριμένοι εἶεν ἤδη. Δὲ Φαλῖνος
asked whether they-had-answered yet. But Phalinus

ὑπολαβών εἶπεν. Ὦ Κλέαρχε, οὗτοι λέγει
having-taken-up (in reply) said: "O Clearchus, these say

ἄλλος ἄλλα· δὲ
(one thing), others other (each gives a different answer); but

σὺ εἰπέ ἡμῖν, τί λέγεις. 16. Δ' ὁ
(now) you tell us what you-say (think)." Then —

εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ Φαλῖνε, ἄσμενος
he [Clearchus] said: "I, O Phalinus, am-glad

ἑώρακα σε, δὲ καὶ οἶμαι πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι·
I-have-seen you, and so, I-think, (are) all the others;

γὰρ τε σύ εἶ Ἕλλην, καὶ ἡμεῖς, ὄντες
for — you are (a) Greek, and we (are) (also), being

τοσοῦτοι ὅσους σὺ ὁρᾷς· ὄντες δὲ
so-many (in number) as you see; being —

ἐν τοιούτοις πράγμασι, συμβουλευόμεθά
in such circumstances, we (would) consult

σοι, τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν
with-you, (as to) what is-best to-do concerning (the message) which

λέγεις. 17. Οὖν, πρὸς θεῶν,
you-announce (bring) (from the king). Therefore, by (the) gods,

σὺ συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν ὅ τι
| do you consult with-us [give us such advice] what (as)

δοκεῖ σοι εἶναι κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον, καὶ ὅ
seems to-you to-be the-most-honorable and best, and which

οἴσει σοι τιμὴν εἰς τὸν χρόνον ἔπειτά ποτε
(such as) will-bring to-you honor in — time to-come, when

ἀναλεγόμενον ὅτι Φαλῖνος πεμφθεὶς παρὰ
it-is-related that Phalinus, having-been-sent from

βασιλέως, κελεύσων τοὺς Ἕλληνας παραδοῦναι
(the) king, commanding the Greeks to-deliver-up

τὰ ὅπλα, συνεβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς συμβουλευομέ-
— (their) arms, advised them taking-

νοις τάδε. Οἶσθα δὲ, ὅτι ἃ ἂν
counsel (with him), so-and-so. (For) you-know — that what you may

συμβουλεύσῃς ἀνάγκη λέγεσ-
have-advised (advise) (of a) necessity is-to-be-(will neces-

θαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι. 18. Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος
sarily be)-reported in — Greece." — — Clearchus

ὑπήγετο ταῦτα, καὶ βουλόμενος αὐτόν,
craftily-suggested these (things), — desiring (that) he,

τὸν πρεσβεύοντα παρὰ βασιλέως, συμβουλεῦσαι
— coming-as-envoy from (the) king, should-counsel

μὴ παραδοῦναι τὰ ὅπλα, ὅπως οἱ Ἕλληνες
(them) not to-surrender — (their) arms, that the Greeks

εἶεν μᾶλλον εὐέλπιδες. Δὲ Φαλῖνος
might-be more full-of-good-hopes (more hopeful). But Phalinus

ὑποστρέψας παρὰ τὴν δόξαν
[having-turned [adroitly evading this appeal], contrary to-the expectation

αὐτοῦ εἶπεν· 19. Ἐγώ, εἰ μὲν τῶν
of-him (Clearchus' expectation), said: "I, if indeed of—

μυρίων ἐλπίδων ἐστί τις μία ὑμῖν σωθῆναι
ten-thousand hopes there-is any one (remaining) to-you to-save

πολεμοῦντας βασιλεῖ, συμβουλεύω
(yourselves) fighting-against (the) king, advise (you)

μὴ παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα· εἰ δὲ τοι ἐστὶν
not to-surrender — (your) arms; if, however, — there-is

μηδεμία ἐλπὶς σωτηρίας ἄκοντος βασιλέως,
not-one hope (for you) of-safety opposing (the) king,

συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν σώζεσθαι ὅπῃ δυνατόν.
I-advise you to-save-yourselves | in-what-way possible

20. Δὲ Κλέαρχος
[in the only way in which it is possible]." But Clearchus

πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὲν δὴ σὺ λέγεις
to these (words) replied: "But indeed — do you say

ταῦτα· δὲ παρ' ἡμῶν
these (things) (such then is your advice); but for our (part)

ἀπάγγελλε τάδε, ὅτι ἡμεῖς οἰόμεθα, εἰ μὲν
announce this, that we think (that) if indeed

δέοι εἶναι φίλους βασιλεῖ
it-may-become (us) (if we are) to-become friends to (the) king,

ἂν ἄξιοι πλείονος εἶναι φίλοι,
|we would be-worthy of-more to-be friends [we would be more

ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ παρα-
valuable friends] having (retaining) — (our) arms than sur-

δόντες ἄλλῳ· δὲ εἰ δέοι
rendering (them) to-another; but (that) if it-is-necessary (for us)

πολεμεῖν, ἂν ἄμεινον πολεμεῖν ἔχοντες
to-make-war, (it) would (be) better to-make-war having

τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ παραδόντες ἄλλῳ.
(keeping) — (our) arms than giving (them) up to-another."

21. Δὲ ὁ Φαλῖνος εἶπε, Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ
But — Phalinus said, "These (this answer) — certainly

ἀπαγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ βασιλεὺς ἐκέλευσε
we-will-announce (report); but also (the) king commanded

εἰπεῖν ὑμῖν τάδε, ὅτι μὲν μένουσι αὐτοῦ
(us) to-say to-you this, that — (to you) remaining here

εἴησαν σπονδαί, προϊοῦσι δὲ καὶ ἀπιοῦσι
there-would-be (a) truce, (but) advancing — or | going-away

πόλεμος. Καὶ οὖν εἴπατε
[retreating] (there would be) war. And therefore tell (give

περὶ τούτου, πότερα μενεῖτε
us your answer) concerning this, whether you-will-remain (here)
καὶ εἰσι σπονδαί, ἢ ἀπαγγελῶ παρ᾽
and there-is (a) truce, or (whether) I-shall-announce from
ὑμῶν ὡς πολέμου ὄντος. 22. Δὲ
you | that war being [that there is war]." But
Κλέαρχος ἔλεξεν· Ἀπάγγελλε καὶ τοίνυν
Clearchus replied: "Announce (report) — therefore
περὶ τούτου, ὅτι καὶ δοκεῖ ἡμῖν, ταὐτὰ ἅπερ
concerning this, | that it also seems to-us the-same as (it does)
καὶ βασιλεῖ.
likewise to (the) king [that our resolution is the same as that of the
king]." "What, therefore, are these (and what is that)?" said — Pha-
Τί οὖν ἐστί ταῦτα; ἔφη ὁ Φα-
linus. — Clearchus answered: "If, indeed, we-stay
λῖνος. Ὁ Κλέαρχος ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἢν μὲν μένωμεν
(here), (a) truce, (if) we-retreat — or advance, war."
σπονδαί, ἀπιοῦσι δὲ καὶ προϊοῦσι πόλεμος.
But — (Phalinus) again asked (him): "Shall-I-announce
23. Δὲ ὁ πάλιν ἠρώτησε· Ἀπαγγελῶ
(a) truce or war?" But Clearchus answered
σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον; Δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀπεκρίνατο
the-same (made the same reply) again: (a) truce —
ταὐτὰ πάλιν· σπονδαὶ μὲν
remaining, but retreating or advancing war. But what
μένουσι, δὲ ἀπιοῦσι ἢ προϊοῦσι πόλεμος. Δὲ τι
— (he) might-do (intended to do) he-did not intimate.
ὁ ποιήσοι οὐ διεσήμηνε.

CHAPTER II.

The Greeks, joining Ariæus, form an alliance with him, and take counsel with him in reference to their return. During the night following the first day's march they are seized with a panic, which Clearchus allays.

1 Φαλῖνος μὲν δὴ ᾤχετο, καὶ οἱ σὺν
Phalinus — then departed, and — (his companions) with
αὐτῷ. Δὲ οἱ παρὰ Ἀριαίου ἦκον,
him. But (now) — (those) from Ariæus were-come (re-

Προκλῆς καὶ Χειρίσοφος· δὲ Μένων
turned) (namely) Procles and Cheirisophus; but Menon
ἔμενε αὐτοῦ παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ· δὲ οἵτοι ἔλεγον,
remained there with Ariæus; and these (they) reported
ὅτι Ἀριαῖος φαίη εἶναι πολλοὺς Πέρσας
that Ariæus said (that) there-are many Persians (of)
βελτίους ἑαυτοῦ, οὓς οὐκ ἀνασχέσθαι
superior (rank) (to) himself, who would not endure
αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντος· ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε συνα-
him (being king); but if you-wish to-depart-
πιέναι κελεύει ἥκειν ἤδη τῆς νυκτός·
(return)-with (him) he-desires (you) to-come now — (this) night;
δὲ εἰ μὴ, φησίν αὐτὸς ἀπιέναι
but if (you do) not, he-says (that) he (is) to-depart (will set
πρωΐ. 2. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος
out by himself) early-in-the-morning. And — Clearchus
εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ χρὴ ποιεῖν οὕτως·
said: "But it-is-necessary to-do so; (we must do)
ὥσπερ λέγετε, ἐὰν μὲν ἥκωμεν·
as you-say, if indeed we-might-come (decide to go) (to
δὲ εἰ μὴ πράττετε ὁποῖον τι
Ariæus); but if not, do whatever (adopt such meas-
ἂν οἴησθε μάλιστα συμφέρειν. Δὲ
ures as) you may think (to be) the-most advantageous." But
οὐδὲ τούτοις εἶπε ὅ τι ποιήσοι. 3. Δὲ
neither (for not even) to-them did-he-say what he-should-do. But
μετὰ ταῦτα, ἡλίου ἤδη δύνοντος,
after these (things), (the) sun now setting (when the
συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ
sun was setting), having-assembled the generals and
λοχαγοὺς ἔλεξε τοιάδε· Ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐμοί
captains, he-spoke as-follows: "O companions, to-me
θυομένῳ ἰέναι ἐπὶ
offering-a-sacrifice (with reference to) | to-go [marching] against (the)
βασιλέα τὰ ἱερά οὐκ ἐγίγνετο.
king the (signs of the) victims did not become (were not

Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα ἐγίγνετο οὐ·
propitious). And with-good-reason indeed they-were not (so);
γὰρ ὡς ἐγὼ νῦν πυνθάνομαι ἐστι ἐν πέσῳ
for as I now learn there-is in (the) middle
ἡμῶν καὶ βασιλέως, ὁ ναυσίπορος
(between) us and (the) king the navigable
ποταμός Τίγρης ὃν ἂν οὐ δυναίμεθα
river Tigris which we would not be-able
διαβῆναι ἄνευ πλοίων· δὲ ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν οὐ πλοῖα.
to-cross without boats; and we have not boats.
Μὲν δὴ γε οὐκ οἷόν τε μένειν
— Certainly (for us) at-least (it is) not possible to-remain
αὐτοῦ· γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτήδια ἔστιν οὐκ ἔχειν·
here; for the necessaries-of-life | are not to-have [we
δὲ ἰέναι παρὰ τοὺς
have no means of procuring provisions]; but to-go to the
φίλους Κύρου τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν πάνυ καλὰ
friends of-Cyrus the sacrifices were altogether (extremely) favorable
ἡμῖν. 4. Οὖν ὧδε χρὴ ποιεῖν·
to-us. Therefore thus it-is-necessary (for us) to-act (we must
ἀπιόντας δειπνεῖν ὅ τι
proceed thus): having-gone-away (separated) to-sup (on) whatever
τις ἔχει. Ἐπειδὰν
any-one (each one) has (each on what he has). (And) when
δὲ σημήνῃ τῷ κέρατι
indeed the-signal-may-be-(is)-given with (the) horn (trumpet)
ὡς ἀναπαύεσθαι συσκευάζεσθε· ἐπειδὰν δὲ
as (if) to-go-(for going)-to-rest, pack-up-your-baggage; when —
τὸ δεύτερον ἀνατίθεσθε ἐπὶ τὰ
the second (signal is given), place (the baggage) on the
ὑποζύγια· δὲ ἐπὶ τῷ τρίτῳ, ἕπεσθε τῷ
beasts-of-burden; and upon the third (signal), follow —
ἡγουμένῳ, ἔχοντες μὲν τὰ ὑποζύγια πρὸς
him-who-leads, having (keeping) indeed the beasts-of-burden next
τοῦ ποταμοῦ, δὲ τὰ ὅπλα ἔξω. 5. Οἱ
the river, and the heavy-armed-men on-the-outside." The

στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα
generals and captains having-heard these (words)
ἀπῆλθον καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτω. Καὶ τὸ
went-away and did so (as he directed). And (for) the
λοιπὸν ὁ μὲν ἦρχε,
rest (of the time) (henceforth) — (Clearchus) indeed commanded,
δὲ οἱ ἐπείθοντο, οὐχ ἑλόμενοι,
and — (the others) obeyed (him), (they) not having-chosen
ἀλλὰ ὁρῶντες ὅτι
(him actually as their commander), but perceiving that (he)
μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα ἔδει τὸν
alone thought (possessed such qualifications) as became — (a)
ἄρχοντα, οἱ ἄλλοι
commander (as a leader ought to have), the other (commanders)
δ' ἦσαν ἄπειροι. 6. Ἀριθμὸς δὲ
indeed were (comparatively) inexperienced. | (The) number —
τῆς ὁδοῦ, ἣν ἦλθον ἐξ
of-the road [the computation of the distance] (which) they-came from
Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας μέχρι τῆς μάχης,
Ephesus — (in) Ionia to-the (field) of battle (was)
τρεῖς καὶ ἐνενήκοντα σταθμοὶ πέντε καὶ
three and ninety days'-march, (a distance of) five and
τριάκοντα καὶ πεντακόσιοι παρασάγγαι,
thirty and five-hundred [535] parasangs, (or)
πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑξακισχίλιοι καὶ μύριοι
fifty and six-thousand and ten-thousand [16,050]
στάδιοι· ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης εἰς
stadia; (the distance) from — (the place) of-the battle to
Βαβυλῶνα ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσιοι
Babylon was-said to-be sixty and three-hundred
στάδιοι.
[360] stadia.

7. Ἐντεῦθεν, ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο σκότος, Μιλτο-
Here, when (as soon as) it-became dark, Milto-
κύθης μὲν ὁ Θρᾴξ ηὐτομόλησε πρὸς βασιλέα,
cythes — the Thracian deserted to (the) king,

ἔχων τε τοὺς ἱππέας τοὺς μεθ'
having (taking) not-only the horsemen — which (were) with
ἑαυτοῦ εἰς τετταράκοντα καὶ ὡς τρια
him to-the-number-of forty, but-also about three-
κοσίους τῶν Θρᾳκῶν πεζῶν. 8. Δὲ
hundred of-the Thracian foot-soldiers (infantry). But
Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖτο τοῖς ἄλλοις κατὰ τὰ
Clearchus led-the-way for-the rest according | to-the
παρηγγελμένα, δ'
things-which-had-been-directed [according to the orders given], and
οἱ εἵποντο, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον
— (they) followed, and arrived at the first
σταθμόν, παρὰ Ἀριαῖον καὶ τὴν
station (halting-place), to (join) Ariæus and the
στρατιὰν ἐκείνου, ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας·
army of-himself (his troops) about mid- night;
καὶ θέμενοι ἐν τάξει
and (when they arrived), having-been-placed in order (of battle)
τὰ ὅπλα οἱ στρατηγοὶ
(having drawn up their men) — (under) arms, the generals
καὶ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνῆλθον παρὰ
and captains of-the Greeks went-together (in a body) to
Ἀριαῖον· καὶ τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ Ἀριαῖος, καὶ
Ariæus; and not-only the Greeks, but-also Ariæus and
οἱ κράτιστοι τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ ὤμοσαν, μήτε
the principal-officers of — (those) with him, took-an-oath, not
προδώσειν ἀλλήλους, τε ἔσεσθαι σύμμαχοι·
to-betray each-other, but to-be-hereafter (true) allies;
οἱ βάρβαροι δὲ προσώμοσαν καὶ
the barbarians, too, swore-in-addition (took another oath) also
ἡγήσεσθαι ἀδόλως. 9. Δ' ὤμοσαν ταῦτα
to-lead-the-way without-treachery. And they-swore (took) these
σφάξαντες ταῦρον, καὶ λύκον,
(oaths) killing (after sacrificing) (a) bull, and (a) wolf,
καὶ κάπρον, καὶ κριόν, οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες βάπτοντες
and (a) boar, and (a) ram, the — Greeks dipping

ξίφος, δὲ οἱ Βάρβαροι λόγχην εἰς ἀσπίδα.
(a) sword, and the barbarians (a) lance, into (a) shield

10. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ πισ-
(holding the blood). When indeed — (these) pledges-of-mutual-

τὰ ἐγένετο ο Κλέαρχος εἶπεν· Ἄγε δή, ὦ
fidelity were-given — Clearchus said: "Come now, O

Ἀριαῖε, ἐπείπερ ὁ αὐτὸς στόλος ἐστὶ ὑμῖν
Ariæus, since the same route is to-you

καὶ ἡμῖν, εἰπὲ τίνα
and to-us (our route and yours is the same), tell-us what

γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας· πότερον
opinion you-have respecting the march; whether

ἄπιμεν, ἥνπερ ἤλθομεν ἢ
(we shall) return (the same way) which we-came, or

δοκεῖς ἐννενοηκέναι τινὰ
do-you-think to-have-thought-of (have you thought of) (discovered) any

ἄλλην κρείττω ὁδὸν; 11. Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἀπιόν-
other better route?" — (He) — replied: "Return-

τες μὲν ἣν ἤλθομεν, ἂν παντελῶς
ing — (the way) which we-came, we would be entirely

ἀπολοίμεθα ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· γὰρ
destroyed by famine (would all perish of hunger); for

ὑπάρχει ἡμῖν νῦν οὐδὲν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων·
there-is to-us (we have) now no (supply) of — provisions;

γὰρ οὐδὲ τῶν ἐγγυτάτω ἑπτακαίδεκα
for neither (during) the nearest (or last) seventeen

σταθμῶν ἰόντες δεῦρο, εἴχομεν λαμβάνειν οὐδὲν
days'-march coming hither, | we-having to-take nothing

ἐκ τῆς χώρας.
from the country [could we procure anything from the country

Δ' εἴτι ἦν ἔνθα,
through which we passed]. Or-if anything was (to be found) there,

ἡμεῖς διαπορευόμενοι κατεδαπανήσαμεν. Δὲ νῦν
we passing-through consumed-it. But now

ἐπινοοῦμεν πορεύεσθαι μὲν μακροτέραν,
we-think to-go (propose to take) — (a) longer

δ' οὐκ ἀπορήσομεν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων.
(way), but we-shall not want (for) — provisions.

12. Δὲ πορευτέον ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους
But | it-is-to-be-marched to-us [we must make] the first
σταθμοὺς μακροτάτους ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα,
days'-marches as-long as we can possibly-make-them,
ἵνα ὡς ἀποσπασθῶμεν πλεῖστον
in-order that we-may-be-removed (remove ourselves) as-far-as-possible
τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος· γὰρ ἦν ἅπαξ ἀπό-
from-the king's army; for if once we-be
σχωμεν ὁδὸν δύο ἢ τριῶν ἡμερῶν,
distant (escape from him) (a) journey of-two or three days,
βασιλεὺς οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται καταλαβεῖν
(the) king would | no-more not [not] be-able to-overtake
ἡμᾶς. Γὰρ μὲν ὀλίγῳ στρατεύματι οὐ
us. For, indeed, with (a) small army he-will not
τολμήσει ἐφέπεσθαι. Δ' ἔχων πολὺν στόλον
dare to-pursue (us). And having (a) large force
οὐ δυνήσεται πορεύεσθαι ταχέως· δὲ καὶ
he-will not be-able to-march fast-enough; and also will
ἴσως σπανιεῖ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. Ἔγωγε, ἔφη,
probably experience-scarcity — (of) provisions. I-at-least," said-he,
ἔχω ταύτην τὴν γνώμην.
"hold this — opinion (think so)."

13. Δὲ αὕτη ἡ στρατηγία ἦν δυναμένη
But (now) this — plan-of-campaign was equivalent-to
οὐδὲν ἄλλο, ἢ ἀποδρᾶναι ἢ ἀποφυγεῖν, δὲ
nothing else than to-steal-away or to-flee (openly), but
ἡ τύχη ἐστρατήγησε κάλλιον.
— fortune led-the-army more-honorably (proved a better leader).
Γὰρ ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἡμέρα, ἐπορεύοντο, ἔχοντες
For when it-became (was) day, they-began-their-march, having
τὸν ἥλιον ἐν δεξιᾷ, λογιζόμενοι ἵξειν ἅμα
the sun on their-right, expecting to-arrive at-the-same-time
δύνοντι ἡλίῳ εἰς κώμας τῆς
with (the) setting sun (about sunset) at (some) village of-(in)-the

Βαβυλωνίας χώρας· καὶ τοῦτο
Babylonian territory; and this (in this expectation) they-

μὲν οὐκ ἐψεύσθησαν. **14.** Δὲ ἔτι
were indeed not deceived (disappointed). But, however,

ἀμφὶ δείλην ἔδοξαν ὁρᾶν
about the-fore-part-of-the-afternoon they-thought (that) they-saw (the)

πολεμίους ἱππέας· καὶ τε οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
enemy's cavalry; and both — (those) of-the Greeks

ἔτυχον μὴ ὄντες ἐν ταῖς
| (who) happened not being (who did not happen to be) in the

τάξεσιν, ἔθεον εἰς τὰς τάξεις, καὶ
ranks ran to (their places in) the-ranks, and

Ἀριαῖος (γὰρ ἐτύγχανε πορευόμενος ἐφ'
Ariæus (for he-happened (to be) riding in

ἁμάξης, διότι ἐτέτρωτο), καταβὰς
(a) wagon, because he-had-been-wounded), coming-down (jumping

ἐθωρακίζετο καὶ οἱ σὺν
down), put-on (his) armor and-also — (those) with

αὐτῷ. **15.** Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὡπλί-
him. During (the time) in-which — (while) they-were-arm-

ζοντο οἱ σκοποὶ προπεμφθέντες, ἦκον
ing-themselves the scouts (who had been) sent-forward came

λέγοντες, ὅτι εἰσὶν οὐχ ἱππεῖς, ἀλλ'
(returned) saying that they-were not cavalry, but

ὑποζύγια νέμοιντο. Καὶ
beasts-of-burden (that) might-be-(were)-pasturing (grazing). And

πάντες εὐθὺς ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι βασιλεύς
all immediately knew (concluded) that (the) king

ἐστρατοπεδεύετο που ἐγγύς· καὶ γὰρ καὶ καπνὸς
was-encamped somewhere near; — for also smoke

ἐφαίνετο ἐν κώμαις οὐ πρόσω.
appeared (was seen) in (some) villages not far (distant).

16. Δὲ Κλέαρχος μὲν οὐκ ἦγεν ἐπὶ
But Clearchus, however, did not lead (his forces) against

τοὺς πολεμίους· γὰρ ᾔδει τοὺς στρατιώτας
the enemy; for he-knew (that) the soldiers

ὄντας καὶ ἀπειρηκότας καὶ ἀσίτους· δὲ καὶ
were both tired and in-want-of-food; and besides

ἦν ἤδη ὀψὲ· οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ ἀπέκλινε,
it-was now late; | not however [yet however] he-did not turn

φυλαττόμενος μὴ δοκοίη
(from his route), taking-care (that) he-might not seem

φεύγειν, ἀλλ᾽ ἄγων εὐθύωρον ἔχων
to-flee, but leading (the army) in-a-direct-line, (and) having

τοὺς πρώτους κατεσκήνωσεν
(leading) (himself) the foremost (troops), he-encamped,

ἅμα τῷ δυομένῳ ἡλίῳ. εἰς τὰς
at-the-time-of the setting sun (just at sunset), in the

ἐγγυτάτω κώμας, ἐξ ὧν καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ ξύλα ἀπὸ
nearest villages, from which even the woodwork from

τῶν οἰκιῶν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ τοῦ
the houses was-taken-away (had been carried off) by the

βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος. 17. Οὖν μὲν οἱ
king's troops. Therefore — the

πρῶτοι ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο ὅμως
first (those who were in advance) encamped nevertheless

τινὶ τρόπῳ, δὲ οἱ ὕστεροι προσιόντες
in-some order, but — (those) following (them), coming-up

σκοταῖοι ηὐλίζοντο ὡς ἕκαστοι ἐτύγχανον,
in-the-dark, took-up-such-quarters as they each chanced

καὶ ἐποίουν πολλὴν κραυγὴν καλλοῦντες
(to find), and they-made (so) much noise calling

ἀλλήλους, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἀκούειν·
to-one-another that even the enemy heard (them);

ὥστε μὲν οἱ ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίων
so-that indeed the (those stationed) nearest of-the enemy

καὶ ἔφυγον ἐκ τῶν σκηνωμάτων. 18. Δὲ τοῦτο
even fled from the encampments. And this

ἐγένετο δῆλον τῇ ὑστερίᾳ· γὰρ οὔτε ἔτι
became apparent on-the following-day; for neither any-longer

οὐδὲν ὑποζύγιον ἐφάνη,
[did no (any) beasts-of-burden appear [was a single beast of burden to

οὔτε στρατόπεδον, οὔτε καπνὸς οὐδαμοῦ
be seen], nor camp, nor smoke anywhere
πλησίον. Δὲ καὶ βασιλεὺς ὡς ἔοικε, ἐξεπλάγη
near. And even (the) king, as it-seemed, was-alarmed
τῇ ἐφόδῳ τοῦ στρατεύματος. Δὲ
at-the (sudden) approach of-the (Grecian) army. And
τοῦτο ἐδήλωσε οἷς ἔπραττε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ.
this was-evident by-what he-did on-the following-day.

19. Μέντοι τῆς ταύτης νυκτὸς προϊούσης,
However, — this-same night advancing (in the course
φόβος ἐμπίπτει καὶ τοῖς Ἕλλησι
of the night), (a) panic fell also upon-the Greeks,
καὶ ἦν θόρυβος καὶ δοῦπος εἰκὸς οἷον
and there-was (arose) a-commotion and noise like as
φόβου ἐμπεσόντος γίγνεσθαι.
(sudden) fear falling-on (one) (causes) to-be (as
usually follows when sudden fear seizes one). 20. Δὲ Κλέ-
But Cle-
αρχος Τολμίδην Ἠλεῖον, ὃν ἐτύγχανεν
archus (ordered) Tolmides (the) Eleian, | whom he-happened
ἔχων παρ' ἑαυτῷ,
having [whom he happened to have] with him, (and who was)
ἄριστον κήρυκα τῶν τότε, τοῦτον
the-best herald of — (those) then (of his time), this-one
ἐκέλευσε ἀνειπεῖν, κατακηρύξαντα σιγὴν,
he-ordered to-proclaim, he-having (first) commanded silence,
ὅτι οἱ ἄρχοντες προαγορεύουσιν, ὃς ἄν
that the generals publicly-announce (that) whoever might
μηνύσῃ τὸν ἀφέντα
(will) give-information (respecting) the (one) having-let-(who let)-loose
τὸν ὄνον εἰς τὰ ὅπλα, ὅτι λήψεται
the ass among the arms, that he-would-(shall)-receive (as)
μισθὸν τάλαντον ἀργυρίου. 21. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα
reward (a) talent of-silver. When indeed this
ἐκηρύχθη, οἱ στρατιῶται ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι ὁ
was-proclaimed, the soldiers knew that — (their)

φόβος εἴη κενὸς, καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες σῶοι.
fear was groundless, and (that) the generals (were) safe.

Δὲ ἅμα ὄρθρῳ ὁ Κλέαρχος παρήγγειλε
But at-the-time-of (at) daybreak — Clearchus ordered

τοὺς Ἕλληνας τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα εἰς
the Greeks to-place-themselves — (under) arms in (the

τάξιν ἧπερ εἶχον ὅτε ἡ μάχη ἦν.
same) order in-which they-had (been) when the battle was

(took place).

CHAPTER III.

The king proposes a truce, and supplies the Greeks with provisions during the negotiation. Three days after he sends Tissaphernes to them, to ask why they had engaged in hostilities against him; he is answered by Clearchus. A treaty is then concluded, the king engaging to send home the Greeks under the conduct of Tissaphernes, and the Greeks promising to do no injury to the countries through which they should pass.

1. Δὲ ὃ δὴ ἔγραψα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς
But what I just-now wrote (stated), that (the) king

ἐξεπλάγη τῇ ἐφόδῳ ἦν δῆλον τῷδε.
was-alarmed at-the approach (of the Greeks), was evident by-this

Γὰρ μὲν τῇ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων
(what followed). For — on-the preceding day sending

ἐκέλευε παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα,
(to the Greeks) he-ordered (them) to-give-up — (their) arms,

δὲ τότε ἅμα ἀνατέλλοντι ἡλίῳ
but afterwards at-the-same-time with (the) rising sun (at

ἔπεμψε κήρυκας περὶ σπονδῶν. 2. Δ' οἱ
sunrise) he-sent heralds concerning (a) truce. But —

ἐπεὶ ἦλθον πρὸς τοὺς προφύλακας,
(these heralds), when they-came to the outposts (to the

ἐζήτουν τοὺς ἄρχοντας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ
advanced guards), inquired-for the commanders. When indeed

οἱ προφύλακες ἀπήγγελλον, Κλέαρχος,
the (advanced) guards reported-this, Clearchus,

τυχὼν τότε ἐπισκοπῶν τὰς τά-
happening (who happened) then to-be-inspecting the troops-drawn-

ξεις, εἶπε τοῖς προφύλαξι κελεύειν τοὺς κήρυκας
up-in-order, told the guards to-request the heralds
περιμένειν ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ. 3. Ἐπεὶ
to remain till he might (should) be-at-leisure. When
δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στράτευμα ὥστε ἔχειν
— he-had-arranged the army so-as to-have (itself)
καλῶς ὁρᾶσθαι πάντῃ φάλλαγγα
advantageously to-be-seen on-all (sides), (the) phalanx (being)
πυκνήν,
in-close-order (so that the dense phalanx could be seen favorably
δὲ μηδένα τῶν ἀόπλων καταφανῆ
from all sides), and not-one of-the unarmed (men) appeared
εἶναι, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ
to-be (there) (were to be seen), he-called-for the messengers, and
αὐτός τε προῆλθε ἔχων τε τοὺς εὐοπλοτά-
he-himself — came-forward having — (about him) the best-
τους καὶ εὐειδεστάτους τῶν στρατιωτῶν αὑτοῦ
armed and the-best-looking of-the soldiers of-himself
καὶ ἔφρασε τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς ταὐτὰ.
and he-told the other commanders (to do the) same.
4. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν πρὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις ἀνηρώτα
When indeed he-was (drew) near the messengers he-asked
τί βούλοιντο. Οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον, ὅτι
what they-wished (wanted). — (They) — replied that they
ἄνδρες ἥκοιεν περὶ σπονδῶν,
(were) men who came in-regard-to (a) truce, (and)
οἵτινες ἔσονται ἱκανοὶ τε ἀπαγγεῖλαι
who would-be competent (were empowered) not-only to-announce
τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς Ἕλλησι,
— (any communication) from (the) king to-the Greeks,
καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ. 5. Δὲ
but-also — (those) from the Greeks to (the) king. But
ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἀπαγγέλλετε τοίνυν
— (he, Clearchus) answered: "Announce (tell) then
αὐτῷ, ὅτι πρῶτον δεῖ μάχης,
to-him (the king) that first there-is-need of (a) battle (we

γὰρ ἔστιν οὐκ ἄριστον,
must come to battle first), for there-is no breakfast (for us) (we
οὐδὲ ὁ τολμήσων
have no breakfast), nor (is there any one) who will-be-daring (enough)
λέγειν περὶ σπονδῶν τοῖς Ἕλλησι, μὴ
(will dare) to-talk about (a) truce to-the Greeks, not
πορίσας ἄριστον. 6. Οἱ ἄγγελλοι
having-provided (them) (with) breakfast." The messengers
ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀπήλαυνον, καὶ ταχύ
hearing these (this answer) departed, and soon
ἦκον· καὶ ᾧ ἦν δῆλον ὅτι βασιλεὺς
came (returned); — from-which it-was evident that (the) king
ἦν που ἐγγύς, ἢ τις ἄλλος,
was somewhere near, or some (one) else (some other person)
ᾧ ἐπετέτακτο πράττειν ταῦτα· ἔλεγον
to-whom it-was-commanded to-transact these (this business); they-said
δὲ ὅτι λέγειν δοκοῖεν βασιλεῖ
— that (the things) they-reported seemed to (the) king
εἰκότα, καὶ ἥκοιεν ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνας,
reasonable, and they-came (back) having guides (with
οἵ, ἐὰν γένωται σπονδαί, ἄξουσιν αὐτούς
them), who, in-case there-should-be a truce, would-conduct them
ἔνθεν ἔξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
to-(a place)-where they-would-have (might procure) the provisions.
7. Ὁ δὲ ἠρώτα, εἰ σπένδοιτο
— But he (Clearchus) (then) inquired if a-truce-would-be-made
αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι ἰοῦσι καὶ ἀπιοῦσιν,
(only) for-those — men going-to and returning-from
ἢ ἔσοιντο σπονδαί καὶ τοῖς
(the king), or (if) there-would-be (a) truce — for (all) the
ἄλλοις. Δὲ οἱ ἔφασαν ἅπασι,
others. But — (they) (the messengers) said (replied) for-all,
μέχρι τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν ἂν διαγγελθῇ
until the (messages) from you may be-communicated to (the)
βασιλεῖ. 8. Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶπον ταῦτα, μετα-
king. When indeed they-(had)-said these (things), having-

στησάμενος αὐτοὺς, ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο.
dismissed these (messengers), — Clearchus consulted

Καὶ ἐδόκει τὰς σπονδὰς
(with his officers). And it-seemed best (to them) (that) the truce

ποιεῖσθαι ταχύ, καὶ ἐλθεῖν
was-to-be-made speedily (to make the truce at once), and to-go

τε καθ' ἡσυχίαν ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ λαβεῖν.
— at (their) leisure after the provisions, and to-take

9. Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε·
[them as they needed them]. — But Clearchus said:

Δοκεῖ μὲν κἀμοὶ ταῦτα·
"It-seems indeed also-to-me the-same [I, too, am of that opinion]; I-will

οὐ μέντοι γε ἀπαγγελῶ ταχύ, ἀλλὰ
not, however, — announce (our determination) immediately, but

διατρίψω ἔστ' οἱ ἄγγελοι ἂν ὀκνήσωσι
will-delay (wait) until the messengers might fear (that)

μὴ ἀποδόξῃ ἡμῖν ποιήσασθαι
it-might not seem (proper) to-us to-have-made-for-ourselves

τὰς σπονδὰς·
(lest we should determine not to conclude) the truce; I,

μέντοι γε οἶμαι, ἔφη, τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον
however, certainly think," said-he, "(that) the same fear

παρέσεσθαι, καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρα-
will-be-present (will arise), even — to-(among)-our-own sol-

τιώταις. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει εἶναι καιρὸς
diers." When indeed it-seemed (to him) to-be the-proper-time

ἀπήγγελλεν ὅτι σπένδοιτο, καὶ
he-announced (to the messengers) that he-would-make-the-truce, and

ἐκέλευε ἡγεῖσθαι εὐθὺς πρὸς τἀπιτήδεια.
requested (them) to-conduct (them) immediately to the-provisions.

10. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἡγοῦντο· Κλέαρχος
And the (messengers thereupon) — led-the-way, Clearchus

μὲν μέντοι ἐπορεύετο ποιησόμενος τὰς μὲν
— then proceeded about-making (to make) the —

σπονδὰς, δὲ ἔχων τὸ στράτευμα ἐν τάξει,
truce, but having (keeping) the army in (battle) order,

καὶ αὐτὸς ὤπισθοφυλάκει. Καὶ ἐνετύγχανον
and he-himself brought-up-the-rear. And they-met-with
τάφροις καὶ αὐλῶσι πλήρεσιν ὕδατος ὡς μὴ δύνα-
ditches and canals (so) full of-water as not to-be-
σθαι διαβαίνειν ἄνευ γεφυρῶν· ἀλλ᾽
able to-cross (that they could not cross them) without bridges; but
ἐποιοῦντο διαβάσεις ἐκ τῶν φοινίκων οἱ ἦσαν
they-made crossings by-means-of the palm-trees which had
ἐκπεπτωκότες, δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἐξέκοπτον.
fallen, and also (others which) — they-cut-down.

11. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἦν καταμαθεῖν Κλέαρ-
And here was (an opportunity) to-observe Clear-
χον ὡς ἐπεστάτει, ἔχων μὲν τὸ δόρυ
chus how he-exercised-command, having (holding) — the (his) spear
ἐν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ, δὲ βακτηρίαν ἐν τῇ
in — (his) left hand, and a-staff in — (his)
δεξιᾷ· καὶ εἴ τις δοκοίη αὐτῷ τῶν τεταγμέ-
right; — if any-one might-seem to-him of — (those) ap-
νων πρὸς τοῦτο βλακεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος
pointed to (do) this (work) to-loiter (to be lazy), selecting
τὸν ἐπιτήδειον ἄν ἔπαισε, καὶ
— (a) fit (person), he would beat (him), and
ἅμα αὐτὸς ἐμβαίνων εἰς τὸν πηλὸν
at-the-same-time he, leaping (down) into the mud,
προσελάμβανεν· ὥστε αἰσχύνην
took-part (assisted) (in the work); so-that shame
εἶναι πᾶσιν μὴ οὐ συσπουδάζειν.
was to-all (all felt ashamed) — not to-work-in-earnest.

12. Καὶ οἱ γεγονότες τριάκοντα
And (only) — (those) being (who were) thirty
ἔτη ἐτάχθησαν μὲν πρὸς αὐτοῦ
years (old) (and under) were-appointed — by him (to do this
ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἑώρων Κλέαρχον
work); but-when indeed — (the older persons) saw Clearchus
σπουδάζοντα, καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι
hastening (busy in the work), even the older-men

προσελάμβανον. **13.** Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος
took-part (rendered their assistance). But — Clearchus

ἔσπευδε πολύ μᾶλλον, ὑποπτεύων
hastened (the work) much more (than usual), suspecting

τὰς τάφρους εἶναι μὴ ἀεὶ οὕτω πλήρεις
the ditches to-be (were) not always so full

ὕδατος· γὰρ ἦν οὐ ὥρα οἷα ἄρδειν
of-water; for it-was not (the) season proper (time of year) to-water

τὸ πεδίον· ἀλλ' ὑπώπτευε βασιλέα
(to irrigate) the ground; but suspected (that the) king

ἀφεικένα τὸ ὕδωρ ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίον ἕνεκα τούτου,
had-let-out the water on the plain by-reason-of this,

ἵνα ἤδη προφαίνοιτο τοῖς Ἕλλησι
(in order) that even-now (there) might-appear to-the Greeks

πολλὰ δεινὰ εἰς τὴν πορείαν.
many difficulties in the march.

14. Δὲ πορευόμενοι ἀφίκοντο εἰς κώμας,
And proceeding they-arrived at (some) villages,

ὅθεν οἱ ἡγεμόνες ἀπέδειξαν λαμβάνειν
from-which the guides signified (to them) to-take

τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Ἐνῆν
(that they might procure) the provisions. There-was-in (these

δὲ πολύς σῖτος, καὶ οἶνος φοινίκων,
villages) indeed much corn, and wine of-(made from)-date-palms,

καὶ ὄξος ἑψητὸν ἀπὸ τῶν
and (an) acid-wine (vinegar) cooked (made) from — (boiling)

αὐτῶν. **15.** Δὲ αἱ αὗται βάλανοι τῶν
them. But the — dates (themselves) of-the

φοινίκων, οἷας μὲν ἔστιν ἰδεῖν ἐν τοῖς
palms, such-as indeed are | to-see [to be seen] in —

Ἕλλησιν ἀπέκειντο τοῖς οἰκέταις, δὲ
Greece, are-put-by (were laid aside) for-the servants, but

αἱ ἀποκείμεναι τοῖς δεσπόταις ἦσαν
— (those) put-aside (preserved) for-the masters were

ἀπόλεκτοι, θαυμάσιαι τὸ κάλλος καὶ
choice-ones (picked out), remarkable for — (their) beauty and

τὸ μέγεθος, δὲ ἡ ὄψις διέφερε οὐδὲν
— size, and — (their) appearance (color) differed nothing
ἠλέκτρου. Δὲ ξηραίνοντες τὰς
from-(was same as that of)-amber. And drying —
τινας ἀπετίθεσαν τραγή-
some (of these) they-put (them) up (preserved as) for-sweet-
ματα Καὶ ἦν καὶ ἡδὺ μὲν παρὰ πότον,
meats. And (they) were also pleasant indeed with drink,
δὲ κεφαλαλγὲς. 16. Ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ
but causing-(apt to cause)-headache. Here also the
στρατιῶται πρῶτον ἔφαγον τὸν ἐγκέφαλον
soldiers first ate (tasted) | the brains
τοῦ φοίνικος, καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ
of-the palm-tree [the cabbage of the palm-tree], and — most-of-them
ἐθαύμασαν τε τὸ
were-astonished (were agreeably impressed) not-only — with (its)
εἶδος καὶ τὴν ἰδιότητα τῆς ἡδονῆς.
external-appearance, but-also with-the peculiarity — of (its) sweetness.
Καὶ τοῦτο δὲ ἦν σφόδρα κεφαλαλγές.
And this also was exceedingly (apt) causing-(to cause)-headache.
Δὲ ὁ φοῖνιξ ὅθεν ὁ ἐγκέφαλος ἐξαιρε-
But the palm-tree from-which the cabbage may-have-(had)-
θείη αὐαίνετο ὅλος.
been-taken (soon) withered entirely (completely).

17. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας· καὶ Τισσα-
Here they-remained three days; and Tissa-
φέρνης ἦκε παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως, καὶ
phernes came from (the) great king, and (with
ὁ ἀδελφὸς τῆς γυναικὸς βασιλέως, καὶ
him) the brother of-the wife of (the) king, and
τρεῖς ἄλλοι Πέρσαι, δὲ πολλοὶ δοῦλοι εἵποντο.
three other Persians, and many slaves attended
(them). Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
But when the generals of-the Greeks
ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς, Τισσαφέρνης ἔλεγε πρῶτος
met them, Tissaphernes spoke first

δι᾽ ἑρμηνέως τοιάδε. 18. Ἐγώ, ὦ Ἕλληνες
through (an) interpreter as-follows. "I, O Grecian

ἄνδρες, οἰκῶ γείτων τῇ
men (Greeks), dwell neighboring — (in the neighborhood of)

Ἑλλάδι, καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ὑμᾶς ἐμπεπτωκότας εἰς
Greece, and when I-saw you having-fallen into

πολλὰ κακὰ, καὶ ἀμήχανα, ἐποιησάμην
many troubles and inextricable (difficulties), | I-made-it-for-myself

εὕρημα, εἰ
a-piece-of-good-luck [I considered it a piece of good fortune] if

πως δυναίμην αἰτήσασθαι παρὰ
I-were in-any-way able to-entreat (obtain) from (the)

βασιλέως δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι ὑμᾶς
king to-have-given me (permission) to-save you

εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Γὰρ οἶμαι
(conduct you in safety back) to — Greece. For I-think

ἂν οὐκ ἔξειν ἀχαρίστως μοι
|(that) it would not have (itself) ungrateful to-me [that such

οὔτε πρὸς
a service would be attended with no lack of gratitude], either from

ὑμῶν, οὔτε πρὸς τῆς πάσης Ἑλλάδος. 19. Δὲ
you, or from — all Greece. And

γνούς ταῦτα ᾐτούμην βασιλέα,
knowing these (things), I-made-my-request to (the) king,

λέγων αὐτῷ, ὅτι ἂν δικαίως χαρίζοιτο μοι,
saying to-him that he might justly gratify me (grant

ὅτι τε πρῶτος ἦγγειλα αὐτῷ
me this favor), that (because) I not-only first brought-word to-him

Κῦρον ἐπιστρατεύοντα, καὶ ἀφικόμην
(that) Cyrus was-making-an-expedition-against (him), but came

ἅμα τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ ἔχων βοήθειαν,
at-the-same-time with-the message having assistance (with an

καὶ μόνος τῶν τεταγμένων κατὰ
auxiliary force), and I alone of—(those) having-been-drawn-up against

τοὺς Ἕλληνας οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ διήλασα,
the Greeks did not flee, but charged

καὶ συνέμιξα βασιλεῖ ἐν τῷ
(through their ranks), and joined (the) king in —
ὑμετέρῳ στρατοπέδῳ, ἔνθα βασιλεὺς ἀφίκετο
your-own camp, where (the) king came
ἐπεὶ ἀπέκτεινε Κῦρον, καὶ ἐδίωξα τοὺς βαρ-
after he-had-killed Cyrus, and I-pursued — (the) bar-
βάρους σὺν Κύρῳ σὺν τοῖσδε, τοῖς νῦν
barians with Cyrus with these, (namely) these now
παροῦσι μετ' ἐμοῦ, οἵπερ εἰσὶ πιστότατοι αὐτῷ.
present with me, who are the-most-faithful to-him.

20. Καὶ μὲν ὑπέσχετό μοι βουλεύσασθαι
And indeed he [the king] promised me to-deliberate
περὶ τούτων, δὲ
about these (affairs) (to consider my request), and (in the mean-
ἐκέλευσε με ἐλθόντα ἔρεσθαι ὑμᾶς ἕνεκεν
time) commanded me having-come to-ask you by-reason
τίνος ἐστρατεύσατε ἐπ' αὐτόν.
of-what (for what reason) you-took-the-field (made war) against him.
Καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν ἀποκρίνασθαι μετρίως, ἵνα
And I-counsel you to-answer moderately, that
ᾖ εὐπρακτότερον μοι, ἐάν δύνωμαι διαπρά-
it-may-be easier for-me, if I-am-able to-
ξασθαι τι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν παρ'
effect (to secure) anything good (any advantage) for-you with
αὐτοῦ.
(from) him."

21. Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες μεταστάντες ἐβου-
At this the Greeks withdrawing deliber-
λεύοντο, καὶ ἀπεκρίναντο· Κλέαρχος δ'
ated, and gave (their) answer; Clearchus —
ἔλεγεν· Ἡμεῖς οὔτε συνήλθομεν ὡς
spoke (for them): "We neither assembled-together for-the-purpose-of
πολεμήσοντες βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐπορευόμεθα
hereafter-making-war against (the) king, nor did-we-set-out
ἐπὶ βασιλέα, ἀλλὰ Κῦρος εὗρισκε πολλὰς
against (the) king, but Cyrus invented many

προφάσεις, καὶ ὡς σὺ εὖ οἶσθα, ἵνα τε
pretexts, — as you well know, (in order) that —

λάβοι ὑμᾶς ἀπαρασκευάστους, καὶ
he-might-(not only)-take you unprepared, but-also

ἀναγάγοι ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε. 22. Ἤδη
lead us thither (up to this place). Now,

μέντοι ἐπεὶ ἑωρῶμεν αὐτὸν ὄντα ἐν δεινῷ ᾐσχύν-
however, when we-saw him being in danger we-were-

θημεν καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους
(made to be)-ashamed, both (before) gods and men,

προδοῦναι αὐτόν, παρέχοντες ἐν τῷ
to-have-betrayed (to desert) him, we-allowing (him) in the

πρόσθεν χρόνῳ ποιεῖν εὖ
former time (since we had before allowed him) | to-do well

ἡμᾶς αὐτούς. 23. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
to [to bestow favors upon] us (ourselves). Since indeed

Κῦρος τέθνηκεν, οὔτε ἀντιποιούμεθα
Cyrus is-dead, we neither contend (lay claim) with

βασιλεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς, οἵτ' ἔστιν
(the) king for-the sovereignty, nor is-there (any reason)

ἕνεκα ὅτου ἂν βουλοίμεθα ποιεῖν
on-account-of which (why) we might (should) wish to-do

κακῶς τὴν χώραν βασιλέως, οὐδ' ἂν
harm (to) the country of (the) king, nor would (do)

ἐθέλοιμεν ἀποκτεῖναι αὐτόν, δ' ἂν πορευοίμεθα
we-wish to-kill him, but we would proceed

οἴκαδε, εἴ τις μὴ λυποίη ἡμᾶς· (but)
homeward, if any-one would not (if no one) molest us;

μέντοι ἀδικοῦντα πειρασόμεθα σὺν
those, however, injuring (us) we-will-endeavor, with (the aid of)

τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμύνασθαι· ἐὰν μέντοι τις
the gods, to-avenge (ourselves on); if, however, any-one

καὶ ὑπάρχῃ ποιῶν εὖ ἡμᾶς, καὶ τούτου
even begins doing good to-us, even to-this-one we-will

οὐχ ἡττησόμεθα ποιοῦντες εὖ
not be-inferior (behindhand) doing good (requiting him),

γε εἰς δύναμιν. Οὕτως μὲν ὁ
at-least to (the utmost of our) power." Thus indeed — (Clear-

εἶπεν.
chus) spoke.

24. Ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης ἔφη· Ταῦτα
Hearing (this) — — Tissaphernes said: "These

ἐγὼ ἀπαγγελῶ βασιλεῖ, καὶ
(replies) I will-announce to (the) king, and (will

πάλιν ὑμῖν τὰ παρ' ἐκείνου· δὲ
bring) back to-you | the (things) from him [his reply]; and

μέχρι ἐγὼ ἂν ἥκω αἱ σπονδαὶ μενόντων,
until I may come (return), let the truce remain-in-force,

δὲ ἡμεῖς παρέξομεν ἀγοράν. 25. Καὶ μὲν
and we will-provide (a) market (for you)." And indeed

εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν οὐχ ἥκεν· ὥσθ' οἱ
on the following-day he-did not come (return); so-that the

Ἕλληνες ἐφρόντιζον. Δὲ τῇ τρίτῃ ἦκων
Greeks began-to-be-anxious. But on-the third (day) coming,

ἔλεγεν, ὅτι ἥκοι διαπεπραγμένος παρὰ
he-said that he-came (returned) having-obtained from (the)

βασιλέως δοθῆναι αὐτῷ σώζειν τοὺς
king to-be-allowed to-himself (permission) to-save the

Ἕλληνας, καίπερ πάνυ πολλῶν ἀντιλεγόντων,
Greeks, although a-great many speaking-against

ὡς οὐκ εἴη ἄξιον
(opposing it), (saying) that it-might not be becoming for (the)

βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς
king (it did not become the king) to-let-go (to let escape) —

στρατευσαμένους ἐφ'
(those) making-war (who had engaged in war) against

ἑαυτόν. 26. Δὲ τέλος εἶπε· καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν
him. And in-conclusion he-said: "And now it-is-allowed

ὑμῖν λαβεῖν πιστὰ παρ' ἡμῶν, ἣ μὴν
you to-take assurances (receive pledges) from us, that truly

τὴν χώραν παρέξειν φιλίαν ὑμῖν, καὶ
the country will-be-kept (we will render) friendly to-you, and

ἀδόλως ἀπάξειν εἰς τὴν
without-treachery to-lead (we will conduct) (you) back to —
Ἑλλάδα, παρέχοντας ἀγορὰν·
Greece, obtaining (a) market (affording you opportunities
δ' ὅπου ἂν ᾖ μὴ
of purchasing provisions); but wheresoever (there) may be not (nothing)
πρίασθαι ἐάσομεν ὑμᾶς λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
to-purchase we-will-allow you to-take the necessaries
ἐκ τῆς χώρας. 27. Δ' αὖ
(of life) from the (adjacent) country. But on-the-other-hand
δεήσει ὑμᾶς ὀμόσαι ἡμῖν, ἢ μὴν πορεύεσθαι
it-will-be-necessary for-you to-swear to-us, truly to-march
ὡς διὰ φιλίας ἀσινῶς, λαμβάνοντας
as through (a) friendly (country) without-doing-harm, taking
σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ, ὁπόταν μὴ παρέχωνεν ἀγορὰν·
food and drink whenever we-do not provide (a) market
ἢν δὲ παρέχωμεν ἀγορὰν, ὠνουμένους
(for you); if indeed we-provide (you a) market, you-purchasing
ἕξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
will-have the necessaries-of-life (you will procure your supplies by buying
28. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε,
them)." These (things) seemed-good (these conditions were
καὶ ὤμοσαν καὶ Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ
agreed to), and they-took-the-oaths, and Tissaphernes and the
ἀδελφὸς τῆς γυναικὸς βασιλέως ἔδοσαν
brother of-the wife of (the) king gave (their)
δεξιὰς τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς τῶν
right-hands to-the generals and captains of-the
Ἑλλήνων, καὶ ἔλαβον παρὰ τῶν
Greeks, and took (received) (the same) from the
Ἑλλήνων. 29. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα Τισσαφέρνης εἶπε·
Greeks. And after this Tissaphernes said:
Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἄπειμι ὡς βασιλέα· ἐπειδὰν
"Now indeed — I (will) go-back to (the) king; after
δὲ διαπράξωμαι ἃ
indeed (as soon as) I-shall-(have)-accomplished (that) which (obtained

δέομαι, συσκευασάμενος,
what things) I-desire (need), having-collected-and-packed-up-my-baggage

ἴξω ὡς ἀπάξων ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν
I-will-return as (for the purpose of) conducting you back to —

Ἑλλάδα, καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν
Greece, and (myself) returning to | the government

ἐμαυτοῦ.
of-myself [my own government]."

CHAPTER IV.

The Greeks conceive distrust both of Tissaphernes and Ariæus, and resolve to march apart from the Persians. They commence their march under the guidance of Tissaphernes, pass the wall of Media, and cross the Tigris.

1. Μετὰ ταῦτα τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ
AFTER these (occurrences) not-only the Greeks, but-also

Ἀριαῖος ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων
Ariæus, being-encamped near each-other,

περιέμενον Τισσαφέρνην πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν ἡμέρας.
waited for-Tissaphernes more than twenty days.

Ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς Ἀριαῖον
During — these (this time) there-came to (visit) Ariæus

καὶ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναγκαῖοι, καὶ
both — (his) brothers and — other relatives, and

τινες Περσῶν πρὸς τοὺς σὺν ἐκείνῳ,
certain-other Persians to those with him (to see his com-

τε παρεθάρσυνον, καὶ ἔφερον
panions), they not-only encouraged (them), but-also brought

δεξιὰς ἐνίοις παρὰ βασιλέως,
| right-hands [assurances] to-some from (the) king, (that the)

βασιλέα μὴ μνησικακήσειν τῆς ἐπι-
king would not remember-in-evil (the injuries) of-the expe-

στρατείας σὺν Κύρῳ αὐτοῖς, μηδὲ μηδενὸς
dition under Cyrus (received) from-them, | neither no

ἄλλου τῶν παρῳχημένων.
other [anything else] of-the (affairs) gone-by (past).

2. Δὲ τούτων γιγνομένων, οἱ περὶ
But these (while these things were) occurring, | the about
Ἀριαῖον ἦσαν ἔνδηλοι προσέχοντες
Ariæus [the followers of Ariæus] were evidently applying
τὸν νοῦν ἧττον τοῖς Ἕλλησι·
the mind less to-the Greeks (began to pay the Greeks less
ὥστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μὲν τοῖς
attention); so-that also through this indeed (on this account) —
πολλοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἤρεσκον, ἀλλὰ προ-
many of-the Greeks were not pleased, but going-
σιόντες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς
to — Clearchus and the other generals
ἔλεγον· 3. Τί μένομεν; ἢ οὐκ ἐπιστάμεθα,
they-said: "Why do-we-remain-here? — do-we not believe
ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἂν ποιήσαιτο
(know) | that (the) king would make-it-to-himself (would wish)
περὶ παντὸς ἀπολέσαι ἡμᾶς, ἵνα καὶ εἴη
above all-things to-destroy us, in-order-that also there-might-
φόβος τοῖς ἄλλοις Ἕλλησι στρατεύειν ἐπὶ
be fear to-the other Greeks to-wage-war against (the)
μέγαν βασιλέα; καὶ νῦν μὲν ὑπάγεται ἡμᾶς
great king? and now indeed he-craftily-leads us
μένειν, διὰ τὸ διεσπάρθαι αὐτῷ τὸ
to-remain, | on-account-of the to-have-dispersed to-him the
στράτευμα·
army (owing to the fact that his army is at present scattered about);
δὲ ἡ στρατιὰ πάλιν ἐπὴν ἁλισθῇ
|but (when) the army again was-there (and) may-have-been-
αὐτῷ,
taken (or reassembled) by-him [but when his army is reassembled],
οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως οὐκ ἐπι-
it-will not be that (it is not possible that) he-will not at-
θήσεται ἡμῖν. 4. Ἴσως δὲ ἢ ἀποσκάπτει
tack us. Perhaps indeed he-is either digging-out
τι, ἢ ἀποτειχίζει, ὡς ἡ ὁδὸς ᾖ
some (trench) or building-a-wall-against (us), so-that the road may-be

ἄπορος. Γὰρ οὐκ ἑκών γε βουλήσεται
(made) impassable. For he-will not willingly at-least consent
ἡμᾶς ἐλθόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀπαγγεῖλαι, ὡς
for-us going-back to — Greece to-relate how
ἡμεῖς, ὄντες τοσοίδε, ἐνικῶμεν τὸν βασιλέα ἐπὶ
we, being so-few, | defeated the king at
ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ, καὶ καταγελάσαντες
the gates of-him [at his own gates], and having-laughed-at-him
ἀπήλθομεν.
we-departed (returned home)."

5. Δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀπεκρίνατο τοῖς ταῦτα λέ-
But Clearchus replied to — (those) thus ad-
γουσιν· Ἐγὼ μὲν καὶ ἐνθυμοῦμαι πάντα
dressing (him): "I indeed also am-thinking-about all
ταῦτα· δ' ἐννοῶ, ὅτι εἰ
this (have been considering all these things); and I-think that if
νῦν ἄπιμεν δόξομεν ἀπιέναι ἐπὶ
we now go-away we-will-seem to-depart for (with a view to)
πολέμῳ, καὶ ποιεῖν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς.
war, and to-act contrary to-the (terms of the) truce.
Ἔπειτα πρῶτον, μὲν οὐδεὶς παρέξει
Moreover-in-the first-place, indeed, no-one will-provide
ἡμῖν ἀγοράν, οὐδὲ ὅθεν
us (a) market, nor (will there be a place) from-which
ἐπισιτιούμεθα· αὖθις δὲ ἔσται οὐδεὶς
we-could-procure-provisions; again — | there-will-be no-one
ὁ ἡγησόμενος· καὶ ἅμα ἡμῶν
— hereafter-guiding-(to guide)-us; and at-the-same-time we
ποιούντων ταῦτα Ἀριαῖος εὐθὺς
are-doing (the moment we do) this, Ariæus will immediately
ἀφεστήξει· ὥστε οὐδεὶς φίλος
separate (from us); so-that no-one (a) friend (not a friend)
λελείψεται ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ
will-be-left to-us, but also (what is more) — (those)
πρόσθεν ὄντες ἔσονται πολέμιοι
formerly being (who were) (our friends) will-become hostile

ἡμῖν. 6. Δ' ἄρα μὲν εἰ ἐστι τις
to-us (our enemies). But whether indeed — there-is any

ἄλλος ποταμὸς καὶ διαβατέος ἡμῖν,
other river also necessary-to-pass-over by-us (for us to

οἶδα οὐκ· δ' οὖν ἴσμεν ὅτι διαβῆναι
cross) I-know not; but, however, we-(do)-know that to-have-crossed

τὸν Εὐφράτην ἀδύματον πολεμίων κωλυόντων.
the Euphrates (is) impossible, (the) enemy prohibiting

(it is impossible to cross if the enemy try to prevent us).

Δὴ μὲν ἂν δέῃ γε μάχε-
In fact, if-it-should-be-necessary (for us) indeed to-

σθαι, σύμμαχοι ἱππεῖς εἰσιν οὐ ἡμῖν·
fight, auxiliary cavalry is not to-us (we

δὲ ἱππεῖς τῶν πολεμίων
have no cavalry to support us); but (the) cavalry of-the enemy

εἰσιν οἱ πλεῖστοι καὶ ἄξιοι πλείστου· ὥστε
is — numerous and | worthy of-much [efficient]; so-that

νικῶντες τίνα μὲν ἂν ἀποκτείναιμεν;
conquering how-many indeed (of our enemy) might we-kill?

δὲ ἡττωμένων οἷόν τε σωθῆναι οὐδένα.
but being-defeated (it would be) possible to-save none.

7. Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν βασιλέα ᾧ
I indeed therefore (with regard to the) king, to-whom

ἐστι οὕτω πολλὰ τὰ σύμμαχα,
there-are (who is aided by) so many — auxiliaries (ad-

εἴπερ προθυμεῖται ἀπολέσαι ἡμᾶς,
vantages), if he-desires (is anxious) to-destroy us, I (I

οὐκ οἶδα ὅ τι δεῖ αὐτὸν ὀμόσαι
say) do not know what need (why) he should-take-oath,

καὶ δοῦναι δεξιὰν, καὶ ἐπιορκῆσαι
and give (his) right-hand, and perjure-himself before (the)

θεοὺς, καὶ ποιῆσαι τὰ πιστὰ ἑαυτοῦ
gods, and make (render) the pledges of-himself

ἄπιστα τε Ἕλλησι, καὶ
(his pledges) faithless (even) both to (the) Greeks and

βαρβάροις. Ἔλεγε πολλὰ τοιαῦτα.
(the) barbarians." He-said much (besides) thus

(to this effect).

8. Δὲ ἐν τούτῳ Τισσαφέρνης ἦκε
But during this (in the meantime) Tissaphernes came (ar-
ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ, ὡς
rived) | having the forces of-himself [with his army], as-if (with
ἀπιών οἶκον, καὶ Ὁρόντας τὴν
the view of) returning home, and-also Orontas (came having) the
δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ· ἦγε δὲ καὶ
forces of-himself (with his forces); he (Orontas) brought — also
τὴν θυγατέρα βασιλέως τὴν ἐπὶ
the daughter of (the) king the (whom he had received) in
γάμῳ. 9. Ἐντεῦθεν ἤδη δὲ ἐπορεύοντο
marriage. Hence they now indeed proceeded (on their
Τισσαφέρνους ἡγουμένου καὶ παρέχοντος
march), Tissaphernes guiding (them) and providing
ἀγοράν. Δὲ καὶ Ἀριαῖος
(them a) market (to purchase their provisions). And — Ariæus
ἔχων τὸ βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα
(also), having (commanding) the barbarian army
Κύρου ἐπορεύετο, ἅμα Τισσαφέρνει καὶ
of-Cyrus, marched in-company-with Tissaphernes and
Ὁρόντᾳ, καὶ συνεστρατοπεδεύετο σὺν ἐκείνοις.
Orontas, and encamped-together with them.

10. Δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὑφορῶντες τούτους, αὐτοί
But the Greeks suspecting these-men, they
ἐχώρουν ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες
[the Greeks] went (began to march) by themselves, having
ἡγεμόνας. Δὲ ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο
(taking) guides (of their own). And they-encamped
ἑκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλήλων παρασάγγην
each-time being-distant from-one-another (a) parasang (or)
καὶ μεῖον. Δὲ ἀμφότεροι ἐφυλάττοντο ὥσπερ
even less. And both (parties) guarded-themselves as-if

πολεμίους ἀλλήλους, καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο παρεῖχεν
enemies to-one-another, and immediately this excited

ὑποψίαν. 11. Ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ
(increased) mistrust (their suspicions). Sometimes — also (when)

ξυλιζόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ, καὶ συλλέγοντες
gathering-wood from the same (place), or collecting

χόρτον καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, ἐνέτεινον
grass and other such (things), | they-stretched-out

πληγὰς ἀλλήλοις·
blows to-one-another [they stretched out their arms threatening,

ὥστε τοῦτο καὶ παρεῖχε ἔχθραν.
or inflicting, blows] ; so-that this also caused-more animosity

12. Δὲ διελθόντες τρεῖς σταθμοὺς
(between them). And having-gone-through three days'-march

ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ τεῖχος
(after marching three days), they-arrived at the wall (of)

Μηδίας, καλούμενον, καὶ παρῆλθον εἴσω αὐτοῦ.
Media, as-it-was-called, and they-passed-through within it

Δὲ ἦν ᾠκοδομημένον ὀπταῖς
(inside). And (this wall) was built-of burnt

πλίνθοις, κειμέναις ἀσφάλτῳ, εὖρος
bricks, laid in-bitumen, (the) thickness (of this wall

εἴκοσι ποδῶν, δὲ ὕψος ἑκατὸν· δὲ
was) twenty feet, and (the) height a-hundred-feet; and (the)

μῆκος ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρασαγγῶν· δὲ
length was-said to-be twenty parasangs; and it-was

οὐ πολύ ἀπέχει Βαβυλῶνος. 13. Ἐντεῦθεν δ'
not much (far) distant from-Babylon. Hence —

ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμοὺς ὀκτώ παρα-
they-proceeded two days'-march, (a distance of) eight para-

σάγγας, καὶ διέβησαν δύο διώρυχας, τὴν μὲν
sangs, and they-crossed two canals, the (one) indeed

ἐπὶ γεφύρας, δὲ τὴν
on (by a permanent) bridge, but the (other by a temporary one),

ἐζευγμένην ἑπτά πλοίοις· δ' αὗται
having joined-together (spanned) by-seven boats; and these

ἦσαν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος· δὲ
(canals) were (supplied) from the river Tigris; and
καὶ τάφροι κατετέτμηντο ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὴν
also ditches had-been-cut from them over (across) the
χώραν, αἳ μὲν πρῶται μεγάλαι, δ' ἔπειτα
country, which indeed first (were) large, but afterwards
ἐλάττους, δὲ καὶ τελος μικροὶ ὀχετοὶ .
less, and — at-last (only) small drains (or streams)
ὥσπερ ἐπὶ τὰς μελίνας ἐν τῇ
such-as (are cut) in (through) the panic (fields) in —
Ἑλλάδι. Καὶ ἀφικνοῦται ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν
Greece. — (Then) they-arrived at the river
Τίγρητα· πρὸς ᾧ ἦν μεγάλη καὶ πολυάν-
Tigris; near which there-was (a) large and popu-
θρωπος πόλις ὄνομα ᾗ Σιττάκη,
lous city, (the) name to-which (called) Sittace,
ἀπέχουσα τοῦ ποταμοῦ πεντεκαίδεκα σταδίους.
being-distant from-the river (only) fifteen stadia.

14. Οὖν μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνησαν
Therefore — the Greeks encamped (pitched their tents)
παρ' αὐτὴν, ἐγγὺς μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ
near it, close to (a) large and beautiful
παραδείσου καὶ δασέος παντοίων
park, and thick (thickly planted) with-all-kinds
δένδρων· δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι, διαβεβηκότες
of-trees; but the barbarians, having-crossed (though they had
τὸν Τίγρητα, ἦσαν οὐ μέντοι
just crossed) the (river) Tigris, were not, however, (no longer)
καταφανεῖς.
in-sight.

15. Μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν
After — — supper Proxenus and Xenophon
ἔτυχον ὄντες ἐν περιπάτῳ πρὸ
happened being in walking [happened to be walking] before
τῶν ὅπλων· καὶ
the of-arms (in front of the place where the arms were piled); —

τις ἄνθρωπος προσελθὼν ἠρώτησε τοὺς
(when) a man approaching inquired of-the
προφύλακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον·
sentinels where he might see Proxenus or Clearchus;
δὲ οὐκ ἐζήτει Μένωνα, καὶ ταῦτα ὢν
but he-did not ask for-Menon, and this being (though
παρ' Ἀριαίου, τοῦ ξένου Μένωνος.
he came) from Ariæus, the guest-friend of-Menon.

16. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν ὅτι εἰμι αὐτός
Then indeed Proxenus said (*that*) I-am he (the
ὃν ζητεῖς, ὁ ἄνθρωπος εἶπε τάδε· Ἀριαῖος
person) whom you-seek, the man (then) said —: "Ariæus
καὶ Ἀρταόζος ὄντες πιστοὶ Κύρῳ καὶ
and Artaozus, being faithful (friends) to-Cyrus and
εὖνοι ὑμῖν, ἐπεμψάν με καὶ κελεύουσι
well-disposed towards-you, have-sent me (to you) and exhort-you
φυλάττεσθαι, μὴ οἱ βάρβαροι ἐπιθῶνται τῆς
to-be-on-your-guard, lest the barbarians fall-upon-you in-the
νυκτὸς· δὲ ἔστι πολὺ στράτευμα ἐν
night; for there-is (a) large army (body of troops) in
τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ. 17. Καὶ κελεύουσι
the adjoining park. They also request-(advise)-you
πέμψαι φυλακὴν ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ
to-send (a) guard to the bridge of-(over)-the river
Τίγρητος, ὡς Τισσαφέρνης διανοεῖται λῦσαι
Tigris, as Tissaphernes is-planning to-break
αὐτὴν τῆς νυκτός, ἐὰν δύνηται, ὡς μὴ
it down in-the night, if he-can, so-that you-can not
διαβῆτε, ἀλλ' ἀποληφθῆτε ἐν μέσῳ
cross, but (will be) intercepted in middle (hemmed
τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. 18. Ἀκού-
between) the river and the canal." Having-
σαντες ταῦτα ἄγουσιν αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν
heard these (things), they-led him to —
Κλέαρχον, καὶ φράζουσιν ἃ λέγει. Δὲ
Clearchus, and told (him) what he-said (reports). But

ὁ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας σφόδρα ἐταράχθη καὶ
— Clearchus, having-heard, (was) greatly agitated and
ἐφοβεῖτο. 19. Δέ τις νεανίσκος τῶν παρόντων
alarmed. But a-certain young-man of-those present,
ἐννοήσας εἶπεν, ὡς τε τὸ
having-reflected (a little on the matter), said that not-only the (designs
ἐπιθήσεσθαι, καὶ τὸ λύσειν τὴν γέφυραν
of) making-an-attack, but-also the breaking-down (of) the bridge,
εἴη οὐκ ἀκόλουθα. Γὰρ δῆλον ὅτι ἐπιτιθε-
were not consistent. For (it is) evident that attack-
μένους δεήσει ἢ νικᾶν ἢ
ing (us) it-will-be-necessary (for them) either to-conquer or
ἡττᾶσθαι. Ἐὰν οὖν μὲν νικῶσι, τί
be-conquered. If, therefore, indeed they-should-conquer, what
δεῖ αὐτοὺς λύειν τὴν
is-the-necessity (why is it necessary) for-them to-break-down the
γέφυραν; γὰρ οὐδὲ ἂν ὦσιν πολλαὶ γέφυραι,
bridge? for — if there-were many bridges,
ἂν ἔχοιμεν ὅποι φυγόντες ἡμεῖς σωθεῖμεν.
would we-have (any place) where fleeing we might-save
(ourselves). 20. Δὲ ἐὰν ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν τῆς
But if we should-conquer-them, the
γεφύρας λελυμένης οὐχ ἕξουσιν
bridge having-been-destroyed, they-would not have
ὅποι ἐκεῖνοι φύγωσιν· οὐδὲ μὲν
(any place) where they might-flee; | neither indeed [nor] | will
οὐδεὶς πέραν
none [will any] (of their friends) on-the-other-side (of the river),
ὄντων πολλῶν δυνήσεται
being (ever so) many (however numerous), be-able
βοηθῆσαι αὐτοῖς τῆς γεφύρας λελυμένης.
to-assist them, the bridge being-destroyed.
21. Ὁ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ἤρετο
— Clearchus, having-heard — these (things), asked
τὸν ἄγγελον τις πόση εἴη χώρα
the messenger how much might-be (was the extent of the) country

ἡ ἐν μεσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς
which (lay) (*in the-middle*) (between) the Tigris and the
διώρυχος. Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν, ὅτι πολλὴ,
canal. And who said (he replied) that (it was) great
καὶ ἔνεισι πολλαὶ κῶμαι καὶ
(of considerable extent) and there-were many villages and
μεγάλαι πόλεις. 22. Καὶ τότε δὴ ἐγνώσθη,
large towns (in it). And then — they-perceived
ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι ὑποπέμψαιεν
(concluded) that the barbarians had-sent-as-a-spy (with underhand
τὸν ἄνθρωπον ὀκνοῦντες, μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες,
object) — (this) man, fearing lest the Greeks,
διελόντες τὴν γέφυραν, μένοιεν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ
taking-to-pieces the bridge, might-remain in the island,
ἔχοντες ἐρύματα ἔνθεν μὲν τὸν Τίγρητα, δὲ
having as-defences on-this (side) indeed the Tigris, and
ἔνθεν τὴν διώρυχα, δ' ἔχοιεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
on-the-other the canal, and might-have the necessaries-of-life
ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐν
(procure sufficient supply of provisions) from the country | in (the)
μέσῳ, οὔσης πολλῆς
middle [from the country which lay between], being (which was) great
καὶ ἀγαθῆς, καὶ ἐνόντων τῶν
(extensive) and good (fertile), and there-being-on-it — (people
ἐργασομένων· δὲ καὶ εἶτα γένοι-
dwelling there) capable-of-cultivating-it; and also afterwards might-
το ἀποστροφὴ, εἴ τις βούλοιτο ποιεῖν
become (serve as) (a) place-of-refuge, if any-one might-wish to-do
κακῶς βασιλέα. 23. Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀνεπαύοντο·
harm to (the) king. After this they-prepared-for-rest;
μέντοι ὅμως ἔπεμψαν φυλακὴν
however, they likewise sent (did not neglect to send) (a) guard
ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν· καὶ οὔτε οὐδεὶς
to the bridge; but neither did (*no-one*) (any one) (attempt to)
ἐπέθετο οὐδαμόθεν, οὔτε οὐδεὶς τῶν
attack-them from-any-quarter, nor did — (any one) of-the

πολεμίων ἦλθε πρὸς τὴν γέφυραν, ὡς οἱ
enemy come near the bridge, as — (those)
φυλάττοντες ἀπήγγελλον. 24. Δὲ
guarding-it (who were stationed on guard) reported. And
ἐπειδὴ ἐγένετο ἕως, διέβαινον τὴν γέφυραν,
when it-became daylight, they-crossed the bridge,
ἐζευγμένην τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτά πλοίοις,
joined-together by (constructed of) thirty and seven boats,
ὡς πεφυλαγμένως οἷόν τε μάλιστα·
as cautiously as indeed most (could be) [with
γὰρ τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων
the greatest possible caution]; for some of-the Greeks (who
παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους ἐξήγγελλον ὡς
came) from Tissaphernes brought-word (stated) that they
μέλλοιεν ἐπιθήσεσθαι δια-
(the enemy) intended to-attack (them) (as they were) cross-
βαινόντων. Ἀλλὰ μὲν ταῦτα ἦν ψευδῆ·
ing (the bridge). But also this (report) was false;
διαβαινόντων μέντοι ὁ Γλοῦς ἐπεφάνη
(as they were) crossing-over, however, — Glus appeared
μετ' ἄλλων, σκοπῶν εἰ διαβαίνοιεν τὸν
with others, observing (watching to see) if they-would-cross the
ποταμόν· δὲ ἐπειδὴ εἶδεν, ᾤχετο ἀπε-
river; but when he-saw (that they did) he-went riding-
λαύνων.
away (he immediately rode away).

25. Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν
From — the Tigris they-proceeded (in)
τέτταρας σταθμοὺς, εἴκοσι παρασάγγας,
four days'-march, (a distance of) twenty parasangs,
ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Φύσκον, τὸ εὖρος
to the river Physcus, the width (of which was)
πλέθρου· ἐπῆν δὲ γέφυρα. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα
a-plethrum; over (this) there-was — (a) bridge. And here
ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη πόλις, ᾗ ὄνομα
was-situated (a) large town, to-which (was given the) name

Ὦπις· πρὸς ἣν νόθος ἀδελφὸς
(called) Opis; near which (a) natural (illegitimate) brother
Κύρου καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου, ὁ ἄγων πολλὴν
of-Cyrus and Artaxerxes, who was-leading (a) numerous
στρατιὰν ἀπὸ Σούσων καὶ Ἐκβατάνων, ὡς
army from Susa and Ecbatana, as (with the
βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ, ἀπήντησε τοῖς
intention of) assisting (the) king, met the
Ἕλλησι· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ στράτευμα ἑαυτοῦ
Greeks; and having-halted | the army of-himself
ἐθεώρει τοὺς Ἕλληνας παρερχο-
[his army], he viewed (watched) the Greeks passing-
μένους. 26. Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖτο
by (as they passed by). — But Clearchus led
μὲν εἰς δύο, δὲ ἄλλοτε
(marched) — (his men) by two (abreast), but at-one-time
ἐπορεύετο καὶ ἄλλοτε ἐφιστάμενος.
he-marched-forward and at-another halting (halted occasion-
Δὲ ὅσον χρόνον ἐπιστήσειε τὸ
ally on the way). And as-long (a) time (as) he-might-halt the
ἡγούμενον τοῦ στρατεύματος, τοσοῦτον χρόνον
van of-the army, so-long (a) time
ἦν ἀνάγκη τὴν ἐπίστασιν γίγνεσθαι δι'
it-was necessarily (that a) — halt should-take-place throughout
ὅλου τοῦ στρατεύματος· ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα
the-whole of-the army; so-that the army
καὶ τοῖς Ἕλλησι αὐτοῖς δόξαι εἶναι πάμπολυ, καὶ
even to-the Greeks themselves seemed to-be very-large, and
τὸν Πέρσην θεωροῦντα ἐκπεπλῆχθαι.
the Persian (general) viewing (them) was-amazed.
27. Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδίας ἓξ
Hence — they-proceeded through — Media | six
ἐρήμους σταθμούς,
desert stations [six days' march through a desert country],
τριάκοντα παρασάγγας, εἰς τὰς κώμας
(a distance of) thirty parasangs, to the villages

Παρυσάτιδος, τῆς μητρὸς Κύρου καὶ
of-Parysatis, the mother of-Cyrus and of (the)
βασιλέως. Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεγγελῶν Κύρῳ
king. Tissaphernes (as) insulting Cyrus
ἐπέτρεψε τοῖς Ἕλλησι διαρπάσαι ταύτας,
permitted the Greeks to-plunder these (villages)
πλὴν ἀνδραπόδων. Ἐνῆν
(of everything) except (the) slaves. There-was-in-them
δὲ πολύς σῖτος, καὶ πρόβατα, καὶ ἄλλα
indeed much corn, also sheep, and other
χρήματα. 28. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν τέτταρας
things. Hence — they-proceeded [four
ἐρήμους σταθμούς,
desert stations [four days' march through the desert],
εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, ἔχοντες τὸν
(a distance of) twenty parasangs, having the
ποταμὸν Τίγρητα ἐν ἀριστερᾷ. Ἐν
river Tigris on (their) left. At (the
δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ σταθμῷ, πέραν
end of) — the first day's-march, beyond (on the opposite bank of)
τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων
the river, there-was-situated (a) large and opulent
πόλις, ὄνομα Καιναί, ἐξ ἧς οἱ βάρβαροι
town, (the) name (called) Cænæ, from which the barbarians
διῆγον ἐπὶ σχεδίαις διφθερίναις
brought-over, on rafts (made of) skins, (a supply of)
ἄρτους, τυρούς, οἶνον.
bread, cheese, (and) wine.

CHAPTER V.

After a three-days' halt on the river Zabatus, Clearchus endeavors to put an end to the distrust between the Persians and the Greeks by an interview with Tissaphernes. He is received so plausibly that he is induced to return on the following day, accompanied by five other generals and twenty captains, in expectation of being informed of the persons who had excited, by false reports, ill feelings between the two armies. The generals are conducted into the tent and put to death; the captains and those with them are massacred on the outside, one only escaping to tell the tale. Ariæus calls on the rest of the Greeks to surrender their arms, but is answered with defiance.

1. Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν
AFTER these (soon after) they-arrived at the
ποταμόν Ζάπατον, τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων
river Zapata, (it being the) — width (of) four
πλέθρων. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέ-
plethra. And here they-remained three
ρας· ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἦσαν μὲν
days; during — these (days) there-were indeed (the same)
ὑποψίαι, δὲ οὐδεμία φανερὰ ἐπιβουλή
suspicions, but no manifest plot (indications of
ἐφαίνετο. 2. Ἔδοξεν οὖν τῷ
treachery) appeared. It-seemed therefore (proper) —
Κλεάρχῳ συγγενέσθαι τῷ Τισσα-
to-Clearchus (Clearchus resolved) to-have-a-conference — with-Tissa-
φέρνει, καὶ εἴ πως δύναιτο, παῦ-
phernes, and if in-any-manner he-could (if it was possible), to-put-a-
σαι τὰς ὑποψίας, πρὶν πόλεμον
stop to— (these) suspicions before war (open hostilities)
γενέσθαι ἐξ αὐτῶν· καὶ ἔπεμψέ τινα ἐροῦντα,
should-arise from them; and he-sent some-one saying (to
ὅτι χρήζοι συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ. Δὲ
say) that he-desired to-confer with-him (Tissaphernes). —
ὁ ἑτοίμως ἐκέλευεν ἥκειν. 3. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ
Who at-once requested (him) to-come. When indeed
συνῆλθον, ὁ Κλέαρχος λέγει τάδε· Ἐγώ, ὦ
they-met, — Clearchus spoke as-follows: "I, O
Τισσαφέρνη, οἶδα μὲν ὅρκους γεγενημένους
Tissaphernes, know indeed (that) oaths have-been-taken

ἡμῖν, καὶ δεξιὰς δεδομένας, μὴ ἀδικήσειν
by-us, and right-hands given, not to-injure
ἀλλήλους· δὲ ὁρῶ σέ τε φυλαττόμενον
one-another; but (nevertheless) I-see you not-only guarding-yourselves
ὡς ἡμᾶς πολεμίους, καὶ ἡμεῖς, ὁρῶντες
as-if we (were) enemies, but-also we, perceiving
ταῦτα, ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα. 4. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
these (things), are-on-our-guard-against (you). After indeed
σκοπῶν οὐ δύναμαι αἴσθεσθαι οὔτε
observing (attentively), I-am not able to-detect (*neither*)
σὲ πειρώμενον ποιεῖν ἡμᾶς κακῶς, ἐγώ τε
you striving to-do us injury, (since) I indeed
σαφῶς οἶδα ὅτι ἡμεῖς γε οὐδ' ἐπινοοῦμεν οὐδὲν
certainly know that we at-least neither intend (*nothing*)
τοιοῦτον, ἔδοξέ
(anything) of-this-sort (have no such intentions) (toward you), it-seemed
μοι ἐλθεῖν εἰς λόγους σοι, ὅπως εἰ
to-me (best) to-come to (a) conference with-you, so-that if
δυναίμεθα ἐξέλοιμεν τὴν ἀπιστίαν
we-can we-may-remove (put an end to) the (our) distrust
ἀλλήλων. 5. Γὰρ καὶ ἤδη οἶδα
of-one-another. For indeed I (before) now know
ἀνθρώπους, τοὺς μὲν ἐκ
(have known) men, — (some) indeed from
διαβολῆς, δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἐξ ὑπο-
direct-accusation, — and — (others) from (mere) sus-
ψίας, οἳ φοβήθεντες ἀλλήλους βουλόμενοι
picion, who, fearing one-another (and) wishing
φθάσαι πρὶν παθεῖν
to-have-anticipated (to inflict injury) before suffering (any),
ἐποίησαν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ τοὺς οὔτε μέλ-
have-done irremediable evils to — (those) neither intend-
λοντας οὔτ' αὖ βουλομένους οὐδέν
ing nor moreover wishing (to-do) (*nothing*) (anything)
τοιοῦτον. 6. Νομίζων οὖν τὰς
of (the) kind. Thinking, therefore, (that) —

τοιαύτας ἀγνωμοσύνας ἂν παύεσθαι
such-kinds-of misunderstandings may be-made-to-cease (cleared up)

μάλιστα συνουσίαις,
most-of-all (most effectually) by-meeting-together (personal interview),

ἥκω, καὶ βούλομαι διδάσκειν σε,
I-have-come (here), and am-desirous to-inform (convince) you

ὡς σὺ οὐκ ὀρθῶς ἀπιστεῖς ἡμῖν.
that you do not justly mistrust us (have no just ground

7. Γὰρ μὲν πρῶτον καὶ
for mistrusting us). For indeed (in the first place) and

μέγιστον, οἱ ὅρκοι θεῶν κολύουσι ἡμᾶς
principally, the oaths of (the) gods forbid us

εἶναι πολεμίους ἀλλήλοις· ὅστις δὲ τούτων
to-be enemies to-each-other; whoever indeed of-these

σύνοιδεν αὐτῷ παρημεληκώς,
is-conscious to-himself (of) having-disregarded (such obligations),

τοῦτον ἐγὼ ἂν οὔποτ' εὐδαιμονίσαιμι.
this-one (that man) I should never (consider) happy.

Γὰρ τὸν πόλεμον θεῶν οἶδα οὐκ, οὔτ' ἀπὸ
For (from) the hostility of (the) gods I-know not neither | from

ποίου ἂν τάχους οὔτε ὅποι τις φεύγων ἂν
[with] what-degree — of-speed nor where any-one fleeing could

ἀποφύγοι, οὔτ' εἰς ποῖον σκότος ἂν
escape, neither into what darkness he might

ἀποδραίη, οὔθ' ὅπως ἂν ἀποσταίη εἰς
flee-(steal)-away, nor how he could retreat into (a)

ἐχυρὸν χωρίον, γὰρ πάντη
fortified place (and escape from them), for everywhere

πάντα ὕποχα τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ οἱ
all things (are) subject to-the gods, and the

θεοὶ κρατοῦσι πανταχῇ πάντων ἴσον. **8.** Οὕτω
gods rule everywhere over-all-things alike. Thus

γιγνώσκω δὴ μὲν περὶ τῶν θεῶν τε καὶ
do-I-think truly — respecting the gods, and also

τῶν ὅρκων, παρ' οἷς ἡμεῖς, συνθέμενοι,
— the oaths, with whom (in whose keeping) we, contracting

κατεθέμεθα τὴν
(with one another), having-deposited (formed the league of) — (our)
φιλίαν· δὲ τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων ἐγὼ νομίζω σὲ ἐν
friendship; but — of-all-human-things I consider you at
τῷ παρόντι εἶναι μέγιστον ἀγαθόν ἡμῖν.
the present (time) to-be the-greatest good (advantage) to-us.

9. Γὰρ μὲν σὺν σοὶ πᾶσα μὲν ὁδὸς
For indeed with you (your assistance) every — road (is)
εὔπορος, δὲ πᾶς ποταμὸς διαβατός, οὐκ
easy, and every river passable, (there is) no
ἀπορία τε τῶν ἐπιτηδείων· δὲ ἄνευ
want indeed of-the necessaries-of-life (provisions); but without
σοῦ πᾶσα ἡ ὁδός μὲν διὰ σκότους (γὰρ
you (our) entire — route — (would be) through darkness (for
ἐπιστάμεθα οὐδὲν αὐτῆς), δὲ πᾶς ποταμὸς
we-know nothing of-it), and every river (would be)
δύσπορος, δὲ πᾶς ὄχλος φοβερός,
difficult-in-crossing, also every multitude-of-men (would be) terrible,
δὲ ἐρημία φοβερώτατον· γὰρ ἐστί
but solitude (would be) the-most-terrible (of all); for it-is
μεστὴ πολλῆς ἀπορίας. 10. Δὲ εἰ δὴ καὶ
full of-every difficulty. But if, indeed, having —
μανέντες κατακτείναιμεν σε, ἂν ἤ τι ἄλλο
become-mad, we-should-kill you, would anything else
κατακτείναντες τὸν εὐεργέτην
(happen), having-slain — (our) benefactor, (than that)
ἀγωνιζοίμεθα πρὸς βασιλέα τὸν μέγιστον
we-should-have-to-contend with (the) king, the greatest
ἔφεδρον; ὅσων καὶ δὲ δὴ
(your most powerful) avenger? of-how-many and indeed truly
οἷων ἐλπίδων ἂν στερήσαιμι ἐμαυτὸν, εἰ
how-great expectations I should deprive myself, if
ἐπιχειρήσαιμι ποιεῖν σέ τι κακὸν, ταῦτα
I-should-attempt to-do you any injury, this
λέξω. 11. Ἐλὰ γὰρ ἐπεθύμησά Κῦρον
I-will-tell (you). For I — desired Cyrus

γενέσθαι φίλον μοι, νομίζων
to-become (a) friend to-me (to be my friend), thinking

τῶν τότε εἶναι ἱκανώτατον ποιεῖν
(him) of-the (men) at-that-time to-be the-most-apt to-do

εὖ ὃν βούλοιτο· δὲ
good (most able to benefit those) whom he-wished (to favor); but

νῦν ὁρῶ σὲ ἔχοντα τε τήν δύναμιν
I now see you having (in possession of) not-only the power

καὶ χώραν Κύρου, καὶ σώζοντα τὴν ἀρχὴν
and territory of-Cyrus, but-also retaining the government

σεαυτοῦ, δὲ τὴν δύναμιν
of-yourself (your own province), and (that) the power of (the)

βασιλέως, ἣ Κῦρος ἐχρῆτο πολεμίᾳ,
king, which Cyrus experienced (as) hostile (was opposed

ταύτην οὖσαν σύμμαχον σοὶ.
to Cyrus), this (power) being (is now an) ally to-you

12. Δὲ τούτων ὄντων
(is ready to support you). But these (things) being

τοιούτων, τίς οὕτω μαίνεται,
thus (such being the case), (is there) any-one so mad,

ὅστις οὐ βούλεται εἶναι φίλος σοι; Ἀλλὰ
who would not wish to-be (a) friend to-you? But

μὴν (γὰρ ἐρῶ καὶ ταῦτα ἐξ ὧν ἔχω
again (for I-will-mention also those (things) from which I-have

ἐλπίδας, καὶ σὲ βουλήσεσθαι εἶναι φίλον
hopes (that) even you will-desire to-be (a) friend

ἡμῖν)· **13.** γὰρ μὲν οἶδα Μυσοὺς ὄντας
to-us (our friend)); for indeed I-know (the) Mysians being

λυπηροὺς ὑμῖν, οὓς νομίζω σὺν τῇ
(are) troublesome to-you, whom I-think (that), with the (my)

παρούσῃ δυνάμει ἂν παρασχεῖν ταπεινοὺς
present (Grecian) force, I could render subservient

ὑμῖν· δὲ καὶ οἶδα Πισίδας
to-you; — also I-know (am aware) (that the) Pisidians (annoy you);

δὲ καὶ ἀκούω εἶναι πολλὰ ἄλλα ἔθνη
and — I-hear (also) (that) there-are many other nations

τοιαῦτα ἃ οἶμαι ἂν παῦσαι ἀεὶ
like-these (two mentioned) which I-think (that) I could prevent ever
ἐνοχλοῦντα τῇ ὑμετέρᾳ εὐδαιμονίᾳ. Δέ
disturbing — your happiness (tranquillity). But (as
Αἰγυπτίους, οἷς νῦν γιγνώσκω ὑμᾶς
to the) Egyptians, against-whom I now know you
μάλιστα τεθυμωμένους, οὐχ ὁρῶ
have-been very-much excited (enraged), I-do not see
ποίᾳ συμμάχῳ δυνάμει μᾶλλον
what auxiliary force, (which) having-been rather
χρησάμενοι ἂν κολάσεσθε
used, you might punish (you could use to chastise
τῆς οὔσης νῦν σὺν
them better than that) — being (which I) now (have) with
ἐμοί. 14. Ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐν τοῖς γε
me. But again among — (those) at-least (who)
οἰκοῦσι πέριξ σύ, εἰ μὲν βούλοιο εἶναι φίλος
dwell round-about you, if indeed you-desired to-be (a) friend
τῳ, ὡς ἂν εἶης μέγιστος·
— (to any), (that) you might be (the) greatest (possible friend)
δὲ εἴ τις λυτοίη σε,
(prove the most powerful); and if any-one should-annoy you,
ἀναστρέφοιο ὡς δεσπότης, ἔχων ἡμᾶς
you-might-deal (with them) as (a) master, having us
ὑπηρέτας, οἵ ἂν ὑπηρετοῖμεν σοι οὐκ ἕνεκα
for-assistants, — (for) we would serve you not on-account-
τοῦ μισθοῦ μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς
of — (our) pay alone, but — (on account of) the
χάριτος, ἧς, σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἂν δικαίως
gratitude which, having-been-saved by you, we should justly
ἔχομεν σοι. 15. Ἐμοὶ μὲν δὴ ἐνθυ-
have (feel) towards you. To-me indeed, — con-
μουμένῳ πάντα ταῦτα τὸ σὲ ἀπιστεῖν ἡμῖν
sidering all these (things), | — you to-distrust us
δοκεῖ εἶναι οὕτω θαυμαστὸν,
[your distrusting us] seems to-be so wonderful (surprising)

ὥστε ἂν ἥδιστ' καὶ ἀκούσαιμι τὸ ὄνομα
that I would most-gladly — have-heard (hear) the name
τίς ἐστὶ οὕτω δεινὸς λέγειν, ὥστε λέγων
(of him) — (who) is so skilled to-speak, that speaking
πεῖσαι σε ὡς ἡμεῖς ἐπιβου-
to-have-persuaded you (to make you believe) that we are-
λεύομεν σοι. Κλέαρχος μὲν οὖν εἶπε τοσαῦτα·
conspiring against-you." Clearchus indeed — spoke thus;
δὲ Τισσαφέρνης ἀπημείφθη ὧδε·
— Tissaphernes replied as follows:

16. Ἀλλὰ μέν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἥδομαι ἀκούων
"But indeed, O Clearchus, I-am-delighted hearing
φρονίμους λόγους σου· γὰρ
(the) judicious discourse of-you (your prudent words); for
γιγνώσκων ταῦτα, εἰ βουλεύοις τι
knowing these (your sentiments), if you-were-to-plot anything
κακὸν ἐμοὶ, ἅμα ἂν δοκεῖς μοι καὶ
evil against-me, at-the-same-time you would appear to-me indeed
εἶναι κακόνους σαυτῷ. Δ' ὡς
to-be evil-minded to-yourself (your own enemy). But that you
ἂν μάθῃς, ὅτι ὑμεῖς ἂν οὐδὲ δικαίως
may learn (be convinced) that you do (could) not justly
ἀπιστοίητε οὔτε βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐμοὶ, ἀντάκουσον.
distrust either (the) king or me, listen-in-turn

17. Γὰρ εἰ ἐβουλόμεθα ἀπολέσαι ὑμᾶς
(hear me). For if we-wished to-destroy you,
πότερα δοκοῦμεν σοι ἀπορεῖν πλήθους
whether do-we-seem to-you to-lack (the) multitude (number)
ἱππέων, ἢ πεζῶν ἢ ὁπλίσεως ἐν ᾗ
of-cavalry, or of-infantry, or warlike-equipments with-the-aid-of which
ἂν εἴημεν ἱκανοὶ μὲν βλάπτειν ὑμᾶς, δὲ οὐδεὶς
we might be able indeed to-injure you, —(without) no
κίνδυνος ἀντιπάσχειν; 18. Ἀλλὰ
(any) danger to-undergo-(of suffering)-in-return? But
ἂν δοκοῦμεν σοι ἀπορεῖν χωρίων
might we-seem (do we seem) to-you to-be-in-want-of places

ἐπιτηδείων ἐπιτίθεσθαι ὑμῖν; μὲν τοσαῦτα
suitable to-attack you? (are there not) indeed so-many

πεδία ἃ ὄντα φίλια ὑμεῖς διαπορεύεσθε σὺν
plains which, being friendly (to us), you pass-through with

πολλῷ πόνῳ, δὲ ὁρᾶτε τοσαῦτα ὄρη
much labor (difficulty), and do-you-see the-many mountains

ὄντα πορευτέα ὑμῖν, ἃ
|being to-be-crossed by-you [that must be crossed by you], which

ἔξεστι ἡμῖν προκαταλαβοῦσι
it-is-allowed us, after-having-previously-taken-possession-of (we might

παρέχειν ἄπορα ὑμῖν, δ' εἰσὶ
by preoccupying them),(to)-render impassable to-you, and are-there (not)

τοσοῦτοι ποταμοὶ, ἐφ' ὧν ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν ταμιεύεσθαι
so-many rivers, at which it-is-allowed us to-regulate

ὁπόσοις ὑμῶν ἂν βουλώμεθα μάχεσ-
(determine) with-how-many of-you we might wish to-

θαι; δὲ εἰσὶ αὐτῶν οὓς ἂν οὐδὲ
fight? and are-there (not some) of-these (rivers) which you could not

διαβαίητε παντάπασι, εἰ ἡμεῖς μὴ διαπορεύοιμεν
cross at-all, if we did not cross

ὑμᾶς; 19. Δ' εἰ ἐν
you over (unless we should transport you)? But if (supposing) in

πᾶσι τούτοις ἡττώμεθα, ἀλλὰ γέ τοι τό
all these (things) we-should-fail, — (then) at-least — —

πῦρ ἐστι κρεῖττον τοῦ καρποῦ·
| fire is better (than) the fruit (of the earth) [fire would

κατακαύσαντες
prove its power over the produce of the soil]; (by) burning

ὃν ἡμεῖς ἂν δυναίμεθ' ἀντιτάξαι λιμὸν ὑμῖν,
which we would be-able to-oppose (set) famine against-you,

ᾧ ὑμεῖς, οὐδ' εἰ εἴητε πάνυ ἀγαθοὶ,
which you, neither (not even) if you-were ever-so brave,

ἂν δύναισθε μάχεσθαι. 20 Πῶς οὖν ἂν,
would you-be-able to-withstand. How-then, therefore, if,

ἔχοντες τοσούτους πόρους πρὸς τὸ πολεμεῖν
having so-many means (ways) | for the to-wage-war

ὑμῖν καὶ μηδένα τούτων
with-you [of waging war with you], and not-one of-them
ἐπικίνδυνον ἡμῖν, ἔπειτα ἂν ἐκ πάντων τούτων
dangerous to-us, that we should of all these
ἐξελοίμεθα τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον, ὃς μὲν μόνος
choose that — way which indeed alone (is) (the
ἀσεβὴς πρὸς θεῶν, δὲ μόνος
only one) impious before (the) gods, and alone (is) (the only one)
αἰσχρὸς πρὸς ἀνθρώπων ; 21. Δὲ ἐστὶ
disgraceful before (in the sight of) men ? But it-is
παντάπασιν ἀπόρων καὶ ἀμηχά-
altogether (the act of men) perplexed-by-difficulties and destitute-of-
νων καὶ ἐχομένων ἀνάγκῃ, καὶ τούτων
means and held (bound) by-necessity, and these (being)
πονηρῶν, οἵτινες ἐθέλουσι πράττειν τι
wicked (men) who desire to-effect anything
τε δι' ἐπιορκίας πρὸς θεούς,
(their purposes) not-only by perjury towards (the) gods,
καὶ ἀπιστίας πρὸς ἀνθρώπους. Ἡμεῖς, ὦ
but-also distrust towards men. We, O
Κλέαρχε, ἐσμέν οὐκ οὔτε οὕτως ἀλόγιστοι
Clearchus, are not (*neither*) (either) so inconsiderate
οὔτε ἠλίθιοι. 22. Ἀλλὰ τί δή, ἐξὸν
(*nor*) (or) so-foolish. But why truly, it-being-allowed(us)
ἀπολέσαι ὑμᾶς, οὐκ ἤλθομεν ἐπὶ τοῦτο ;
to-have-destroyed you, | did-we not go to this (have
ἴσθι εὖ, ὅτι ὁ αἴτιος τούτου
we made no attempt to do so) ? know well that the cause of-this
ἐμὸς ἔρως, ἐμὲ τὸ γενέσθαι
(was) my desire, | me the to-become [to prove myself]
πιστὸν τοῖς Ἕλλησι, καὶ ᾧ ξενικῷ Κῦρος
faithful to-the Greeks, and with-which foreign (force) Cyrus
ἀνέβη πιστεύων διὰ μισθοδοσίας,
went-up trusting (them) on-account-of (the) pay-given
τούτῳ ἐμὲ καταβῆναι ἰσχυρόν
(them), with-this (same force) (it is for) me to-go-down strengthened

δι᾽ εὐεργεσίας. 23. Δὲ
on-account-of benefits (bestowed on them). But (as to)
ὅσα ὑμεῖς ἔστε χρήσιμοι
how-many-things (in which) you are (will be) useful
μοι σὺ μὲν καὶ εἶπας τὰ,
(of service) to-me you have indeed — mentioned — (some of them),
δὲ τὸ μέγιστον ἐγὼ οἶδα· γὰρ μὲν
but the greatest (of all) I-myself know; for — (although)
ἔξεστι μόνῳ βασιλεῖ ἔχειν τὴν τιάραν
it-is-allowed alone to (the) king to-have (to wear) the tiara
ὀρθὴν ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ, δ᾽ ἴσως, [1] τὴν
(crown) upright on the head, yet perhaps — (that) (which
ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ, ὑμῶν παρόντων,
is) on the heart, you being-present (with your assistance),
καὶ ἕτερος ἂν ἔχοι εὐπετῶς.
even another may have easily (without difficulty)."

24. Εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ λέγειν
Saying these (words) he-seemed to — Clearchus to-speak
ἀληθῆ· καὶ εἶπεν· Οὐκ οὖν
the-truth (with sincerity); and he-replied: "(Are) not (they), then,"
ἔφη, οἵτινες, τοιούτων εἰς φιλίαν
he-said, "who, (when) such-great (inducements) to friendship
ὑπαρχόντων ἡμῖν, διαβάλλοντες πειρῶν-
existing (exist) to-(between)-us, (by) calumniating en-
ται ποιῆσαι ἡμᾶς πολεμίους εἰσὶ ἄξιοι
deavor to-make us enemies, are (they not) worthy
παθεῖν τὰ ἔσχατα; 25. Καὶ
to-suffer (do they not deserve) the severest (of punishment)?" "And
ἐγὼ μὲν γε ἔφη ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, εἴ τε οἱ
I, for-my-part," said — Tissaphernes, "if you as-well-as the
στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ βούλεσθε ἐλθεῖν μοι
generals and the captains will come to-me

[1] Τὴν δ᾽ ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ — ἔχοι. Sc. ὀρθήν. The sense is, "but to wear a tiara erect on the heart — that is, to have a kingly spirit and to aspire to dominion — is what another, by your aid, might be able to do." Tissaphernes, by this expression, wished to made it understood that he might possibly, with the support of the Greeks, aspire to the throne of Persia himself.

ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ, λέξω τοὺς
in — (a) public (manner), I-will-mention (inform you) — (those)
λέγοντας πρὸς ἐμὲ, ὡς σὺ
(who they are) telling (that tell) — me — you
ἐπιβουλεύεις ἐμοὶ καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ σὺν ἐμοί.
are-conspiring-against me, and the army with me."

26. Δὲ ἐγὼ, ἔφη ὁ Κλέαρχος, ἄξω πάντας,
"And I," said — Clearchus, "will-bring (them) all,
καὶ αὖ δηλώσω σοὶ, ὅθεν ἐγὼ
and I in-turn will-declare (point out) to-you from-what-source I
ἀκούω περὶ σοῦ. **27.** Ἐκ τούτων δὴ τῶν
hear (reports) concerning you." After these — —
λόγων ὁ Τισσαφέρνης φιλοφρο-
speeches (this conversation), — Tissaphernes treating-him-in-a-
νούμενος τότε τε μὲν ἐκέλευσε
friendly-and-courteous-manner, then not-only indeed requested
αὐτὸν μένειν, καὶ ἐποιήσατο σύνδειπνον. Δὲ
him to-remain, but-also made-him his-guest-at-supper. But
τῇ ὑστερίᾳ ὁ Κλέαρχος, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ
on-the following-day — Clearchus, coming (having returned) to
τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἦν δῆλός τ᾽ οἰόμενος ἦν
the camp, was evidently — thinking (that) he-was
πάνυ φιλικῶς διακεῖσθαι τὸν
very kindly affected (on very friendly footing) — (with)
Τισσαφέρνην, καὶ ἀπήγγελλεν ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἔλε-
Tissaphernes, and announced (reported) what he had-
γεν· ἔφη τε χρῆναι ἰέναι παρὰ
proposed; (and) he-said (that) — (those) ought to-go (must go) to
Τισσαφέρνην, οὓς ἐκελευσε,
Tissaphernes whom he-called (whose presence he required),
καὶ οἳ ἂν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐλεγχθῶσι
and who might (should) of-the Greeks be-convicted (as)
διαβάλλοντες αὐτοὺς τιμωρη-
calumniating (their countrymen), (that) these are-to-be-(must be)-
θῆναι ὡς ὄντας προδότας καὶ κακόνους τοῖς
punished as being traitors and evil-disposed to-the

Ἕλλησι. 28. Δὲ ὑπώπτευε Μένωνα εἶναι τὸν
Greeks. For he-suspected (that) Menon was the
διαβάλλοντα, καὶ εἰδὼς αὐτὸν
calumniator, even having-known him (for he knew) (as)
συγγεγενημένον Τισσαφέρνει
having-been-(that he had been)-with Tissaphernes (in company)
μετ᾽ Ἀριαίου, καὶ στασιάζοντα
with Ariæus, both (for the purpose of) forming-a-party
αὐτῷ καὶ ἐπιβουλεύοντα, ὅπως λαβὼν
against himself and intriguing, so-that having-taken
τὸ ἅπαν στράτευμα πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
(gained) the entire army for himself (his own in-
ᾖ φίλος Τισσα-
terest) he-might-be (a) friend (secure the friendship of) Tissa-
φέρνει. 29. Δὲ καὶ ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβούλετο τὸ
phernes. But also — Clearchus wished the
ἅπαν στράτευμα ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην πρὸς
entire army to-have — (their) minds for
ἑαυτὸν, καὶ τοὺς παραλυποῦντας
him (look up to him), and — (those) molesting
εἶναι ἐκποδών. Δὲ τινες
(troublesome rivals) to-be removed-(out of his)-way. But some
τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀντέλεγον αὐτῷ,
of-the soldiers spoke-in-opposition to-him [Clearchus], (that)
πάντας τοὺς λοχαγοὺς καὶ στρατηγούς
all the captains and generals should
μὴ ἰέναι, μηδὲ πιστεύειν
not go, (and that) neither should-they-trust (place confidence in)
Τισσαφέρνει. 30. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος κατέτεινεν
Tissaphernes. But — Clearchus contended
ἰσχυρῶς ἔστε διεπράξατο μὲν
strongly until he-obtained (succeeded in getting) —
πέντε στρατηγοὺς δὲ εἴκοσι λοχαγούς ἰέναι·
five generals and twenty captains to-go
δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν
(with him); and also (some) of-the other soldiers,

ὡς διακόσιοι συνηκολούθησαν ὡς εἰς
about two-hundred, followed as-if (going) to
ἀγορὰν.
market.

31. Επεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ταῖς
When indeed they-were at the gates of —
Τισσαφέρνους, οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὲν
Tissaphernes (entrance of his tent), the generals indeed
παρεκλήθησαν εἴσω, Πρόξενος
were-invited within (to enter), (these were) Proxenus (the)
Βοιώτιος, Μένων Θετταλὸς, Αγίας Ἀρκάς,
Bœotian, Menon (the) Thessalian, Agias (the) Arcadian,
Κλέαρχος Λάκων, Σωκράτης Ἀχαιός·
Clearchus (the) Lacedæmonian, (and) Socrates (the) Achæan;
δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις. 32. Οὐ
but the captains remained at the gates (door). Not
πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον, ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου, τ'
long — afterwards, at the same signal, not-only
οἱ ἔνδον συνελαμβάνοντο, καὶ οἱ ἔξω
— (those) within were-seized, but-also — (those) without
κατεκόπησαν. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα τινὲς τῶν ἱππέων
were-killed. And after this some of-the cavalry
βαρβάρων, ἐλαύνοντες διὰ τοῦ πεδίου·
of (the) barbarians, riding through the plain;
ὅτινι Ἕλληνι ἐντυγχάνοιεν, ἢ δούλῳ ἢ
whatever Greek they-might-(happened to)-meet, either slave or
ἐλευθέρῳ ἔκτεινον πάντας. 33. Δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες
freeman, they-killed all. But the Greeks,
ὁρῶντες ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου τήν ἱππασίαν
observing from the camp — (this) riding-about
αὐτῶν τε ἐθαύμαζον, καὶ ἠμφιγνόουν ὅ τι
of-them, were not-only astonished, but-also were-in-doubt (as to) what
ἐποίουν, πρὶν Νίκαρχος Ἀρκὰς ἥκε φεύγων,
they-could-be-doing, until Nicarchus, (an) Arcadian, came fleeing,
τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα, καὶ ἔχων τὰ
being-pierced (wounded) in the belly, and having the

ἔντερα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶ,
intestines in — (his) hands [holding back the intestines with his
καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. 34. Ἐκ
hands], and related all — (that) had-occurred. Upon
τούτο δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα
this indeed the Greeks ran to — (their) arms,
πάντες ἐκπεπληγμένοι καὶ
all being-struck (in a general state of consternation), and
νομίζοντες αὐτοὺς
thinking (expecting) (that) they (the enemy) will (would)
αὐτίκα ἥξειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 35. Οἱ πάντες
immediately come upon the camp. — All,
δὲ οὐκ ἦλθον, δὲ Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάοζος
however, did not come, but (only) Ariæus and Artaozus
καὶ Μιθραδάτης, οἱ ἦσαν πιστότατοι
and Mithradates, who were (had been) the-most-faithful
Κύρῳ· δὲ ὁ ἑρμηνεὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔφη καὶ
to-Cyrus; but the interpreter of-the Greeks said (that) —
ὁρᾶν τὸν ἀδελφὸν Τισσαφέρνους σὺν αὐτοῖς,
he-(also)-saw the brother of-Tissaphernes with them,
καὶ γιγνώσκειν· δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν
and (that) he-knew (him); and also others of (the) Persians
εἰς τριακοσίους τεθωρακισμένοι συνηκο-
to-the-number-of three-hundred, equipped-with-corselets, accom-
λούθουν. 36. Οὗτοι, ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς,
panied-them. These, when they-were (drew) near,
ἐκέλευον, εἴ εἴη ἤ τις στρατηγὸς ἢ λοχαγὸς
requested, if there-were either any general or captain
τῶν Ἑλλήνων, προσελθεῖν, ἵνα ἀπαγγεί-
of-the Greeks, (them) to-come-forth, that they-might-deliver-a-
λωσι τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως. 37. Μετὰ ταῦτα
message — from (the) king. After this (the)
στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων μὲν Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομέ-
generals of-the Greeks, namely Cleanor (the) Orchome-
νιος καὶ Σοφαίνετος Στυμφάλιος, ἐξῆλθον
nian and Sophænetus (the) Stymphalian, went-forth

φυλαττόμενοι, Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος δὲ σὺν
guarded (cautiously), Xenophon (the) Athenian also (went) with
αὐτοῖς, ὅπως μάθοι τὰ περὶ Προξένου.
them, that he-might-learn — (news) concerning Proxenus.
(Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐτύγχανεν ἀπὼν
(Cheirisophus — | happened (then) being-absent (to be absent)
ἐν τινὶ κώμῃ σὺν ἄλλοις ἐπισιτιζόμενος.) 38. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
at a village with others seeking-for-provisions.) But
ἐπεὶ ἔστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον, Ἀριαῖος
when they-stood (halted) within hearing (distance), Ariæus
εἶπε τάδε· Κλέαρχος μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες,
spoke thus: "Clearchus indeed, O (men) Greeks,
ἐπεὶ τε ἐφάνη ἐπιορκῶν καὶ
since he not-only appeared committing-(guilty of)-perjury, but-also
λύων τὰς σπονδὰς ἔχει τὴν
breaking (violating) the truce, has-received — (his)
δίκην καὶ τέθνηκε· δὲ Πρόξενος καὶ
just-punishment, and died (is dead); but Proxenus and
Μένων, ὅτι κατήγγειλαν τὴν ἐπιβουλήν,
Menon, because they-denounced the plot (his treachery),
εἰσιν ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ. Δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπαιτεῖ
are in great honor. But the king demands
ὑμᾶς τὰ ὅπλα· γὰρ φησίν εἶναι αὐτοῦ
of-you — (your) arms; for he-says | to-be of-him [they are
ἐπείπερ ἦσαν Κύρου τοῦ
his] because they-were of-Cyrus [because they belonged to Cyrus], the
δούλου ἐκείνου.
slave of-himself (his subject)."

39. Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀπεκρίναντο (δὲ
To this the Greeks answer (—
Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἔλεγε)· Ὦ Ἀριαῖε
Cleanor the Orchomenian spoke) (for them): "O Ariæus,
κάκιστε ἀνθρώπων καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι
most-wicked of-men, and the others (the rest of you)
ὅσοι ἦτε φίλοι Κύρου οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε
as-many-as were friends of-Cyrus, do-you not respect (have

οὔτε θεοὺς οὔτε
you no regard for) (*neither*) (either) (the) gods (*nor*) (or)
ἀνθρώπους, οἵτινες ὀμόσαντες νομιεῖν τοὺς αὐτοὺς
men, who (after) having-sworn to-consider — those
φίλους καὶ ἐχθροὺς ἡμῖν, προδόντες
friends and enemies to-us (to be the same to you), betraying
ἡμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ἀθεωτάτῳ
us (in conjunction) with Tissaphernes, the most-godless
τε καὶ πανουργοτάτῳ, ἀπολωλέκατε
and also most-treacherous (of human beings), you-have-destroyed
τε τοὺς αὐτοὺς ἄνδρας, οἷς ὤμνυτε,
(murdered) not-only the very men to-whom you-swore
καὶ προδεδωκότες ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἄλλους
(allegiance), but-also deserting-and-betraying | us the other
ἔρχεσθε ἐφ' ἡμᾶς
[us who are left], have-come against (upon) us (in conjunction)
σὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις; 40. Δὲ ὁ Ἀριαῖος εἶπε·
with — (our) enemies?" But — Ariæus said
Γὰρ Κλέαρχος φανερὸς ἐγένετο πρόσθεν
(replied): "For Clearchus evidently was before
ἐπιβουλεύων Τισσαφέρνει τε καὶ Ὀρόντᾳ καὶ
plotting-against Tissaphernes and also Orontes and
ἡμῖν πᾶσιν σὺν τοῖς τούτοις.
us all (all of us), with — these (who accompanied
41. Ἐπὶ τούτοις Ξενοφῶν
them)." After this (to these statements) Xenophon
εἶπε τάδε· Κλέαρχος μὲν τοίνυν, εἰ
spoke thus (replied): "Clearchus of-course, therefore, if
ἔλυε τὰς σπονδὰς παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους ἔχει
he-has-broken the truce contrary to — (his) oath, he-has
τὴν δίκην· γὰρ δίκαιον ἀπόλλυσθαι
— (his) just-punishment; for it-is-just to-destroy
τοὺς ἐπιορκοῦντας·
— (those) perjuring-themselves (those who violate their oaths should
δὲ Πρόξενος καὶ Μένων ἐπείπερ εἰσὶν
suffer death); but Proxenus and-also Menon, since they-are

μὲν ὑμέτεροι εὐεργέται, δὲ ἡμέτεροι στρατηγοὶ,
indeed your benefactors and our generals,
πέμψατε αὐτοὺς δεῦρο· γὰρ δῆλον, ὅτι ὄντες
send them hither; for (it is) evident that, being
γε φίλοι ἀμφοτέροις, πειράσονται
at-least friends to-both (parties), they-will-endeavor
συμβουλεύειν τὰ βέλτιστα καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ
to-advise the (what is) best both for-you and
ἡμῖν. 42. Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι διαλεχθέντες
for-us." After this the barbarians, having-conversed
πολὺν χρόνον ἀλλήλοις ἀπῆλθον ἀποκρινάμενοι
for-a-long time with-one-another, went-away having-answered
οὐδέν.
nothing (without making any answer to this proposal).

CHAPTER VI.

The character of the five generals who were put to death.

1. Οἱ στρατηγοί μὲν δὴ, οὕτω ληφθέντες
The generals indeed (who were) thus taken
ἀνήχθησαν ὡς βασιλέα, καὶ τὰς
(prisoners) were-led-up to (the) king, and having —
κεφαλὰς ἀποτμηθέντες ἐτελεύτησαν· εἷς μὲν
(their) heads cut-off died; one indeed
αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων
of-them, Clearchus, by-general-account (consent) of all
τῶν ἐχόντων ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ,
— (those) having experimentally (a knowledge) of-him (who were ac-
δόξας γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ
quainted with him), | having-appeared to-be [seemed to be] (a) man
καὶ ἐσχάτως πολεμικὸς καὶ φιλοπόλεμος.
both extremely qualified-for-war and fond-of-military (enterprises).
2. Γὰρ καὶ δὴ ἕως μὲν ἦν πόλεμος τοῖς
For — indeed as-long-as — there-was war with-the

Λακεδαιμονίοις πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, παρέμενε
Lacedæmonians against the Athenians, he-remained
Δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο
(in the service of his country). But when peace took-place (came),
πείσας τὴν πόλιν αὑτοῦ
having-persuaded the city of-himself [Sparta, his own city]
ὡς οἱ Θρᾷκες ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς Ἕλληνας,
that the Thracians were-committing-injuries on-the Greeks,
καὶ διαπραξάμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο παρὰ τῶν Ἐφόρων
and having-obtained as-well-as he-could from the Ephori
ἐξέπλει ὡς πολε-
(the means to carry on the war), he-sailed (from home) as about-(for
μήσων τοῖς Θρᾳξίν ὑπὲρ
the purpose of)-making-war against-the Thracians (dwelling) above (the)
Χερρονήσου καὶ Περίνθου. 3. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἔφοροι
Chersonesus and Perinthus. But when the Ephori,
πως μεταγνόντες, αὐτοῦ ὄντος
having somehow (for some reason) changed-their-minds, he being
ἤδη ἔξω, ἐπειρῶντο ἀποστρέφειν
now without (after he had gone), they-endeavored to-turn
αὐτὸν ἐξ Ἰσθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι
him back from (the) Isthmus, then he-did not-any-longer
πείθεται, ἀλλ᾽ πλέων ᾤχετο εἰς Ἑλλήσ-
obey, but sailing (away) he-proceeded to (the) Helles-
ποντον· 4. Καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐθανα-
pont. And for this (in consequence) he-was-
τώθη ὑπὸ τῶν τελῶν ἐν τῇ Σπάρτῃ, ὡς
condemned-to-death by the magistrates in — Sparta, as
ἀπειθῶν. Δὲ ὢν ἤδη φυγὰς ἔρχεται
(for) being-disobedient. And being now (an) exile, he-goes
πρὸς Κύρον, καὶ μὲν ὁποίοις λόγοις ἔπεισε
to Cyrus, and indeed by-what words (means) he-persuaded
Κῦρον γέγραπται ἄλλῃ·
(conciliated the favor of) Cyrus has-been-written in-another-place;
δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσι αὐτῷ μυρίους δαρεικούς. 5. Δὲ
— Cyrus gave him ten-thousand darics. And

ὁ λαβὼν οὐκ ἐτράπετο
who (he), taking (receiving this sum), did not turn-himself (give
ἐπὶ ῥᾳθυμίαν, ἀλλ' συλλέξας στράτευμα
himself up) to idleness, but, having-collected (an) army
ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων, ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θρᾳξί,
with this — money, made-war upon-the Thracians,
καὶ τε ἐνίκησε μάχῃ, καὶ δὴ ἔφερε καὶ
and not-only conquered (them) in-battle, but-also — took away and
ἦγε ἀπὸ τούτου τούτους,
led-away from this (country) all-things (plundered and laid waste
καὶ διεγένετο πολεμῶν, μέχρι
their country), and he-continued fighting (this warfare) until
Κῦρος ἐδεήθη τοῦ στρατεύματος· δὲ τότε
Cyrus needed — (his) army; and then
ἀπῆλθεν ὡς αὖ πολεμήσων
departed (to go to him) for-the-purpose-of again making-war
σὺν ἐκείνῳ.
(in company) with him.

6. Δοκεῖ μοι ταῦτα οὖν εἶναι ἔργα
It-seems to-me (that) these therefore were (the) actions
φιλοπολέμου, ὅστις ἐξὸν μὲν ἔχειν
of-one-fond-of-war, who when-it-was-allowed-him indeed to-have
εἰρήνην ἄνευ αἰσχύνης καὶ βλάβης,
(he might have lived in) peace without disgrace and injury,
αἱρεῖται πολεμεῖν, δὲ ἐξὸν ῥᾳθυ-
he-chose to-make-war, and when-it-was-allowed-him to-lead-(he
μεῖν, βούλεται πονεῖν
might have led)-a-life-of-idleness, he-wished to-undergo-severe-labor
ὥστε πολεμεῖν, δὲ
so-as to-be-engaged-in-war (with its toils and adventures), and
ἐξὸν ἔχειν χρήματα
when-it-was-allowed-him to-have (he might have enjoyed) riches
ἀκινδύνως, αἱρεῖται πολεμῶν ποιεῖν ταῦτα
without-danger, he-chose waging-war to-make these (riches)
μείονα. Δὲ ἐκεῖνος ἤθελε δαπανᾶν εἰς πόλεμον
less. But he desired to-spend-his-money in war

ὥσπερ εἰς παιδικὰ ἢ εἰς τινὰ
as (he might have spent it) on objects-of-love or on any
ἄλλην ἡδονήν· οὕτω μὲν ἦν φιλοπόλεμος.
other pleasure; so fond indeed was-he of-war.

7. Δὲ αὖ ἐδόκει εἶναι πολεμικὸς ταύτῃ, ὅτι
And again he-appeared to-be fitted-for-war in-this (way), that
τε οὐκ ἦν φιλοκίνδυνος, καὶ ἄγων ἐπὶ τοὺς
not-only was-he fond-of-danger, | but-also marching against the
πολεμίους,
enemy [but was always ready to lead his army against the enemy],
καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτὸς, καὶ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς
both day and night, and in — danger (was)
φρόνιμος, ὡς οἱ παρόντες
possessed-of-great-presence-of-mind, as — (those) being-present (who
πανταχοῦ πάντες ὡμολό-
were with him) in-any-place (on such occasions) all con-
γουν. 8. Καὶ δ' ἐλεγέτο εἶναι ἀρχι-
fessed (agreed). And also he-was-said to-be qualified-
κὸς ὡς δυνατὸν ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου
for-commanding inasmuch-as he-could-be from — such
τρόπου, οἷον κἀκεῖνος εἶχεν.
(a) disposition as even-he had (was consistent with
Γὰρ μὲν ἦν ἱκανὸς, ὡς καὶ
his temper). For indeed he-was (more) capable than even
τις ἄλλος, φροντίζειν, ὅπως ἡ
any other (man) to-take-care (to contrive) how the
στρατιὰ ἕξει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια αὐτῷ καὶ
army would-(might)-have provisions for-itself, and
παρασκευάζειν ταῦτα· δὲ καὶ ἱκανὸς ἐμποι-
to-procure them; and also (he was) equally-able to-im
ῆσαι τοῖς παροῦσιν ὡς Κλεάρχῳ εἴη
press on — (those) present (the fact) that Clearchus was
πειστέον. 9. Δὲ τοῦτο ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ εἶναι
to-be-obeyed. And | this he-effected from — (that) to-be
χαλεπὸς· γὰρ καὶ ὁρᾶν
severe [this he effected by his severity]; for even to-look-at

ἦν στυγνὸς, καὶ τῇ φωνῇ τραχὺς·
he-was gloomy-and-stern, and (in)— (his) voice harsh;

τε ἀεὶ ἐκόλαξε ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ ἐνίοτε ὀργῇ,
he not-only always punished severely, but sometimes in-anger,

ὡς καὶ ἔσθ' ὅτε μεταμέλειν αὐτῷ.
so (that) — he sometimes (occasionally) repented himself

Καὶ δ' ἐκόλαζε γνώμῃ·
(of what he had done). And also he-punished according-to-rule (on

γὰρ ἡγεῖτο ἀκολάστου στρατεύματος
principle); for he-thought an-undisciplined army

εἶναι οὐδὲν ἄφελος. 10. Ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔφασαν
to-be (was) (of) no use. But also they-state

αὐτὸν λέγειν, ὡς δέοι τὸν στρατιώτην
(that) he (used) to-say that it-becomes the soldier

φοβεῖσθαι τὸν ἄρχοντα μᾶλλον ἢ
to-fear (ought to fear) — (his) commander more than

τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλοι ἢ φυλάξειν φυλακὰς,
the enemy, if he-would either keep guard

ἢ ἀφέξεσθαι φίλων, ἢ ἰέναι ἀπρο-
well, or abstain-from (doing injury to) friends, or go without-

φασίστως πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. 11. Μὲν οὖν
hesitation against the enemy. Indeed, therefore,

ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς σφόδρα
in — dangerous-circumstances (the soldiers) were exceedingly

ἤθελον ἀκούειν αὐτοῦ, καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται
willing to-listen-to (obey) him, and the soldiers

οὐχ ἥροῦντο ἄλλον· γὰρ καὶ
did not wish-for another (leader); for indeed

ἔφασαν τότε τὸ στρυγνὸν ἐν τοῖς
they-said (that) then the gloomy-sternness in the (his)

προσώποις αὐτοῦ φαίνεσθαι φαιδρὸν,
countenance (of-him) (in his features) appeared cheerful-and-bright,

καὶ τὸ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι ἐῤῥωμένον πρὸς
and — (his) severity seemed to-be strengthened against

τοὺς πολεμίους· ὥστε ἐφαίνετο
the enemy; so-that (his countenance) appeared (indicative

σωτήριον, καὶ οὐκέτι χαλεπόν. 12. Δ' ὅτε
of) safety, and no-longer severe. But when
γένοιντο ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ, καὶ ἐξείη
they-were out-of — danger, and it-might-be-allowed-them (they
ἀπιέναι πρὸς ἄλλους ἀρχομέ-
were at liberty) to-go to others | as-persons-having-been-
νους πολλοὶ ἀπέλειπον αὐτὸν· γὰρ
commanded [in command], many left him; for
εἶχεν οὐκ τὸ ἐπίχαρι, ἀλλ' ἦν ἀεὶ
he-had no — attractions (no attractive manners), but he-was always
χαλεπὸς καὶ ὠμός· ὥστε οἱ στρατιῶται διέκειντο
repulsive and harsh; so-that the soldiers were-affected
πρὸς αὐτὸν ὥσπερ παῖδες πρὸς
(disposed) towards him as boys towards (their)
διδάσκαλον. 13. Καὶ γὰρ οὖν οὐδέποτε εἶχεν
teacher. And — therefore he never had
ἑπομένους φιλίᾳ καὶ μὲν εὐνοίᾳ·
(men) following (him) through-friendship (or) even good-will;
δὲ οἵτινες ἢ τεταγμένοι ὑπὸ
but those-who either had-been-ordered (to the service) by (the)
πόλεως, ἢ κατεχόμενοι ὑπὸ τοῦ δεῖσθαι, ἢ τινὶ
state, or being-compelled by — want, or any
ἄλλῃ ἀνάγκῃ παρείησαν αὐτῷ ἐχρῆτο
other necessity, might-be-(were)-with him, he-made-use-of (as)
σφόδρα πειθομένοις.
being extremely obedient (found extremely submissive to him).
14. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο σὺν αὐτῷ νικᾶν τοὺς
And when they-began under him (his command) to-conquer the
πολεμίους, ἤδη ἦν τὰ ποιοῦντα μεγάλα
enemy, | now were the doings great (there were at
τοὺς στρατιώτας
that time great reasons which caused) (for) the soldiers
σὺν αὐτῷ εἶναι χρησίμους· γὰρ τε τὸ ἔχειν
with him to-be useful-and-good; | for both the to-have
θαῤῥαλέως πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους παρῆν,
confidently against the enemy was-present (to them)

(for their perfect confidence against the enemy had its effect),
καὶ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι τὴν τιμωρίαν παρ᾽
and | the to-fear (their dread of) — punishment from
ἐκείνου ἐποίει αὐτοὺς εὐτάκτους. 15. Τοιοῦτος μὲν
him made them well-disciplined. Such truly
δὴ ἦν ἄρχων· δὲ ἐλέγετο
— was-he commanding (his character as a commander); but he-was-said
οὐκ ἐθέλειν μάλα ἄρχεσθαι
not to-wish much (to be very willing) to-be-commanded
ἄλλων. Δὲ ἦν, ὅτε ἐτελεύτα, ἀμφὶ τὰ
by-others. And he-was, when he died, about —
πεντήκοντα ἔτη.
fifty (years of) age (old).

16. Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Βοιώτιος ὢν εὐθὺς μὲν
Proxenus, indeed, the Bœotian, (when) being just indeed
μειράκιον, ἐπεθύμει γενέσθαι
(only a) youth (from his earliest youth) desired to-become
ἀνὴρ ἱκανός πράττειν τὰ μεγάλα· καὶ
(a) man capable to-perform — great-things (undertakings); and
διὰ ταύτην τὴν ἐπιθυμίαν ἔδωκε ἀργύριον
on-account-of this — desire gave money
Γοργίᾳ τῷ Λεοντίνῳ. 17. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
to-Gorgias the Leontinian (for instruction). When indeed
συνεγένετο ἐκείνῳ, νομίσας εἶναι
he-had-been-with him (some time), having-thought (himself) to-be
ἤδη ἱκανὸς καὶ ἄρχειν, καὶ ὢν φίλος τοῖς
now qualified both to-command, and, being (a) friend to-the
πρώτοις μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι
first (chief men, that) he-might not be-inferior (would not be
εὐεργετῶν, ἦλθεν εἰς ταύτας τὰς
outdone) in-conferring-benefits, he-went on these-same —
πράξεις σὺν Κύρῳ·
| doings (he proceeded to take a part in this expedition) with Cyrus;
καὶ ᾤετο κτήσεσθαι ἐκ τούτων μέγα ὄνομα, καὶ
and thought to-acquire from this (a) great name, and

μεγάλην δύναμιν, καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα. **18.** Δ'
great power, and much wealth But

ἐπιθυμῶν τοσούτων σφόδρα, καὶ
(though) desiring these (things) earnestly, he —

αὖ εἶχεν ἔνδηλον, ὅτι
at-the-same-time had (this) (showed) evident (plainly), that he

ἂν θέλοι κτᾶσθαι οὐδὲν
might wish to-acquire nothing (was unwilling to acquire any)

τούτων μετὰ ἀδικίας, ἀλλὰ ᾤετο
of-these (things) by unjust-means, but he-thought (that)

τούτων δεῖν τυγχάνειν σὺν τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ
such-things ought to-be-acquired by — just and honorable

δὲ ἄνευ τούτων μή. **19.** Ἦν
(means), but without these (otherwise) not (at all). He-was

δὲ δυνατὸς ἄρχειν καλῶν μὲν καὶ ἀγαθῶν·
indeed competent to-command orderly — and good (well-

μέντοι οὐχ ἱκανὸς ἐμποιῆσαι
disposed) (men); but not capable to-impress (to inspire)

τοῖς στρατιώταις ἑαυτοῦ οὔτ' αἰδῶ οὔτε
the soldiers of-himself (*neither*) (either) with-respect (*nor*)

φόβον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μᾶλλον ᾐσχύνετο
(or) fear (for him), but he-was (stood) even more in-awe

τοὺς στρατιώτας, ἢ οἱ ἀρχόμενοι
(of) — (his) soldiers than those under (his) command

ἐκεῖνον· καὶ ἦν φανερὸς μᾶλλον φοβούμενος
(did of) him; and he-was evidently more fearing

τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις,
(afraid) | the to-be-hated — (by his) soldiers (of

ἢ οἱ στρατιῶται τὸ ἀπισ-
being disliked by his soldiers) | than the soldiers the to-dis-

τεῖν ἐκείνῳ. **20.** Δὲ
obey him [than his soldiers of being disobedient to him]. And

ᾤετο ἀρκεῖν πρὸς τὸ ἀρχικὸν
he-thought (it) to-be-sufficient (both) for — commanding (to be

καὶ δοκεῖν εἶναι
able to command) and to-seem to-be (to be thought able)

ἐπαινεῖν μὲν τὸν ποιοῦντα καλῶς, δὲ μὴ
to-praise indeed — (him) acting (who did) well, but not
ἐπαινεῖν τὸν ἀδικοῦντα. Τοιγαροῦν
to-praise —(him) acting-improperly (who did wrong). Therefore
μὲν τῶν συνόντων οἱ μὲν καλοί
indeed of — (those) with-him, — (such) indeed (as were) orderly
τε κἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν εὖνοι αὐτῷ, δὲ οἱ
(honorable) and good were (much) attached to-him, but —
ἄδικοι ἐπεβούλευον ὡς ὄντι
(such as were) wicked plotted-against (him) as being (since he
εὐμεταχειρίστῳ. Δὲ ὅτε ἀπέθνησκεν ἦν
was a man) easily-managed. And when he-died he-was
ὡς τριάκοντα ἐτῶν.
about thirty years (old).

21. Δὲ Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ἦν δῆλος μὲν
But Menon the Thessalian was evidently indeed
ἐπιθυμῶν ἰσχυρῶς πλουτεῖν, δὲ ἐπιθυμῶν ἄρχειν
desiring vehemently to-become-rich, and desiring to-command
ὅπως λαμβάνοι πλείω, δὲ ἐπιθυμῶν
so-that he-might-take more (receive greater pay), and desiring
τιμᾶσθαι ἵνα κερδαίνοι πλείω· ἐβούλετο
to-be-honored in-order-that he-might-gain more; he-wished
τε μέγιστα εἶναι φίλος τοῖς δυναμένοις,
— most-of-all to-be (a) friend to-the powerful (those in
ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ
power), in-order-that, acting-unjustly (doing wrong), | he-might not
διδοίη δίκην. 22. Ἐπὶ
give justice [he might not suffer punishment]. | Towards
δὲ τὸ κατεργάζεσθαι ὧν ἐπιθυμοίη,
indeed the to-accomplish of-what he-might-desire (to accomplish
ᾤετο συντομωτάτην ὁδὸν εἶναι τε
what he desired), he-thought the-shortest way to-be not-only
διὰ τοῦ ἐπιορκεῖν, καὶ ψεύδεσθαι
through | the to-perjure [perjury], but-also | to-lie [falsehood]
καὶ ἐξαπατᾶν· δ' ἐνόμιζε τὸ
and | to-deceive [deceit]; while he-considered (regarded) —

ἁπλοῦν καὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς εἶναι τὸ αὐτὸ τῷ
sincerity and — truth to-be the same with — (no better
ἡλιθίῳ. 23. Δὲ μὲν ἦν φανερὸς στέργων
than) folly. And indeed he-was evidently having (had)-affection
οὐδένα, ὅτῳ δὲ φαίνη εἶναι φίλος,
for-no-one, to-whom indeed he-seemed (professed) to-be (a) friend,
τούτῳ ἐγίγνετο ἔνδηλος ἐπιβουλεύων. Καὶ
against-this-one he-was evidently plotting (mischief). And
μὲν κατεγέλα οὐδενὸς πολεμίου, δὲ ἀεὶ διελέγετο
indeed he-derided no enemy, but always conversed
τῶν πάντων συνόντων ὡς κατα-
— with-all (those) | being-about him [his associates] as-if ridi-
γελῶν. 24. Καὶ μὲν τοῖς κτήμασιν τῶν
culing (all of them). And indeed against-the property of —
πολεμίων οὐκ ἐπεβούλευε, γὰρ ᾤετο
(his) enemies he-formed no designs, for he-thought
εἶναι χαλεπὸν λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν
(it) to-be difficult to-take the (property) of — (those)
φυλαττομένων· δὲ μόνος ᾤετο εἰδέναι
guarding (it); | but (he) alone he-thought to-know (it)
ὂν ῥᾷστον λαμβάνειν τὰ ἀφύλακτα.
being easy to-take the unguarded (he looked upon

himself as the only person who knew how very easy it was to invade

25. Καὶ ὅσους
the unguarded property of friends). And as-many-as (those whom)
μὲν αἰσθάνοιτο ἐπιόρκους καὶ
indeed he-might-(should)-perceive (to-be) perjured and
ἀδίκους ἐφοβεῖτο ὡς εὖ ὡπλισμένους,
unjust he-feared as (men) well armed
δὲ τοῖς ὁσίοις καὶ ἀσκοῦσιν
(against him), but the pious and those-practising
ἀλήθειαν ἐπειρᾶτο χρῆσθαι ὡς ἀνάν-
(reverencing) truth he-endeavored to-make-use-of as weak-
δροις. 26. Δὲ ὥσπερ τις ἀγάλλεται ἐπὶ
persons (imbeciles). And as any-one prides-himself in

θεοσεβείᾳ, καὶ ἀληθείᾳ, καὶ δικαιότητι, οὕτω
religion, and truth, and justice, so

Μένων ἠγάλλετο δύνασθαι τῷ ἐξαπατᾶν,
Menon prided-himself to-be-able (in being able) — to-deceive,

τῷ πλάσασθαι ψευδῆ, τῷ διαγελᾶν φίλους·
— to-devise falsehoods, — to-sneer-at friends;

δὲ τὸν μὴ πανοῦργον
and (that) — (he who was) not ready-to-do-anything (the man who

ἀεὶ ἐνόμιζεν εἶναι τῶν ἀπαι-
was guileless (knavish) he always considered to-be of-the un-

δεύτων. Καὶ παρ᾽ οἷς μὲν ἐπεχείρει
taught (uneducated class). And with whom indeed he-endeavored

πρωτεύειν φιλίᾳ, ᾤετο δεῖν
to-have-the-first-place in friendship, he-thought it-to-become-him (was

κτήσασθαι τούτους διαβάλλων τοῦς
necessary) to-gain them (through) plotting-against —

πρώτους. 27. Δὲ τὸ παρέ-
(those who had been) first (in their favor). And | the to-

χεσθαι τοὺς στρατιώτας πειθομένους ἐμηχανᾶτο
keep — (his) soldiers obedient he-effected

ἐκ τοῦ συναδικεῖν αὐτοῖς.
(accomplished this end) | from the to-do-wrong with-them [by per-

Δὲ ἠξίου
sonally participating in their evil deeds]. Also he-claimed (expected)

τιμᾶσθαι καὶ θεραπεύεσθαι, ἐπιδεικνύμενος ὅτι
to-be-honored and courted, (by) showing that

ἂν δύναιτο καὶ ἐθέλοι
he might be-able (had the power) and might-wish (the will)

ἀδικεῖν πλεῖστα. Δὲ κατέλεγεν
to-injure the-most (inflict the greatest injuries). And he-called-it

εὐεργεσίαν ὁπότε τις
(a) favor (act of kindness) (on his part), when any-one

ἀφίστατο αὐτοῦ, ὅτι χρώμενος αὐτῷ
deserted him, that (while) making-use of-him he-did

οὐκ ἀπώλεσεν αὐτόν.
not destroy him.

28. Καὶ μὲν δὴ ἔξεστι περὶ τὰ
And indeed truly, (were) it-allowed (me to speak) respecting the
ἀφανῆ αὐτοῦ ψεύδεσθαι, δὲ
private (affairs) of-him, one-(I)-might-say-what-is-not-true, but
ἃ πάντες ἴσασι ἐστί τάδ'. Ὢν ἔτι
what all know is this. Being (while) yet
ὡραῖος διεπράξατο παρὰ Ἀριστίππῳ μὲν
in-the-prime-of-youth he-obtained from Aristippus —
στρατηγεῖν τῶν ξένων· δὲ
to-command (the command) (of) the foreign-mercenaries; and
ἐγένετο, ὢν ἔτι ὡραῖος, οἰκειό-
he-became (he was), being (while) yet in-the-bloom-of-youth, most-
τατος Ἀριαίῳ, ὄντι βαρβάρῳ, ὅτι
intimate with-Ariæus, he-being (though) (a) barbarian, for he
ἥδετο καλοῖς μειρακίοις· δὲ αὐτὸς εἶχε
(Ariæus) delighted in-beautiful youths; and he-himself had
Θαρύπαν παιδικά, ἀγένειος ὤν
Tharypas (a) favorite, (a) beardless-youth — (having one)
[1] γενειῶντα. 29. Δὲ τῶν συστρατηγῶν ἀποθνησ-
having-a-beard. But — (his) fellow-officers being-put-
κόντων, ὅτι ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ βασιλέα σὺν
to-death, because they-fought against (the) king with
Κύρῳ πεποιηκὼς ταὐτὰ οὐκ ἀπέθανε·
Cyrus, (though) he-having-done the-same was not put-to-death;
δὲ μετὰ τὸν θάνατον τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν
but after the death of-the other generals,
τιμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως, ἀπέθανεν, οὐχ
having-been-punished by (the) king, he-died, not
ὥσπερ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ
like Clearchus, and the other generals, having (who
τὰς κεφαλὰς ἀποτμηθέντες, (ὅσπερ δοκεῖ
had) — (their) heads cut-off (which seems
εἶναι τάχιστος θάνατος,) ἀλλὰ ζῶν
to-be (the) speediest (kind of) death), but living

[1] He, while yet a beardless youth, made a favorite of Tharypas, who had arrived at manhood.

ἐνιαυτόν αἰκισθεὶς ὡς πονηρός, λέγεται
a-year having-been-tortured as (a) malefactor, he-is-said (at

τυχεῖν τῆς τελευτῆς.
length) to (have) met — (his) end.

30. Δὲ Ἀγίας ὁ Ἀρκάς, καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἀχαιὸς,
But Agias the Arcadian and Socrates the Achæan,

καὶ τούτω ἀπεθανέτην. Δὲ οὔτ' οὐδεὶς
— these-two (also) were-put-to-death. But neither did (*no-one*)

κατεγέλα τούτων ὡς κακῶν ἐν πολέμῳ,
(any-one) deride them as cowards in battle,

οὔτ' ἐμέμφετο αὐτοὺς εἰς φιλίαν. Δὲ ἄμφω
or reproach them (in regard) to friendship. — Both

ἦστην ἀμφὶ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα τὰ ἔτη
were about five and thirty — years

ἀπὸ γενεᾶς.
from (their) birth (old).

BOOK III. — CHAPTER I.

Dejection of the Greeks. How Xenophon was led to join in Cyrus' expedition. His dream and reflections. He rouses the captains of the division that Proxenus had commanded, and exhorts them to take measures for their safety. Apollonides deprived of his captaincy. A general meeting of the surviving generals and captains, at which Xenophon persuades them to choose new commanders in the place of those that they had lost. Xenophon is one of those elected.

1. Ὅσα μὲν δὴ, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν, ἐν τῇ
What indeed — the Greeks did in —

ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου μέχρι τῆς
(their) upward-march (expedition) — with Cyrus until the

μάχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐγένετο ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε,
battle, and what happened after Cyrus died,

τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἀπίοντων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει
the Greeks, departing with Tissaphernes, (confiding)

ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς, δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ
in the truce, has-been-shown (related) in the

πρόσθεν λόγῳ. 2. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τε οἱ στρα-
preceding discourse (chapter). After indeed not-only the gen-

τηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν, καὶ οἱ τῶν λοχα-
erals had-been-seized, but-also — (those) of-the cap-

γῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν συνεπόμενοι
tains and of-the soldiers accompanying (them)

ἀπολώλεσαν, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦσαν δὴ ἐν πολλῇ
had-perished, the Greeks were truly in much (great)

ἀπορίᾳ, ἐννοούμενοι μὲν, ὅτι ἦσαν ἐπὶ
perplexity, reflecting indeed that they-were at (not far from)

ταῖς θύραις βασιλέως δὲ κύκλῳ
the gates of (the) king (king's palace), and in (a) circle

αὐτοῖς ἦσαν πάντῃ πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη
(around) them there-were everywhere (on all sides) many — nations

καὶ πόλεις πολέμιαι, δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἔμελλε
and towns hostile (to-them), and no-one hereafter would

παρέξειν ἀγοράν, δὲ ἀπεῖχον τῆς
provide (a) market (for them), and they-were-distant from —

Ἑλλάδος οὐ μεῖον ἢ μύρια στάδια, δ'
Greece not less than ten-thousand stadia, and
ἦν οὐδεὶς ἡγεμὼν τῆς ὁδοῦ, δ'
there-was (they had) no guide (for) the road, and
ἀδιάβατοι ποταμοὶ διεῖργον ἐν
impassable rivers intervened (intercepted them) in (the)
μέσῳ τῆς ὁδοῦ οἴκαδε, δὲ καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι
midst of — (their) road homeward, and also the barbarians
ἀναβάντες σὺν Κύρῳ προὐδεδώκεσαν
having-come-up (who came up) with Cyrus had-deserted
αὐτοὺς, δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν μόνοι, οὐδὲ
them, and they-were-left alone, (*nor-indeed*)
ἔχοντες οὐδένα ἱππέα σύμμαχον·
(and indeed) having no cavalry (as) auxiliary (to
ὥστε ἦν εὔδηλον, ὅτι νικῶντες
support them); so-that it-was very-evident that defeating (if they
ἂν μὲν κατακάνοιεν οὐδένα,
defeated the enemy), they would indeed kill no-one,
δὲ αὐτῶν ἡττηθέντων οὐδεὶς
but they being-defeated (if they were defeated), not-one (of their
ἂν λειφθείη. 3. Ἐννοούμενοι ταῦτα,
number) would be-left (alive). Reflecting on-these
καὶ ἔχοντες ἀθύμως,
(things), and having (themselves) dejectedly [being disheartened],
ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν ἐγεύσαντο σίτου εἰς τὴν
few indeed of-them tasted food — (for) —
ἑσπέραν, δὲ ὀλίγοι ἀνέκαυσαν πῦρ, δὲ
(that) evening, and few kindled (a) fire, and
πολλοὶ οὐκ ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα
many did not go to the (place of) arms (during)
ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, δὲ ἀνεπαύοντο ὅπου ἕκαστος
that — night, but they-lay-down-to-rest where each
ἐτύγχανεν, οὐ δυνάμενοι καθεύδειν ὑπὸ
happened (to be), not being-able to-sleep for (on
λύπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων,
account of) sorrow and (the) longing (for) (their) country, (their)

γονέων, γυναικῶν, παίδων, οὓς ἐνόμιζον
parents, (their) wives, (their) children, whom they-thought
οὔποτ' ὄψεσθαι ἔτι. Οὕτω μὲν δὴ δια-
(expected) never to-see more (again). Thus indeed — dis-
κείμενοι πάντες ἀνεπαύοντο.
posed (in this state of mind), they all went-to-rest.

4. Ἦν δὲ ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ τις Ξενοφῶν
There-was — in the army a-certain Xenophon, (an)
Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς ὢν οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λο-
Athenian, who, being neither (a) general nor (a) cap-
χαγὸς, οὔτε στρατιώτης, συνηκολούθει,
tain nor (a private) soldier, accompanied (the
ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος μετεπέμψατο αὐτὸν
expedition), but Proxenus sent-for him
οἴκοθεν, ὢν ἀρχαῖος ξένος· δὲ ὑπισχνεῖτο
from-home, he-being (an) old guest-friend; and he-promised
αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, ποιήσειν αὐτὸν φίλον Κύρῳ,
him, if he-should-come, to-make him (a) friend to-Cyrus,
ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη νομίζειν κρείττω ἑαυτῷ
whom he said (that) he-considered better to-himself (a greater
τῆς πατρίδος. 5. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
object of regard) (than) — (his) country. — Xenophon
μέντοι ἀναγνοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν, ἀνακοινοῦται
indeed, having-read the letter, consults
Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας.
Socrates the Athenian about the journey (expedition).
Καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑποπτεύσας μὴ οἱ
And — Socrates, having-feared lest — they (might)
ἐπαίτιον τι πρὸς τῆς πόλεως
criminate (him) in-some (manner) with — (his) government
εἴη γενέσθαι φίλον Κύρῳ, ὅτι ὁ Κῦρος ἐδόκει
if-he-were to-become (a) friend to-Cyrus, because — Cyrus seemed
προθύμως συμπολεμῆσαι τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ
zealously to-have-assisted the Lacedæmonians against
τὰς Ἀθήνας, συμβουλεύει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, ἐλθόντα
the Athenians, advised — Xenophon, having-gone

εἰς Δελφοὺς, ἀνακοινῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ
(to go) to Delphos, to-consult the gods about
τῆς πορείας. 6. Δ᾽ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν
the journey (expedition). And — Xenophon having-gone-there
ἐπήρετο τὸν Ἀπόλλω, τίνι θεῶν θύων
inquired-of — Apollo, to-which of (the) gods [sacrificing
καὶ εὐχόμενος
and praying [he should sacrifice and pray], | (that) he
ἂν ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδὸν, ἣν
might go the road [that he might perform the journey] which
ἐπινοεῖ κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα, καὶ πρά-
he-contemplated most-honorably and most-successfully, and, having-
ξας καλῶς σωθείη.
performed (it) successfully, | might-be-saved [might return in safety].
Καὶ ὁ Ἀπόλλων ἀνεῖλεν αὐτῷ θύειν
And — Apollo | unfolded to-him [answered him], to-sacrifice
θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει. 7. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθε
to (the) gods to-whom it-was-proper. When indeed he-had-gone
πάλιν, λέγει τὴν μαντείαν τῷ
back (returned) (to Athens), he-tells (repeated) the oracle to —
Σωκράτει. Δ᾽ ὁ ἀκούσας ᾐτιᾶτο αὐτόν, ὅτι
Socrates. And who, hearing (it), blamed him, that
οὐ πρῶτον ἠρώτα τοῦτο, πότερον εἴη
(because) he-did not first inquire this, whether it-were
λῷον αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ᾽ αὐτὸς κρί-
better for-him to-go or to-remain, but himself, having-
νας εἶναι ἰτέον, ἐπυνθάνετο
decided | (that) it-is to-be-gone [that he would go], he-(only)-inquired
τοῦτ᾽ ὅπως ἂν πορευθείη κάλλιστα. Ἐπεὶ
this, how he might proceed to-the-best-advantage. "Since,
μέντοι, ἔφη, ἤρου οὕτως χρὴ ποιεῖν
however," said-he, "you-have-inquired thus, it-becomes (you) to-do
ταῦτ᾽ ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκελευσε.
(you must do) those (things) as (which) the god (has) directed."
8. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν μὲν δὴ οὕτω, θυσάμενος
— Xenophon indeed — therefore, having-sacrificed (to the gods)

οἷς ὁ θεός ἀνεῖλεν, ἐξέπλει, καὶ καταλαμβάνει
which the god (Apollo) told-him, set-sail, and finds
Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον ἐν Σάρδεσι, ἤδη μέλλοντας
Proxenus and Cyrus in Sardis, being now about
ὁρμᾶν τὴν ὁδὸν ἄνω, καὶ συνεστάθη
starting (just setting out) on-the way (march) up, and was-presented
Κύρῳ. 9. Δὲ τοῦ Προξένου προθυμουμένου, καὶ
to-Cyrus. And — Proxenus being-very-desirous, —
ὁ Κῦρος συμπροὐθυμεῖτο αὐτόν μεῖναι. Δὲ εἶπε
— Cyrus joined-in-the-wish for-him to-remain. And he-said
ὅτι, ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα ἡ στρατεία λήξῃ
that, as-soon as the expedition may-be-(was)-ended, (that)
εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψειν αὐτόν. Δὲ
he-would straightway send him back (home again). It also
ἐλέγετο ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς
was-said (that) the expedition (was intended) to-be against (the)
Πισίδας.
Pisidians.

10. Μὲν δὴ ἐστρατεύετο οὕτως
He indeed then joined-the-expedition, (being) thus
ἐξαπατηθείς οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου (γὰρ οὐ ᾔδει
deceived, not by Proxenus (for he-did not know
τὴν ὁρμὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα, οὐδὲ
(that) the movement (was) against (the) king, nor (any)
ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου)·
other (*no-one*) (one) of-the Greeks except Clearchus);
ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἦλθον εἰς Κιλικίαν, ἐδόκει
when, however, they-had-gone (came) to Cilicia, it-seemed
ἤδη εἶναι σαφὲς πᾶσιν, ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἴη ἐπὶ
now to-be clear to-all that the expedition was against (the)
βασιλέα. Δὲ φοβούμενοι τὴν
king. But fearing (dreading) the (length of the)
ὁδόν, καὶ ὅμως ἄκοντες
road (journey), and likewise unwilling (to proceed farther, yet)
οἱ πολλοὶ δι' αἰσχύνην καὶ
the greater-part (of them), through shame (respect) both (for)

ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνηκολούθησαν·
one-another and (for) Cyrus, accompanied (followed)
καὶ εἷς ὢν Ξενοφῶν ἦν.
him); and one of-whom Xenophon was (among the number).

11. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ἀπορία, ἐλυπεῖτο
But when (all) was perplexity, he-(Xenophon)-was-grieved
μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις, καὶ
(distressed) indeed with the rest (as well as the others), and
οὐκ ἐδύνατο καθεύδειν· δὲ λαχὼν
he-was not able to-sleep; but having-(at length)-got (a)
μικρὸν ὕπνου εἶδεν ὄναρ. Ἔδοξεν
little sleep, | he-saw (a) vision [he had a dream]. It-seemed
αὐτῷ, βροντῆς γενομένης,
to-him, (a) thunder (storm) having-occurred (in the midst of a
σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν εἰς τὴν
thunder storm), (that a) thunderbolt fell on — (his)
πατρῴαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου
father's house, and from this (in consequence) it-was
πᾶσαν λάμπεσθαι. **12.** Δὲ περίφοβος εὐθὺς
all lighted-up. And, frightened, he immediately
ἀνηγέρθη, καὶ τὸ ὄναρ μὲν ἔκρινε
awoke, and the dream indeed he-judged (considered)
πῇ ἀγαθόν, (ὅτι ὢν ἐν πόνοις
somewhat (in some respects) favorable (because being in trouble
καὶ κινδύνοις, ἔδοξε ἰδεῖν μέγα φῶς ἐκ
and danger, he-seemed to-have-seen (a) great light from
Διὸς)· δὲ καὶ πῇ ἐφοβεῖτο (ὅτι
Jupiter); but in-other-respects he-was somewhat alarmed (because
τὸ ὄναρ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι ἀπὸ Διὸς
the dream appeared to-him to-be from Jupiter (who was)
μὲν βασιλέως, δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐδόκει λάμ-
indeed (a) king, and the fire seemed to-
πεσθαι κύκλῳ,) μὴ οὐ δύναιτο ἐξελθεῖν
shine all-around-him), lest he-should not be-able to-depart
ἐκ τῆς χώρας τῆς βασιλέως, ἀλλ'
(escape) from the territory of-the king, but

εἴργοιτο πάντοθεν ὑπό τινων
should-be-hemmed-in on-all-sides by some (inextricable)
ἀπορίων.
difficulties.

13. Ὁποῖόν τι ἐστὶ μέντοι ἰδεῖν
What-kind-of thing it-is (what it betokens), however, to-see
τὸ τοιοῦτον ὄναρ, ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν
— such (a) dream, it-is-allowed to-perceive (we may conjecture)
ἐκ τῶν συμβάντων μετὰ τὸ ὄναρ.
from the (things) occurring (that occured) after the dream.
Γὰρ γίγνεται τάδε. Εὐθὺς ἐπειδὴ
For it-happened thus (this is what happened). Immediately after
ἀνηγέρθη ἔννοια πρῶτον μὲν ἐμπίπτει
he-was-aroused (awoke), (this) thought first indeed presents-
αὐτῷ· τί κατάκειμαι; ἡ νὺξ δὲ
itself to-him: Why do-I-lie-here? the night indeed
προβαίνει· δὲ ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ
is-passing-away; and at-the-same-time with-the (break of) day
εἰκὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἥξειν.
(at daylight) (it is) probable (that) the enemy will-come
Εἰ δὲ γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ
(upon us). If indeed we-shall-fall into (the hands of the)
βασιλεῖ, τί ἐμποδὼν μὴ οὐχὶ ἀποθανεῖν
king, | what prevents lest not to-die (what is there
ὑβριζομένους, ἐπιδόν-
to prevent us from) being-treated-insultingly (ignominiously), after-
τας μὲν πάντα τὰ χαλεπώτατα, δὲ παθόντας
witnessing indeed all the most-grievous-things and suffering
πάντα τὰ δεινότατα; 14. Δ' ὅπως ἀμυνού-
all the most-dreadful-tortures? But how we-shall-
μεθα οὐδεὶς παρασκευάζεται οὐδὲ ἐπιμε-
defend-ourselves no-one provides nor takes-
λεῖται, ἀλλὰ κατακείμεθα ὥσπερ ἐξὸν
care, but we-are-lying (here) as-if it-were-allowed-us
ἄγειν ἡσυχίαν. Οὖν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως
| to act [to enjoy] repose. Moreover, from what city

ἐγώ προσδοκώ τὸν στρατηγὸν πράξειν
do I expect the (a) leader to-do
ταῦτα; δὲ ποίαν ἡλικίαν ἀναμένω
these-things (to defend us)? and what age am-I-waiting-for
ἐλθεῖν ἐμαυτῷ; γὰρ ἔγωγ' οὐκ ἔσομαι ἔτι
to-come to-myself? for I-at-least will not be still
πρεσβύτερος, ἐὰν τήμερον προδῶ ἐμαυτὸν τοῖς
older, if to-day I-give myself up to-the
πολεμίοις. 15. Ἐκ τούτου ἀνίσταται, καὶ πρῶτον
enemy. After this he-arose, and first
συγκαλεῖ τοὺς λοχαγούς Προξένου. Δὲ ἐπεὶ
called-together the captains of-Proxenus. And when
συνῆλθον, ἔλεξεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες λοχαγοί,
they-assembled, he-said: "I, O (men) captains, am
οὔτε δύναμαι καθεύδειν (ὥσπερ οἶμαι οὐδ'
neither able to-sleep (as I-think neither (are)
ὑμεῖς), οὔτε ἔτι κατακεῖσθαι,
you) (not even you can), nor yet to-be-still (lie here any
ὁρῶν ἔν οἵοις ἐσμέν. 16. Γὰρ μὲν
longer), seeing in what (difficulties) we-are. For indeed (it
δῆλον ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ πρότερον ἐξέφηναν
is) plain that the enemy did not first declare
τὸν πόλεμον πρὸς ἡμᾶς πρὶν ἐνόμισαν
the war against us, before (until) they-thought (that)
παρασκευάσασθαι τὰ ἑαυτῶν καλῶς·
they-had-arranged the (things) of-themselves well (their
δ' οὐδεὶς ἡμῶν οὐδὲν ἀντεπιμε-
plans judiciously); but no-one of-us takes (*not*) (any) heed-in-
λεῖται, ὅπως ἀγωνιούμεθα ὡς
return (any thought) how we-may-contend (with them) | as
κάλλιστα. 17. Καὶ εἰ μὲν
most-beautiful [in the best possible manner]. And if indeed
ὑφεσόμεθα, καὶ γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ
we-shall-be-remiss, and shall-get (fall) into (the power of the)
βασιλεῖ, τί οἰόμεθα πείσεσθαι;
king, what may-we (not) expect to-suffer (from a man)?

ὃς ἀποτεμὼν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν χεῖρα
who, cutting-off the head and the hand
ἀδελφοῦ, καὶ τοῦ ὁμομητρίου καὶ ὁμοπατρίου,
of-his-own-brother, both of-the same-mother and of-the-same-father,
καὶ ἤδη τεθνηκότος, ἀνεσταύρωσε·
and (he) already (after he was) dead fixed-them-on-a-stake;
δὲ ἡμᾶς, οἷς μὲν οὐδεὶς πάρεστι
but (as to) us, to-whom indeed (there is) no-one present
κηδεμὼν, δὲ ἐστρατεύσαμεν ἐπ᾽
(as a) protector (supporter), and (who) had-marched against
αὐτὸν, ὡς ποιήσοντες δοῦλον
him, as (if) making (a subject and) slave (of him who)
ἀντὶ βασιλέως, καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες,
before (was a) king, and putting (him) to-death,
εἰ δυναίμεθα, τί οἰόμεθα ἂν παθεῖν;
if we-were-able, what do-we-think (that) we might suffer?

18. Ἆρ᾽ ἂν οὐκ ἔλθοι ἐπὶ πᾶν,
Would (will) he not resort to everything (every expe-
ὡς αἰκισάμενος ἡμᾶς τὰ ἔσχατα
dient) that, having-punished us to-the utmost (of severity),
παράσχοι πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις φόβον ποτε
he-might-inspire all men (with) fear of-ever
τοῦ στρατεῦσαι ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸν; Ἀλλὰ πάντα
[of-the to-have-marched [marching] against him? But everything
ποιητέον ὅπως τοι μὴ γενησόμεθα
is-to-be-done that — we-may not get (come)
ἐπ᾽ ἐκείνῳ. 19. Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν, ἔστε
into his (power). I — moreover, as-long-as
μὲν αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν οὔποτε ἐπαυόμεν
indeed the truce was (in existence), never ceased
μὲν οἰκτείρων ἡμᾶς, δὲ μακαρίζων
— pitying ourselves, but considering-as-happy (regarded with
βασιλέα καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ, διαθεώ-
envy) (the) king and — (those) with him, having-gone-
μενος μὲν ὅσην χώραν αὐτῶν, καὶ οἵαν
through indeed so-great (a) territory of-them, and what

ἔχοιεν
they-might-have (as I contemplated how extensive and valuable a country

ὡς δὲ τὰ ἄφθονα ἐπιτήδεια,
they possessed), as indeed the great-abundance (of) provisions,

ὅσους δὲ θεράποντας, δὲ ὅσα
so-great (a number) indeed (of) servants, and how-great (the

κτήνη, δὲ χρυσὸν, δὲ ἐσθῆτα.
number of) cattle, and (vast quantity of) gold, and raiment.

20. Δὲ αὖ ὁπότε ἐνθυμοίμην τὰ
But on-the-other-hand when I-reflect on-the (condition)

τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὅτι μετείη ἡμῖν μὲν
of-the (our) soldiers, that there-was-a-share to-us indeed

οὐδενὸς πάντων τῶν ἀγαθῶν,
of-nothing (we had no share) of-all — (these) good

εἰ μὴ πριαίμεθα, δ' ἤδειν
(blessings),— unless we-bought (them), and (when) I-knew (that

ὀλίγους ἔχοντας ἔτι οὗτου
only) few (of us) having-had yet (any longer) wherewith (money)

ὠνησόμεθα, δὲ ὅρκους ἤδη κατέ-
we-might-buy (to buy), and (that our) oaths now re-

χοντας ἡμᾶς πορίζεσθαι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
straining (restrained) us to-procure (from procuring)— provisions

ἄλλως πως ἢ ὠνουμένους· οὖν λογιζόμενος
(in) any-other manner than buying; therefore considering

ταῦτ' ἐνίοτε
these (things) (taking all these things into consideration), I sometimes

ἐφοβούμην τὰς σπονδὰς μᾶλλον ἢ νῦν
feared the truce more than (I) now (fear)

τὸν πόλεμον. 21. Ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐκεῖνοι
the war. Since, however, they

ἔλυσαν τὰς σπονδὰς δοκεῖ μοὶ καὶ ἡ
have-broken the truce, it-seems to-me (that) both the

ὕβρις ἐκείνων καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα ὑποψία
insolence of-themselves and — our mistrust

λελῦσθαι. Γὰρ ἐν μέσῳ κεῖται
are-brought-to-an-end. | For in (the) middle [between us] lie

ἤδη ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθὰ,
now those — good-things (the advantages I have mentioned),

ἆθλα, ὁπότεροι ἡμῶν ἂν ὦσιν
(as) prizes (for) whoever of-us may be (shall prove themselves

ἀμείνονες ἄνδρες· δ' οἱ θεοί εἰσιν ἀγωνοθέται,
to be) the-better men; and the gods are judges-of-the-contest,

οἳ, ὡς τὸ εἰκὸς, ἔσονται σὺν ἡμῖν.
who, as (is) — proper (just), will-be with us (on our side).

22. Γὰρ μὲν οὗτοι ἐπιωρκήκασιν
For indeed these (our enemies) have-committed-perjury

αὐτοὺς· δὲ ἡμεῖς ὁρῶντες πολλὰ ἀγαθά,
against-them (the gods); while we, seeing many good

στερρῶς ἀπειχόμεθα αὐτῶν,
(things to tempt us), firmly abstained from-them,

διὰ τοὺς ὅρκους τῶν θεῶν· ὥστε δοκεῖ
on-account-of — (our) oath (to) the gods; so-that it-seems

μοι ἐξεῖναι ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὸν
to-me (that) it-has-been-allowed-us to-go (we may advance) to the

ἀγῶνα σὺν πολὺ μείζονι φρονήματι ἢ τούτοις.
contest with much greater confidence than these

23. Δ' ἔτι ἔχομεν σώματα ἱκανώτερα
(they can feel). And moreover we-have bodies better-able

τούτων φέρειν καὶ ψύχη, καὶ θάλπη, καὶ πόνους·
(than) theirs to-bear — cold, and heat, and toil;

δὲ καὶ ἔχομεν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμείνονας
and also we-have, with (the help of) the gods, better (more

ψυχὰς· δὲ οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ
resolute) minds; and (while) — (these) men (will be found) both

μᾶλλον τρωτοὶ καὶ θνητοὶ ἡμῶν ἢν
more vulnerable and exposed-to-death (mortal) (than) we, if

οἱ θεοί, ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν, διδῶσιν ἡμῖν
the gods, as — before, should-grant us

νίκην. 24. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἄλλοι καὶ ἴσως
victory. But — others (of you) even perhaps

ἐνθυμοῦνται ταῦτα· πρὸς
meditate-on (entertain) these-same (thoughts); for (the sake)

τῶν θεῶν μὴ ἀναμένωμεν ἄλλους
of-the gods, (then), let-us not wait (for) others
ἐλθεῖν ἐφ' ἡμᾶς, παρακαλοῦντας ἐπὶ τὰ
to-come to us exhorting (us) to — (these)
κάλλιστα ἔργα, ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς ἄρξωμεν τοῦ
most-noble deeds, but we will-begin | the
ἐξορμῆσαι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τὴν
to-impel [to excite] even — others to (exert their) —
ἀρετήν. Φάνητε ἄριστοι τῶν
valor. Show-(prove)-yourselves the-best (bravest) of-the
λοχαγῶν, καὶ ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι τῶν στρα-
captains, and more-worthy-to-command (than) the com-
τηγῶν. 25. Δὲ κἀγώ, εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς ἐθέλετε
manders. And I, if indeed you will
ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, βούλομαι
give-the-start to these (things) (if you will direct), am-willing
ἕπεσθαι ὑμῖν· δ' εἰ ὑμεῖς τάττετέ με ἡγεῖσθαι,
to-follow you; but if you appoint me to-lead,
οὐδὲν προφασίζομαι τὴν ἡλικίαν,
I (will) not give-as-an-excuse — (my) age (my youth),
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡγοῦμαι ἀκμάζειν ἐρύκειν τὰ
but even think-myself to-be-(I am)-of-sufficient-age to-ward-off —
κακά ἀπ' ἐμαυτοῦ.
harm from myself."

26. Ταῦτα μὲν ὁ ἔλεξε· δὲ οἱ λοχα-
These (thus) indeed — (Xenophon) spoke; and the cap-
γοὶ, ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, πάντες ἐκέλευον
tains, hearing these (things), all requested (desired)
ἡγεῖσθαι· πλὴν ἦν τις Ἀπολλωνίδης,
(him) to-be-their-leader; except (there-was) a-certain Apollonides,
Βοιωτιάζων τῇ φωνῇ·
resembling-a-Bœotian in — (his) speech (in his manner of speaking);
δ' οὗτος εἶπεν, ὅτι φλυαροίη, ὅστις λέγει
and this (man) said that he-speaks-nonsense who says
ἂν τυχεῖν σωτηρίας ἄλλως πως,
(that) he might (could) obtain safety by-any-other means

ἢ πείσας βασιλέα, εἰ δύνατο·
than having-persuaded (the) king, if he-could, (to grant it);
καὶ ἅμα ἤρχετο λέγειν τὰς ἀπορίας.
and at-the-same-time he-began to-speak (of) (enumerate) the difficulties

27. Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ὑπολαβὼν
Xenophon, however, having-taken-him-up (interrupted him)
μεταξὺ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· Ὦ θαυμασιώ-
in-the-midst (of his speech), spoke thus (said): "O most-remark-
τατε ἄνθρωπε, σὺ δέ γε οὐδὲ ὁρῶν γιγνώσκεις,
able man, you indeed — neither seeing understand,
οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. Μέντοι γε ἦσθα ἐν
nor hearing have-remembered. However at-least you-were in
ταὐτῷ τούτοις ὅτε βασιλεύς,
the-same (place) with-these (here-present) when (the) king,
ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἀπέθανε, μέγα φρονήσας
after Cyrus died, being greatly elevated-in-mind (in high
ἐπὶ τούτῳ, πέμπων ἐκέλευε τὰ
spirits) at (on account of) this, sending he-ordered the (our)
ὅπλα παραδιδόναι. 28. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἡμεῖς οὐ παρα-
arms to-be-delivered-up. But when we not giving-
δόντες, ἀλλ' ἐξοπλισάμενοι, ἐλθόν-
them-up (refusing to surrender), but, being-armed, going-
τες παρεσκηνήσαμεν αὐτῷ, τί οὐκ
(went)-forth (and) encamped-opposite him, what did-he not
ἐποίησε, πέμπων πρέσβεις, καὶ αἰτῶν σπονδὰς,
do, sending ambassadors, and asking (a) truce,
καὶ παρέχων τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἕστε ἔτυχεν
and supplying (us with) (the) provisions, until he-obtained (a)
σπονδῶν; 29. Δ' ἐπεὶ αὖ οἱ στρατηγοὶ
truce? And when, on-the-other-hand, the (our) generals
καὶ λοχαγοὶ, ὥσπερ σὺ δὴ κελεύεις,
and captains, as you indeed (now) advise (us to do),
ἦλθον εἰς λόγους αὐτοῖς ἄνευ ὅπλων,
went to (a) conference with-them without (their) arms,
πιστεύσαντες ταῖς σπονδαῖς, οὐ νῦν ἐκεῖνοι
trusting to-the truce, are not now they

παιόμενοι, κεντούμενοι, ὑβριζόμενοι, οὐδὲ δύνανται
beaten, goaded, insulted, not able,

οἱ τλήμονες ἀποθανεῖν, καὶ οἶμαι
the wretched-men, to-die, and I-think (though I should think)

μάλ' ἐρῶντες τούτου; Πάντα ἃ σὺ εἰδὼς
greatly desiring it? All which (things) you having-known,

φῄς τοὺς μὲν κελεύοντας
(yet) you-say (that) — (those) indeed exhorting (who exhort) (us)

ἀμύνεσθαι φλυαρεῖν, δὲ κελεύεις
to-defend-ourselves talk-foolishly, and do-you-request (advise) (us)

ἰόντας πάλιν πείθειν; 30. Ἐμοὶ δὲ, ὦ ἄνδρες,
going again to-try-persuasion? To-me indeed, O men,

δοκεῖ μήτε προσίεσθαι τοῦτον τὸν
it-seems (that we ought) neither to-admit this —

ἄνθρωπον εἰς ταὐτὸ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς, τε ἀφελο-
man into the-same (place) with-us ourselves, but taking-

μένους τὴν λοχαγίαν, ἀναθέντας σκεύη,
from (him) — (his) captaincy, (and) laying-on baggage

χρῆσθαι ὡς τοιούτῳ. Γὰρ
(on his back), use-him as such (baggage carrier). For

οὗτος καταισχύνει καὶ τὴν πατρίδα, καὶ
this (he) disgraces both — (his own) country and

πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι ὢν Ἕλλην, ἐστι
all — Greece, inasmuch-as, being (a) Greek, he-is

τοιοῦτος.
(of) such (a character)."

31. Ἐντεῦθεν Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος ὑπολαβὼν
Thence Agasias (the) Stymphalian, having-taken-up

εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε οὐδὲν
(the discourse at this point), said: "But to-this-man at-least nothing

παντάπασι προσήκει οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας, οὔτε
at-all belongs either of — Bœotia or

τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ εἶδον τὰ
of — Greece, since I perceived (noticed) (that) — both (his)

ὦτα τετρυπημένον ὥσπερ Λυδόν. Καὶ εἶχεν
ears were-bored as (a) Lydian." | And it-had

οὕτως. Οὖν μὲν ἀπήλασαν τοῦτον.
(itself) so [and it was so]. Therefore indeed they-drove him

32. Δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἰόντες παρὰ τὰς
(away) (expelled him). But the others, going to the

τάξεις ὅπου μὲν εἴη
(different) ranks (divisions of the army), where indeed there-might-be

στρατηγὸς σῶος, παρεκάλουν τὸν στρα-
(a) general saved (surviving), they-called-up the gen-

τηγὸν· δὲ ὁπόθεν οἴχοιτο, τὸν ὑποστρα-
eral; but where he-had-perished (was dead), the lieutenant-

τηγόν· δ' ὅπου αὖ εἴη λοχαγὸς,
general; but where again there-might-be (a) captain (surviving),

τὸν λοχαγόν. 33. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες συνῆλθον
the captain. When indeed all came-together

ἐκαθέζοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν τῶν ὅπλων·
they-seated-themselves in (the place) — in-front of-the arms;

καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ συνελθόντες
and the generals and captains assembling

ἐγένοντο τοὺς ἀμφὶ ἑκατόν. Ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα
were — (in all) about a-hundred. | When indeed this

ἦν, ἦσαν σχεδὸν μέσαι νύκτες.
was [when this occurred], it-was near (about) mid- night.

34. Ἐνταῦθα Ἱερώνυμος Ἠλεῖος, ὢν πρεσβύ-
There Hieronymus (the) Elian, being the-

τατος τῶν λοχαγῶν Προξένου,
oldest of-the captains (that had served under) (of)-Proxenus,

ἤρχετο γέγειν ὧδε. Ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί καὶ
commenced to-speak as-follows: "O (men) generals and

λοχαγοί, ἔδοξε ἡμῖν ὁρῶσι τὰ παρόντα
captains, it-seemed (proper) to-us, seeing the present

καὶ συνελθεῖν αὐτοῖς, καὶ παρα-
(state of our affairs), both to-assemble-together ourselves, and to-call-

καλέσαι ὑμᾶς, ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα
upon you (to join us), in-order-that we-may-determine

εἴ δυναίμεθα τι ἀγαθόν.
if we-can (on)-something good (advantageous to ourselves)

Δ', ἔφη, σύ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, λέξον
But," said-he, "do you, O Xenophon, relate (state to the assembly)

ἅπερ καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς.
what (you have) already (said) to us."

35. Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν λέγει τάδε· Ἀλλὰ
Upon this Xenophon speaks thus (said): "But

δὴ μὲν πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα ταῦτα, ὅτι
— — we all (indeed) know this, that (the)

βασιλεὺς καὶ Τισσαφέρνης συνειλήφασιν ἡμῶν
king and Tissaphernes have-seized (all) of-us

οὓς μὲν ἐδυνήθησαν· δὲ δῆλον ὅτι
whom indeed (as many as) they-could; and (it is) evident that

ἐπιβουλεύουσι τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὡς ἀπολέ-
they-are-plotting against-the rest (of us), that they-may-put-

σωσιν, ἢν δύνωνται. Δὲ γε οἶμαι πάντα
us-to-death, if they-can. But at-least I-think every (thing)

ποιητέα ἡμῖν, ὡς
is-to-be-done (every means should be taken) by-us, (in order) that we-may

μήποτε γενώμεθα ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις,
never get (fall) into (the hands of) the barbarians,

ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκεῖνοι, ἢν δυνώμεθα
but rather (that) they, if we-are-able (to accomplish it),

ἐφ' ἡμῖν. 36. Ἐπίστασθε
[(may fall) into us [may fall into ours]. Know

εὖ τοίνυν, ὅτι ὑμεῖς, ὄντες τοσοῦτοι ὅσοι νῦν
well, then, that you, being so-many as now

συνεληλύθατε, ἔχετε μέγιστον καιρόν.
have-met-together, have the-greatest opportunity (a most im-

Γὰρ πάντες οἱ οὗτοι στρα-
portant responsibility). For all — these sol-

τιῶται βλέπουσι πρὸς ὑμᾶς, κἂν μὲν ὁρῶσιν
diers look to you, and-if indeed they-see

ὑμᾶς ἀθύμους, πάντες ἔσονται κακοὶ· δὲ εἰ τε
you dispirited, all will-be cowards; but if both

ὑμεῖς αὐτοί φανεροὶ παρασκευαζόμενοι ἦτε ἐπὶ
you yourselves appearing well-prepared go against

τοὺς πολεμίους, καὶ παρακαλεῖτε τοὺς ἄλλους
the enemy, and exhort the others
ἴστε εὖ ὅτι ἕψονται ὑμῖν, καὶ
(to be equally prepared), know well that they-will-follow you, and
πειράσονται μιμεῖσθαι. 37. Δὲ τοι ἴσως
will-strive to-imitate (you). And — perhaps
ἐστι καὶ δίκαιον ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι τούτων.
it-is even right (that) we should-differ somewhat from these
Γὰρ ὑμεῖς ἐστέ
(soldiers) (show some superiority). For you are (their)
στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξίαρχοι καὶ
generals, you (are) (their) taxiarchs (colonels) and
λοχαγοί· καὶ ὅτε εἰρήνη ἦν, ὑμεῖς
(their) captains; and when peace was (existed), you
ἐπλεονεκτεῖτε τούτων
had-a-greater-portion (than) these (you enjoyed advantages over them),
καὶ χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς· καὶ νῦν τοίνυν,
both of-riches (in fortune) and honors; and now therefore,
ἐπεὶ ἐστί πόλεμος, δεῖ ὑμᾶς ἀξιοῦν
when there-is war (when war arises), it-is-proper (that) you excel
αὐτοὺς εἶναι ἀμείνους τε τοῦ πλήθους,
these, (that you) be superior not-only to the multitude,
καὶ προβουλεύειν καὶ προπονεῖν τούτων,
but-also to-plan-and-devise and to-labor-and-exert-yourselves for-them,
ἤν που δέῃ. 38. Καὶ
if anywhere it-may-be-needed (if ever it be necessary). And
νῦν μὲν πρῶτον οἶομαι ὑμᾶς ἂν
now indeed in-the first (place) I-think (that) you may (will)
μέγα ὀνῆσαι τὸ στράτευμα, εἰ ἐπιμεληθείητε,
greatly benefit the army, if you-take-care
ὅπως στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀντικατασταθῶσιν
that generals and captains be-chosen
ὡς τάχιστα ἀντὶ τῶν ἀπολωλότων.
as soon-as-possible in-place-of — (those) we-are-deprived-of
Γὰρ ἄνευ ἀρχόντων οὐδὲν οὔτε
(whom we have lost). For without commanders nothing either

καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν ἂν γένοιτο,
honorable or good (advantageous) can happen (be achieved)
ὡς μὲν εἰπεῖν συνελόντι οὐδαμοῦ,
as indeed, to-speak in-comprehensive (language), nowhere (any-
δὲ δὴ ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς
where), but truly in — warlike-affairs (in the field
παντάπασι. Γὰρ μὲν ἡ εὐταξία
of battle) not-at-all (least of all). For indeed — good-order
δοκεῖ σώζειν, δὲ ἡ ἀταξία ἤδη
appears to-preserve (armies), but — want-of-order has already
ἀπολώλεκε πολλοὺς. 39. Δὲ ἐπειδὰν
destroyed (proved fatal to) many. And after
καταστήσησθε τοὺς ἄρχοντας, ὅσους δεῖ,
you-have-appointed the commanders, as-many-as it-is-proper
καὶ ἦν συλλέγητε καὶ παρα-
(as are required), — if (also) you-assembled and encour-
θαῤῥύνητε τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας, οἶμαι ἂν
aged the other soldiers, I-think that
ὑμᾶς ποιῆσαι πάνυ ἐν καιρῷ. 40. Γὰρ
you will-have-acted very-much in season-and-to-the-purpose. For
νῦν μὲν ἴσως καὶ ὑμεῖς αἰσθάνεσθε, ὡς
now indeed likewise even you (too) perceive how
ἀθύμως μὲν ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα, δὲ
dispiritedly indeed they-went to the (place of) arms, and (also how)
ἀθύμως πρὸς τὰς φυλακάς, ὥστε,
dejectedly (they went) on — guard (to their posts), | so-that,
ἐχόντων οὕτω γ',
having (themselves) so at-least [while they are in this state of
οὐκ οἶδα ὅ τι τις ἂν χρήσαιτο
mind], I-do not know for what (service) any-one might use
αὐτοῖς, τι δέοι εἴτε νυκτὸς εἴτε
them, should anything be-required (of them) either by-night or
καὶ ἡμέρας. 41. Δὲ ἦν τις τρέψῃ τὰς
even by-day. But if any-one should-turn the
γνώμας αὐτῶν, ὡς μὴ μόνον
thoughts of-them so that they-may not alone (merely)

ἐννοῶνται, τί πείσονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τί
contemplate what they-will-(are likely to)-suffer, but — what
ποιήσουσι, ἔσονται πολὺ εὐθυμότεροι.
they-will-(may be able to)-do, they-will-be much more-inspirited
42. Γὰρ δὴ ἐπίστασθε, ὅτι ἐστὶν
(eager for action). For certainly you-are-aware that it-is
οὔτε πλῆθος οὔτε ἰσχὺς ἡ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ
neither multitude (numbers) nor strength which in — war
ποιοῦσα νίκας· ἀλλ᾽ ὁπότεροι, σὺν
|are-making victories [produce victories]; but whichever (side), with
τοῖς θεοῖς ἂν ἐῤῥωμενέστεροι ταῖς
the (assistance of the) gods being more-resolute —
ψυχαῖς ἴωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ὡς ἐπὶ
in-mind may-go (advances) against the enemy, (*as*) for
τὸ πολὺ οἱ ἐναντίοι οὐ δέχονται
the most-part (as a rule) the adverse (enemy) | can not receive
τούτους. 43. Δ᾽ ἔγωγε, ὦ
them [cannot sustain their attack]. But I-at-least, O
ἄνδρες, ἐντεθύμημαι, καὶ τοῦτο, ὅτι ὁπόσοι μὲν
men, have-considered also this, that those-who indeed
μαστεύουσι ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου
desire (seek) to-live (preserve their lives)| by all means
ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς οὗτοι μὲν ὡς
[at any rate] in — warlike-affairs (war), these indeed (*as*)
ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἀποθνήσκουσι κακῶς τε καὶ αἰσ-
for the most-part die wretchedly and also dis-
χρῶς δὲ ὁπόσοι μὲν ἐγνώκασι θάνατον
gracefully, but those-who indeed have-known (reflect that) death
εἶναι κοινὸν πᾶσι καὶ ἀναγκαῖον ἀνθρώποις,
to-be (is) common to-all, and inevitable to-men,
ἀγωνίζονται δὲ περὶ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποθνήσκειν,
contend-in-battle — | for the honorably to-die
ὁρῶ τούτους μᾶλλόν πως
[to die honorably], I-perceive these (men) rather somehow
ἀφικνουμένους εἰς τὸ γῆρας, καὶ ἕως ἂν
arriving at — old-age, and, as-long-as they may

ζῶσιν διάγοντας εὐδαιμονέστερον. 44. Καὶ
live, spending (their time) more-happily. And

ἃ καταμαθόντας νῦν δεῖ ἡμᾶς (γὰρ
which (things) having-understood, it now becomes us (since

ἐσμεν ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ) εἶναι τε
we-are in such (a) state) (of uncertainties) (that) we-be not-only

ἀγαθοὺς ἄνδρας αὐτούς καὶ παρακαλεῖν τοὺς
brave men ourselves, but-also exhort the

ἄλλους. Ὁ μὲν εἰπὼν ταῦτ'
others (to be so)." Who indeed saying this (after he had

ἐπαύσατο.
said this) ceased (speaking).

45. Δὲ μετὰ τοῦτον Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Ἀλλὰ
But after this (him) Cheirisophus said: "But

μὲν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, πρόσθεν ἐγίγνωσκον σε
indeed, O Xenophon, before-this (until now) I-knew you

μόνον τοσοῦτον, ὅσον ἤκουον εἶναι Ἀθηναῖον·
only so-much as-that I-heard you-were (an) Athenian;

δὲ νῦν καὶ ἐπαινῶ σε τε ἐφ' οἷς λέγεις καὶ
but now I even praise you both for what you-say and (what)

πράτεις, καὶ ἂν βουλοίμην ὅτι εἶναι πλείστους
you-perform (do), and could wish that there-were many

τοιούτους· γὰρ ἂν εἴη τὸ κοινὸν ἀγαθόν.
such (like you); for it would be — (a) general good.

46. Καὶ νῦν, ἔφη, μὴ μέλλωμεν, ὦ ἄνδρες,
And now," said-he, "let-us not delay, O men

ἀλλ' οἱ δεόμενοι
(fellow-soldiers), but — (those) (of you) wanting (who need)

ἄρχοντες ἀπελθόντες ἤδη αἱρεῖσθε
commanders, having-retired, (proceed at once) now to-choose

καὶ ἑλόμενοι ἥκετε εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ
(them), and, having-elected (them), come to the middle of-the

στρατοπέδου, καὶ ἄγετε τοὺς αἱρεθέντας·
camp, and bring — (those) chosen

ἔπειτα συγκαλοῦμεν ἐκεῖ τοὺς ἄλλους
(with you); afterwards we-will-call-together there the other (the

στρατιώτας. Δ', ἔφη, καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ
rest of the) soldiers. But," said-he, "let also Tolmides, the
κῆρυξ παρέστω ἡμῖν. 47. Καὶ ἅμα εἰπὼν
herald, be-present with-us." And at-the-time he-was-saying
ταῦτ' ἀνέστη, ὡς τὰ δέοντα μὴ
(said) this he-rose-up, that the necessary (measures) might not
μέλλοιτο, ἀλλὰ περαίνοιτο. Ἐκ τούτου
be-delayed, but be-executed (at once). On this
ᾑρέθησαν ἄρχοντες, ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρχου
(thereupon) they-chose (as) commanders, in-place-of — Clearchus,
Τιμασίων Δαρδανεύς, δὲ ἀντὶ Σωκράτους
Timasion, (the) Dardanian; and in-place-of Socrates,
Ξαντικλῆς Ἀχαιός, δὲ ἀντὶ Ἀγίου Κλεάνωρ
Xanticles, (the) Achæan; and in-place-of Agias, Cleanor,
Ὀρχομένιος, δὲ ἀντὶ Μένωνος Φιλήσιος
(the) Orchomenian; and in-place-of Menon, Philesius, (the)
Ἀχαιός, δὲ ἀντὶ Προξένου Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.
Achæan; and in-place-of Proxenus, Xenophon, (the) Athenian.

CHAPTER II.

The new generals hold a council of war. The speeches of Cheirisophus, Cleanor, and Xenophon. The order of march is settled, and the duties of each commander appointed.

1. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ᾑρηντο, τε ἡμέρα
When indeed (the officers) were-chosen, — (the) day (was)
σχεδὸν ὑπέφαινε, καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες ἦκον εἰς τὸ
just dawning, and the commanders had-come to the
μέσον, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς, προφυ-
middle (of the camp), and it-seemed (best) to-them, senti-
λακας καταστήσαντας, συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρα-
nels being-stationed, to-call-together the sol-
τιώτας. Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται
diers. When indeed — the other soldiers
συνῆλθον, Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος μὲν
came-together, Cheirisophus, the Lacedæmonian, —

ἀνέστη πρῶτον, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· 2. Ὦ ἄνδρες
rose-up first, and spoke as-follows: "O men,

στρατιῶται, τὰ παρόντα μὲν χα-
(fellow) soldiers, — (our) present-affairs indeed are-fraught-

λεπὰ, ὁπότε στερόμεθα τοιούτω ἀνδρῶν
with-difficulties, since we-are-deprived of-such (able) men

στρατηγῶν, καὶ λοχαγῶν, καὶ στρα-
(as our) generals, — (our) captains, and sol-

τιωτῶν· δὲ καὶ πρὸς ἔτι οἱ
diers (were); and also of (those) moreover (namely)— (those)

ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον, οἳ ὄντες πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι,
with Ariæus, who, being (were) formerly (our) allies,

προδεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς. 3. Δὲ ὅμως δεῖ τε
have-deserted us. But likewise it-behoves (us) not-only

ἐλθεῖν ἐκ τῶν παρόντων
to-get-out of — (extricate ourselves from these) present

ἀγαθούς ἄνδρας, καὶ μὴ ὑφίεσθαι,
(difficulties) (like) brave men, but-also not to-give-up

ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως, ἢν μὲν δυνώ-
(lose courage), but to-endeavor that, if indeed we-

μεθα, νικῶντες καλῶς, σωζώμεθα· δὲ
can, conquering honorably, we-may-save-(to save)-ourselves; but

εἰ μὴ, ἀλλὰ γε ἀποθνήσκωμεν καλῶς, δὲ
if not, yet at-least let-us-die honorably, and

μηδέποτε γενώμεθα ζῶντες ὑπο-
never | we-being living [while we live] putting-(place)-

χείριοι τοῖς πολεμίοις. Γὰρ οἶομαι
ourselves-in-the-hands-of the enemy. For I-think

ἂν ἡμᾶς παθεῖν τοιαῦτα, οἷα οἱ θεοὶ
in-that-case we would-suffer such-things as may the gods

ποιήσειαν τοὺς ἐχθροὺς. 4. Ἐπὶ
do to— (inflict on) (our) enemies." After

τούτῳ Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος ἀνέστη καὶ
this-one (him) Cleanor, (the) Orchomenian, arose and

ἔλεξεν ὧδε· Ἀλλὰ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὁρᾶτε τὴν
spoke as-follows: "But indeed, O men (soldiers), you-see the

ἐπιορκίαν καὶ ἀσέβειαν βασιλέως, δὲ ὁρᾶτε
perjury and impiety of (the) king, and you-see

τὴν ἀπιστίαν Τισσαφέρνους, ὅστις λέγων
(also) the faithlessness of-Tissaphernes, who, saying (after

ὡς εἴη τε γείτων τῆς Ἑλλάδος, καὶ ἂν
telling us) that he-was both (a) neighbor of-the Greeks, and would

ποιήσαιτο περὶ πλείστου
make-it of much (esteem it the highest privilege)

σῶσαι ἡμᾶς, καὶ αὐτὸς ὀμόσας ἡμῖν ἐπὶ
to-(have)-saved us, and he-himself having-sworn to-us (to)

τούτοις, αὐτὸς δούς δεξιὰς, αὐτός
these (things), he having-given (the) right-hand (pledges), he

ἐξαπατήσας συνέλαβε τοὺς στρατηγούς,
having-deceived (us), took (seized) — (our) generals,

καὶ οὐδὲ ἠδέσθη Δία
and neither has-he-respected Jupiter (the protector of the rights of)

ξένιον, ἀλλὰ, γενόμενος καὶ ὁμοτράπεζος
hospitality, but, having-become also (a) table-companion

Κλεάρχῳ, αὐτοῖς τούτοις ἐξαπατήσας τοὺς
to-Clearchus, by-these very-same (means) having-deceived —

ἄνδρας ἀπολώλεκεν. 5. Ἀριαῖος δὲ,
men (our officers), he-destroyed (them). Ariæus also,

ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠθελομεν καθιστάναι βασιλέα,
whom we wished to-have-constituted (to appoint) king,

καὶ ἐδώκαμεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν πιστὰ μὴ
and (whom) we-gave and (who) received pledges not

προδώσειν ἀλλήλους, καὶ οὗτος οὔτε δεί-
to-betray one-another, (yet) even this-one, (he) neither having-

σας τοὺς θεοὺς οὔτε αἰδεσθείς
feared the gods nor having-respected (the memory of)

τεθνηκότα Κῦρον, τιμώμενος μάλιστα
departed Cyrus, (though) honored in-the-highest-degree

ὑπὸ Κύρου ζῶντος, νῦν ἀποστὰς πρὸς
by Cyrus (while) living, having now gone-over to

τοὺς ἐχθίστους ἐκείνου, πειρᾶται ποιεῖν
the bitterest-enemies of (Cyrus) himself. he-endeavors to-do

κακῶς ἡμᾶς τοὺς φίλους Κύρου. 6. Ἀλλὰ
harm to-us (injure us), the friends of-Cyrus. But

μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτίσαιντο τούτους·
indeed may the gods repay (take vengeance upon) these

δὲ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ὁρῶντας ταῦτα μήποτε
(men); but it-becomes us, seeing these (things), never

ἔτι ἐξαπατηθῆναι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ,
again to-be-deceived by these (men), but,

μαχομένους κράτιστα ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα,
fighting in-the-bravest (manner) that we may be-able,

πάσχειν τοῦτο ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς
to-bear (with patience) that which may seem (proper) to-the

θεοῖς.
gods."

7. Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται, ἐσταλμένος
After this Xenophon stood-up, equipped

ἐπὶ πόλεμον ὡς κάλλιστα ἐδύνατο, νομίζων,
for war as handsomely (as) he-was-able, thinking

εἴτε οἱ θεοὶ διδοῖεν νίκην τὸν κάλλιστον
that-if the gods should-grant victory (that) the most-beautiful

κόσμον πρέπειν τῷ νικᾶν
ornaments (finest equipment) became (was suited) to-the to-conquer

εἴτε δέοι τελευτᾶν,
[victory], (or) that-if it-might-be-so (if it should be his fate) to-die,

ἔχειν ὀρθῶς,
to-have (itself) properly [it would be well] (that he should think)

ἑαυτὸν ἀξιώσαντα τῶν καλλίστων
himself as-having-been-worthy of-the most-beautiful (equipments)

ἐν τούτοις
(for him to adorn himself with his best armor), (and) in these (in

τυγχάνειν τῆς τελευτῆς· δὲ τοῦ λόγου
that dress) to-meet — (his) end; but — (his) speech

ἤρχετο ὧδε· 8. Μὲν τε τὴν ἐπιορκίαν καὶ
he-began thus: "Indeed not-only the perjury, but-also (the)

ἀπιστίαν τῶν βαρβάρων Κλεάνωρ μὲν
perfidy, of-the barbarians Cleanor indeed has (just now)

λέγει, δὲ οἶμαι ὑμεῖς καὶ ἐπίστασθε. Εἰ μὲν
mentioned, and I-think you also are-aware-of-it. If indeed,
οὖν βουλευόμεθα πάλιν ἰέναι διὰ φιλίας αὐτοῖς
therefore, we-think | again to-go through friendship with-them
ἀνάγκη
[of coming again to terms of friendship with them], (it is of) necessity
ἡμᾶς ἔχειν πολλὴν ἀθυμίαν, καὶ
(that) we (must) have much mistrust, having —
ὁρῶντας τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἷα πεπόνθασιν,
seen — (our) generals, what (they) suffered,
οἳ διὰ πίστεως αὐτοῖς ἑαυτοὺς ἐνεχείρι-
who through faith in-them put themselves into-their-
σαν· εἰ μέντοι διανοούμεθα σὺν τοῖς
hands; if, however, we-intend (propose) with — (our)
ὅπλοις τε ἐπιθεῖναι δίκην αὐτοῖς
arms not-only | to-impose justice [to inflict punishment] on-them
ὧν πεποιήκασι, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ἰέναι
(for that) which they-have-done, but (for) the future to-go
διὰ παντὸς πολέμου αὐτοῖς, σὺν
through all (kinds) of-warfare with-them, with (the help of)
τοῖς θεοῖς εἰσὶ πολλαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐπίδες σωτηρίας.
the gods there-are many and fair hopes of-safety."

9. Δὲ αὐτοῦ λέγοντος τοῦτο τις πτάρνυται·
But (as) he (was) saying this some-one sneezes;
δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες πάντες μιᾷ
and the soldiers hearing (it) all with-one
ὁρμῇ προσεκύνησαν τὸν θεόν· καὶ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε·
impulse worshipped the god; and Xenophon said:
Ἐπεὶ ἡμῶν λεγόντων περὶ σωτηρίας,
"(Since) while we were-speaking about safety, (an)
οἰωνὸς τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ Σωτῆρος ἐφάνη, δοκεῖ μοι,
omen of — Jupiter, the Preserver, (has) appeared, it-seems to-me,
ὦ ἄνδρες, εὔξασθαι τῷ τούτῳ θεῷ
O men (soldiers), (that) we-(should)-vow to — that god
θύσειν σωτήρια,
to-sacrifice (the) offerings-of-safety (offer sacrifice for our preservation)

ὅπου πρῶτον ἀφικώμεθα εἰς φιλίαν χώραν,
when first (on the first spot) we-reach in (a) friendly country,

δὲ καὶ συνεπεύξασθαι θύσειν
and also (that) we-(should)-vow-together to-sacrifice (at the same

τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς κατὰ δύναμιν. Καὶ
time) to-the other gods according-to (our) ability. And,"

ἔφη, ὅτῳ ταῦτα δοκεῖ ἀνατεινάτω
he-said, "to-whomsoever this seems (right), (let him) hold-up

τὴν χεῖρα. Καὶ ἅπαντες ἀνέτειναν.
— (his) hand." And all held-up (their hands).

Ἐκ τούτου εὔξαντο καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν. Δὲ
Upon this they-made (their) vows and sang-a-pæan. | And

ἐπεὶ τὰ τῶν θεῶν εἶχεν καλῶς,
when the (things) of-the gods had (themselves) well [and

ἤρχετο
when the ceremonies to the gods were duly performed], he-began

πάλιν ὧδε·
again thus:

10. Ἐτύγχανον λέγων ὅτι εἶεν πολλαὶ καὶ
"I-happened (to be) saying that there-were many and

καλαὶ ἐλπίδες ἡμῖν σωτηρίας. Γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν
fair hopes to-us of-safety. For in-the-first-place, indeed,

ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐμπεδοῦμεν τοὺς ὅρκους τῶν θεῶν,
we have truly observed | the oaths of-the gods

δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι τε
[our oaths made to the gods], but the enemy have not-only

ἐπιωρκήκασι καὶ λελύκασι τὰς σπονδὰς
perjured (themselves), but-also have-broken the truce

καὶ τοὺς ὅρκους. Δ' ἐχόντων
and — (their) oaths. But (things) having (themselves)

οὕτω, εἰκὸς μὲν τοὺς θεούς εἶναι
thus (such being the case), it-is-proper indeed (for) the gods to-be

ἐναντίους τοῖς πολεμίοις, δὲ συμμάχους
against — (our) enemies and auxiliaries (allies)

ἡμῖν, οἵπερ εἰσὶ ἱκανοί, ὅταν βούλωνται καὶ
to-us, (the gods) who are competent, when they-will, both

ταχὺ ποιεῖν τοὺς μεγάλους μικροὺς, καὶ
speedily to-make the great (mighty) little (weak), and
εὐπετῶς σῴζειν τοὺς μικρούς, κἂν ὦσι
easily to-save the little (weak), although they-may-be
ἐν δεινοῖς. 11. Δὲ ἔπειτα (γὰρ
in danger. But (next) after (this) (in the next place) (for
ἀναμνήσω ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς κινδύνους τῶν
I-shall-remind you even (of) the dangers of—
ἡμετέρων τῶν προγόνων, ἵνα εἰδῆτε
our — ancestors, in-order-that you-may-perceive (feel
ὡς τε προσήκει ὑμῖν εἶναι ἀγαθοῖς, τε
conscious) that — it-becomes you to-be brave, and-that
σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς οἱ ἀγαθοί σώζονται
(how), with (the help of) the gods, the brave are-saved
καὶ ἐκ πάνυ δεινῶν·) γὰρ μὲν Περσῶν
even from the-greatest dangers); for indeed (when) (the) Persians
καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐλθόντων παμπλη-
and — (those) with them coming (came) with (a) nu-
θεῖ στόλῳ, ὡς τὰς Ἀθήνας ἀφανιούντων
merous host, as making — Athens disappearing
αὖθις, Ἀθηναῖοι
again (to sweep Athens from the face of the earth), (the) Athenians
τολμήσαντες ὑποστῆναι αὐτοῖς ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς.
daring to-withstand them defeated them.
12. Καὶ εὐξάμενοι τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὁπόσους τῶν
And having-vowed to Diana (that) as-many of-the
πολεμίων ἂν κατακάνοιεν τοσαύτους χιμαίρας
enemy as they might kill, so-many she-goats
καταθύσειν τῇ θεῷ, ἐπεὶ εἶχον οὐχ
they-would-sacrifice to-the goddess, (but) when they-had not (a)
ἱκανὰς εὑρεῖν, ἔδοξεν
sufficient-number to-find [not being able to find enough], it-seemed
αὐτοῖς θύειν πεντακοσίας κατ᾽
(good) to-them (they resolved) to-sacrifice five-hundred every
ἐνιαυτὸν, καὶ ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἀποθύ-
year, and — even now (to this day) they-(still

ουσιν. 13. Ἔπειτα ὅτε Ξέρξης
continue to)-sacrifice (them). Again when Xerxes

ὕστερον, ἀγείρας τὴν ἀναρίθμητον στρατιάν,
after-this, having-collected — (that) innumerable army,

ἦλθεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ τότε οἱ
came down-upon Greece (a second time), — then also—

ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι ἐνίκων τοὺς προγόνους τούτων,
our ancestors defeated the ancestors of-these

καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.
(barbarians), both by land and by sea. (The)

Τεκμήρια μὲν ὧν ἔστι τὰ τρόπαια ὁρᾶν,
proofs moreover of-which (deeds) are the trophies | to-see

δὲ μέγιστον μαρτύριον ἡ ἐλευθερία
[to be seen], but the-greatest witness (proof) (is) the liberty

τῶν πόλεων, ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε·
of-the states in which you were-born and bred;

γὰρ προσκυνεῖτε οὐδένα ἄνθρωπον δεσπότην,
for you-worship no man (as) master,

ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεούς. Τοιούτων προγόνων μὲν
but the gods (alone). Of-such ancestors indeed

ἐστε. 14. Μὲν δὴ γε οὐκ ἐρῶ τοῦτο,
are-you (descended). I indeed certainly — will not say this,

ὡς ὑμεῖς καταισχύνετε αὐτούς· ἀλλ᾽ οὔπω
that you disgrace them; but (for it is) not-yet

πολλαὶ ἡμέραι, ἀφ᾽ οὗ ἀντιτα-
many days | from which [since], having-been-drawn-up-

ξάμενοι τούτοις τοῖς ἐκγόνοις ἐκείνων,
in-order-of-battle-against these — descendants of-those

ἐνικᾶτε αὐτῶν πολλαπλα-
(barbarians), you-conquered (a force) of-them many-times-more-nu-

σίους ὑμῶν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς.
merous (than) yourselves, with (the assistance of) the gods.

15. Καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ ἦτε ἀγαθοὶ ἄνδρες
And then — truly you-were brave men | (contending)

περὶ τῆς βασιλείας Κύρου·
about the kingdom of-Cyrus [contending to raise Cyrus to the

δὲ νῦν, ὁπότε ὁ ἀγὼν ἐστι περὶ τῆς
throne]; but now, when the contest is about (for) —
ὑμετέρας σωτηρίας, δήπου προσήκει ὑμᾶς πολὺ,
your-own safety, it certainly becomes you much
καὶ εἶναι ἀμείνονας καὶ προθυμο-
both to-be (you must be) more (brave) and reso-
τέρους. 16. Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ νῦν πρέπει
lute. But certainly it — now becomes (you)
εἶναι θαῤῥαλεωτέρους πρὸς
to-be more-confident (you must feel greater confidence) against
τοὺς πολεμίους. Γὰρ μὲν τότε ὄντες ἄπειροι
the enemy. For indeed then being inexperienced
αὐτῶν, τε ὁρῶντες
of them (when you had made no trial of them), and seeing (saw)
τὸ ἄμετρον πλῆθος, ὅμως ἐτολμήσατε
the immense multitude (before you), yet you-dared,
σὺν τῷ φρονήματι πατρίῳ ἰέναι εἰς αὐτούς·
with the spirit of-your-fathers, to-go against them;
δὲ νῦν, ὁπότε καὶ ἤδη ἔχετε πεῖραν
but now, when you even already have (learned from) experience
αὐτῶν, ὅτι θέλουσι καὶ ὄντες πολλαπλάσιοι
of-them that they-wish, even (though) being many-times
μὴ δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς,
(your number), not to-receive you (shrink from receiving your
τί ἔτι προσήκει ὑμῖν
attack), how then does-it-become you (what reason, then, have you)
φοβεῖσθαι τούτους; 17. Μηδὲ μέντοι δόξητε
to-fear them? | Nor indeed think
ἔχειν τοῦτο μεῖον, εἰ οἱ
to-have this less (do not consider it any disadvantage), if the
Κυρεῖοι. πρόσθεν ταττόμενοι σὺν ἡμῖν,
soldiers-of-Cyrus, formerly drawn-up with us, (have)
νῦν ἀφεστήκασι. Γὰρ ἔτι οὗτοι εἰσι
now deserted (us). For also these (men) are (far)
κακίονες τῶν ἡττημένων ὑφ'
more-cowardly (than) — (those) (who were) defeated by

ἡμῶν. Γοῦν ἔφευγον πρὸς ἐκείνους καταλι-
us. For-indeed they-fled to them, desert-

πόντες ἡμᾶς. Δὲ πολὺ κρεῖττον ὁρᾶν τοὺς
ing us. And (it is) much better to-see —

θέλοντας ἄρχειν φυγῆς ταττομένους σὺν
(those) wishing to-commence flight arranged with

τοῖς πολεμίοις, ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ τάξει. 18. Δὲ
the enemy than in — our ranks. But

εἴ τις ὑμῶν ἀθυμεῖ, ὅτι μὲν εἰσὶν οὐκ ἱππεῖς
if any-one of-you is-disheartened, that indeed there-are no horsemen

ἡμῖν, δὲ πολλοὶ πάρεισι
to-us [because we have no cavalry], | but (that) many are-present

τοῖς πολεμίοις, ἐνθυμήθητε
to-the enemy [and the enemy have a great number], consider

ὅτι οἱ μύριοι ἱππεῖς εἰσὶν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύ-
that — ten-thousand horsemen are nothing else than ten-

ριοι ἄνθρωποι· γὰρ μὲν οὐδεὶς πώποτε
thousand men; for indeed no-one ever

ἀπέθανεν ἐν μάχῃ οὔτε δηχθεὶς οὔτε
died in battle (*neither*) (either) bitten — (or)

λακτισθεὶς ὑπὸ ἵππου, δὲ οἱ ἄνδρες
kicked (trampled on) by (a) horse, but the men

εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὅ τι ἂν γίγνηται ἐν
are (those) who do whatever may happen (is done) in

ταῖς μάχαις. 19. Οὐκοῦν ἡμεῖς ἐσμεν ἐπὶ πολὺ
— battles. Therefore we are on (a) much

ασφαλεστέρου ὀχήματος γε τῶν ἱππέων· γὰρ μὲν
safer support (than) at-least the cavalry; for indeed

οἱ κρέμανται ἐφ' ἵππων, φοβούμενοι οὐχ ἡμᾶς
— (they) hang on (their) horses, fearing not us

μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ καταπεσεῖν·
alone, but also | the to-have-fallen (afraid of falling off);

δ' ἡμεῖς βεβηκότες ἐπὶ γῆς
| but we, having-gone on (the) ground [but we, standing on the

παίσομεν μὲν πολὺ ἰσχυρότερον ἤν τις
ground], shall-strike indeed much more-vigorously if any-one

προσίῃ, δὲ πολὺ μᾶλλον τευξό-
approach (attack us), and much more (surely) shall-we-
μεθα. ὅτου βουλώμεθα. Δὲ ἑνὶ
attain-the-aim (hit the mark) which we-may-wish. But in-one (thing)
μόνῳ οἱ ἱππεῖς προέχουσιν ἡμᾶς· φεύγειν ἐστιν
alone the cavalry have-the-advantage-of us: to-flee is
ἀσφαλέστερον αὐτοῖς ἢ ἡμῖν. 20. Εἰ δὲ δὴ
safer for-them than for-us. If indeed truly
θαῤῥεῖτε μὲν τὰς μάχας, δὲ ἄχθεσθε
you-have-confidence-and-courage — for — battle, but are-troubled
τοῦτο, ὅτι Τισσαφέρνης οὐκέτι
at-this, (with the thought) that Tissaphernes will no-longer
ἡγήσεται ὑμῖν, οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς παρέξει
guide you, nor will (the) king provide (you a)
ἀγοράν, σκέψασθε πότερον κρεῖττον ἔχειν
market, consider whether (it is) better to-have
Τισσαφέρνην ἡγεμόνα, ὅς ἐστι φανερός
Tissaphernes (as) guide, who is evidently
ἐπιβουλεύων ἡμῖν, ἢ ἄνδρας οὓς ἡμεῖς λαβόν-
plotting-against us, or (the) men whom we, having-seized-
τες ἂν κελεύωμεν ἡγεῖσθαι, οἳ εἴσονται
upon, may order (compel) to-guide (us), who will-know
ὅτι, ἢν ἁμαρτάνωσι περὶ ἡμᾶς, ἁμαρτάνουσι
that, if they-do-wrong with-respect-to us, they-do-wrong
περὶ τὰς ψυχὰς καὶ σώματα ἑαυτῶν.
(sacrifice) with-respect-to the lives and bodies of-themselves.
21. Δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πότερον κρεῖττον
But (as to) — provisions, whether (it is) better (for us)
ὠνεῖσθαι ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, ἧς οὗτοι παρεῖχον,
to-purchase from the market, which these (they) provide,
μικρὰ μέτρα πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου, μηδὲ ἔτι
small measures-of-food for-much money, neither yet
ἔχοντας τοῦτο, ἢ, ἤνπερ
(no longer indeed) having this (the money), or, if
κρατῶμεν, λαμβάνειν αὐτοὺς, χρωμένους
we-are-victorious, to-take them (ourselves), using

ὁπόσῳ μέτρῳ ἕκαστος ἂν βούληται.
such measure (as) each might wish (may choose).

22. Εἰ δὲ μὲν γιγνώσκετε ταῦτα
If, however, indeed you-think these (this present state of

ὅτι κρείττονα, δὲ νομίζετε τοὺς
things) that (will be) better, — (do you) imagine the

ποταμοὺς εἶναι ἄπορον, καὶ ἡγεῖσθε
rivers to-be impassable, and think (yourselves) to-be

μεγάλως ἐξαπατηθῆναι διαβάντες, σκέψασθε
greatly misled (in) crossing (them), reflect

εἰ ἄρα οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ πεποιήκασι
whether the barbarians have (not) even done (a)

μωρότατον. Γὰρ μὲν πάντες οἱ
most-foolish (thing) (in this respect). For indeed all the

ποταμοί, εἰ καὶ ὧσι ἄποροι πρόσω
rivers, if even (though) they-may-be impassable at-a-distance-from

τῶν πηγῶν, προϊοῦσι πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς γίγνονται
— (their) sources, going to the sources they-become

διαβατοὶ, οὐδὲ βρέχοντες τὸ γόνυ. 23. Εἰ δὲ μήθ'
passable, not-even wetting the knee. If indeed neither

οἱ ποταμοὶ διοίσουσι, τε μεδεὶς ἡγεμὼν
the rivers should-differ (will let us pass), and no guide

φανεῖται ἡμῖν, οὐδ' ὡς ἀθυμητέον
appear to-(conduct)-us, nor thus is-there-to-be-discouragement

ἡμῖν γε. Γὰρ ἐπιστάμεθα
to-us at-least (we still need not be in despair). For we-know

Μυσοὺς, οὓς ἂν οὐκ φαίημεν εἶναι
(that the) Mysians, whom we should not say to-be (were)

βελτίους ἡμῶν, οἳ βασιλέως ἄκοντος,
braver (than) ourselves, who, (the) king (being) unwilling

οἰκοῦσι πολλάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας
(against the king's will), inhabit many — both rich

καὶ μεγάλας πόλεις ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ βασιλέως·
and large cities in the country of (the) king;

ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ Πισίδας ὡσαύτως·
we-know also (that the) Pisidians (have acted) in-like-manner;

δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ εἴδομεν Λυκάονας, ὅτι
and also we-have ourselves seen (the) Lycaonians, that,
καταλαβόντες τὰ ἐρυμνὰ ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις καρ-
seizing the fortified-places in the plains, they-en-
πούνται τὴν χώραν τούτου. 24. Καὶ
joy-the-produce (of) the land of-this (king). And
δ' ἔγωγε ἂν ἔφην ἡμᾶς
indeed I-at-least would have-said (should advise) (that) we
χρῆναι μήπω εἶναι φανεροὺς ὡρμημένους οἴκαδε,
ought not-yet to-be appearing (as) having-started for-home,
ἀλλὰ κατασκευάζεσθαι ὡς
but to-be-getting-ourselves-ready (making arrangements) as (if)
οἰκήσοντας που αὐτοῦ.
about-taking-up-our-abode (to settle) somewhere here (in this terri-
Γὰρ οἶδα ὅτι καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν
tory). For I-know (am sure) that even (the) king indeed
ἂν δοίη πολλοὺς ἡγεμόνας Μυσοῖς, δ'
would give many guides to (the) Mysians, and
ἂν πολλοὺς ὁμήρους τοῦ ἐκπέμψειν
would (give) many hostages (to them), | of-the to-send-away
ἀδόλως καὶ γ' ἂν
[to send them out of the country] without-treachery, and also would
ὁδοποιήσειε αὐτοῖς, καὶ εἰ βούλοιντο ἀπιέναι σὺν
make-roads for-them, even if they-wished to-depart with
τεθρίπποις. Καὶ οἶδ' ὅτι γ' ἂν ἐποίει
four-horse-chariots. And I-know that he also would do
ταῦτα τρισάσμενος ἡμῖν, εἰ ἑώρα ἡμᾶς
these (things) most-willingly for-us, if he-saw us
παρασκευαζομένους μένειν. 25. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ
making-preparations to-remain. But (not so), for
δέδοικα, μὴ, ἂν ἅπαξ μάθωμεν ζῆν ἀργοὶ,
I-fear, lest we may once have-learned to-live idle,
καὶ βιοτεύειν ἐν ἀφθόνοις, καὶ
and to-pass-our-lives in plenty (revel in abundance), and
ὁμιλεῖν καλαῖς καὶ μεγάλαις γυναιξὶ
to-associate with (the) handsome and large (stately) women

καὶ παρθένοις Μήδων δὲ καὶ
and maidens (wives and daughters) of (the) Medes, and also
Περσῶν, μὴ, ὥσπερ οἱ λωτοφάγοι,
of (the) Persians, (that) lest, like the lotus-eaters,
ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς ὁδοῦ οἴκαδε. 26. Δοκεῖ
we-might-(should)-forget the road homewards. It-seems
οὖν μοι εἶναι εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον πρῶτον
therefore to-me to-be proper (reasonable) and just first
πειρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ
to-make-an-attempt to-return to — Greece and
πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους, καὶ ἐπιδεῖξαι τοῖς
to the members-of-our-families, and to-show the
Ἕλλησιν, ὅτι πένονται ἑκόντες,
Greeks that they-are-poor (endure poverty) voluntarily,
ἐξὸν αὐτοῖς ὁρᾶν τοὺς νῦν οἴκοι
when-it-is-allowed them to-see — (those) now at-home
πολιτεύοντας ἐκεῖ σκληρῶς
living there with-difficulty (without means of subsistence),
κομισαμένους ἐνθάδε πλουσίους. Ἀλλὰ,
(but) having-come hither (made) rich. But (why
γὰρ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐστί δῆλον ὅτι, πάντα
need I say more), for, O men, it-is evident that all
ταῦτα τἀγαθὰ τῶν κρατούντων.
these good (advantages belong to) the conquerors.
27. Δὴ δεῖ λέγειν ταῦτο, πῶς ἂν
It certainly is-proper to-mention this (also), how we may
πορευοίμεθά τε ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ εἰ
proceed not-only as safely-as-possible, but-also, if
δέοι μάχεσθαι, ὡς μαχοίμεθα κράτιστα.
it-be-necessary to-fight, that we-may-fight (to the) best-advantage.
Πρῶτον μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι
First indeed, therefore," said-he, " it-seems to-me (that we ought)
κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἁμάξας, ἃς ἔχομεν, ἵνα τὰ
to-burn the carriages which we-have, in-order-that the
ζεύγη ἡμῶν μὴ στρατηγῇ,
cattle of-us may not be-the-leader-of-the-army [in order that our

ἀλλὰ
baggage may not influence the movements of our army], but (that)
πορευώμεθα ὅπῃ ἂν συμφέρῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ·
we-may-march withersoever it may be-convenient for-the army;
ἔπειτα καὶ συγκατακαῦσαι τὰς σκηνάς.
— then to-burn the tents with (them).
Γὰρ αὖται αὖ μὲν παρέχουσιν ὄχλον ἄγειν,
For these (tents) again — give (are) trouble to-carry,
δὲ συνωφελοῦσι οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι
|and contribute nothing — (either) to the to-fight
οὔτ' εἰς τὸ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτή-
[and are of no use in battle] | or to the to-have — pro-
δεια. 28. Ἔτι δὲ καὶ ἀπαλλά-
visions [or in procuring provisions]. Moreover — also let-us-get-
ζωμεν τὰ περιττὰ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν,
rid-of the superfluous (things) of — (our) other articles-of-baggage,
πλὴν ὅσα ἔχομεν ἕνεκεν πολέμου,
except (reserving only) what we-have (need) for-the-purpose of-war,
ἢ σίτου ἢ ποτῶν, ἵνα ὡς πλεῖστοι ἡμῶν
or for-food, or for-drink, in-order-that as many-as-possible of-us
ὦσιν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις δὲ ὡς ἐλάχιστα σκευο-
may-be under — arms and as few-as-possible may-(be obliged
φορῶσι. Γὰρ μὲν ἐπίστασθε ὅτι πάντα
to)-carry-baggage. For indeed you-know that all (things)
κρατουμένων ἀλλότρια· δὲ ἦν
of (the) conquered (become the) property-of-others; and if
κρατῶμεν δεῖ νομίζειν καὶ
we-conquer it-becomes (you) to-think (we may consider) (that) even
τοὺς πολεμίους ἡμετέρους σκευοφόρους.
the enemy (are to be) our baggage-carriers.
29. Λοιπόν μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ νομίζω
(It now only) remains for-me to-mention what I even consider (it)
εἶναι μέγιστον. Γὰρ ὁρᾶτε καὶ τοὺς
to-be (of the) greatest (importance). For you-see — the
πολεμίους, ὅτι οὐ ἐτόλμησαν πρόσθεν
enemy, that they-did not dare first

ἐξενεγκεῖν πόλεμον πρὸς ἡμᾶς, πρὶν συνέ-
to-bring war against us before (until) they-had-

λαβον τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἡμῶν, νομίζοντες
seized the generals of-us, thinking (that) we

μὲν ὄντων τῶν ἀρχόντων, καὶ
indeed (*being*) (having) (as long as we had) — commanders, and

ἡμῶν πειθομένων ἡμᾶς εἶναι
we (were) (being)-obedient (to them, that) we were

ἱκανοὺς περιγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ·
competent (strong enough) to-conquer (them) in— battle;

δὲ λαβόντες τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς
but taking — (our) commanders, they-thought (that) we

ἂν ἀπολέσθαι ἀναρχίᾳ καὶ ἀταξίᾳ. 30. Οὖν
would perish by-anarchy and disorder. Therefore

δεῖ μὲν τοὺς ἄρχοντας τοὺς νῦν
it-is-proper — (that) the commanders — (our) present (commanders)

γενέσθαι πολὺ ἐπιμελεστέρους τῶν
be much more-vigilant (than) — (those)

πρόσθεν, δὲ τοὺς ἀρχομένους πολὺ
before, and (that) the commanded (should be) much

μᾶλλον εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πειθομένους τοῖς
more orderly and obedient to-the

ἄρχουσι νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν. 31. Δὲ ἢν τις ἀπει-
commanders now than formerly. And if any-one might-be-

θῇ, ἢν ψηφίσησθε τὸν ὑμῶν
(is)-disobedient, if you-decree (that) — (he) (whoever) of-you

ἀεὶ ἐντυγχάνοντα
at-any-time meeting (chances to meet him), (that one is to assist)

σὺν τῷ ἄρχοντι κολάζειν, οὕτως οἱ
(with) the commander to-punish (him), thus (in this way) the

πολέμιοι ἔσονται πλεῖστον ἐψευσμένοι·
enemy will-be very-much deceived (in what they ex-

γὰρ τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὄψονται μυρίους
pected); for in-that — day they-will-see ten-thousand

Κλεάρχους ἀνθ' ἑνὸς, τοὺς ἐπιτρέψοντας
Clearchuses instead-of one, — (who) will-permit

οὐδενὶ εἶναι κακῷ. 32. Ἀλλὰ
no-one to-be bad (disobedient or cowardly). But

γὰρ καὶ ἤδη ὥρα περαίνειν·
(enough), for (it is) even now time to-finish (conclude my speech);

γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι ἴσως αὐτίκα παρέσονται.
for the enemy will perhaps immediately be-present

Ὅτῳ οὖν δοκεῖ ταῦτα
(upon us). To-whom, therefore, it-may-seem | (that) these (things)

ἔχειν καλῶς
hold (themselves) well [that these suggestions are reasonable],

ἐπικυρωσάτω ὡς τάχιστα, ἵνα περαί-
let-him-approve (them) as quickly-as-possible, in-order-that they-

νηται ἔργῳ. Δὲ εἰ τι
may-be-accomplished in-fact (carried into execution). But if anything

ἄλλο βέλτιον ἢ ταύτῃ,
else (any other course) (is) better than this, let-him, (though)

καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης τολμάτω
even — (a) private (soldier), be-bold (enough) (have the cour-

διδάσκειν· γὰρ πάντες δεόμεθα
age) to-instruct (to inform) (us); for we all seek

κοινῆς σωτηρίας.
(a) common safety."

33. Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' εἰ
After this Cheirisophus said: "But if

μὲν δεῖ τινος ἄλλου πρὸς τούτοις,
indeed it-is-needed of-anything else for these (if there is

οἷς Ξενοφῶν λέγει,
need of any other things besides these), which Xenophon mentions, it-

καὶ αὐτίκα ἐξέσται ποιεῖν·
will even speedily be-allowed-us to-do (we can do (it) later on);

δὲ ἃ νῦν εἴρηκε, δοκεῖ μοι
but what he-has now said (suggested), it-seems to-me (that we

ψηφίσασθαι ὡς τάχιστα εἶναι ἄριστον·
ought) to-vote as quickly-as-possible to-be the-best

καὶ ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα
(course we can adopt); and to-whom it-seems these (this seems

ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. Ἅπαντες
proper) let-him-hold-up — (his) hand." (And they) all
ἀνέτειναν. 34. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν πάλιν
held-up (their hands). But Xenophon again
ἀναστὰς εἶπε· Ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀκούσατε
rising said: "O men, hear (me concerning that)
ὧν δοκεῖ μοι προσδεῖν. Δῆλον
which seems to-me to-be-necessary-(to do)-in-addition. (It is) plain
ὅτι δεῖ ἡμᾶς πορεύεσθαι
that it-is-best (for all concerned) (that) we march-to
ὅπου ἔξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· δὲ
(some place) where we-shall-have — (may get) provisions; and
ἀκούω εἶναι καλὰς κώμας, οὐ
I-hear (that) there-are (some) beautiful villages (being) not
πλεῖον εἴκοσι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας. 35. Ἂν
more (than) twenty stadia distant. I should
οὐκ οὖν θαυμάζοιμι, εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι, ὥσπερ οἱ
not therefore wonder if the enemy, like —
δειλοὶ κύνες, μὲν τε διώκουσι τοὺς
cowardly dogs, indeed (that) not-only follow (run after) —
παριόντας καὶ δάκνουσιν, ἢν δύνωνται,
(those) passing-by, but-also bite (them), if they-can,
δὲ φεύγουσι τοὺς διώκοντας, καὶ
but flee-from — (those) following (pursuing them), and
εἰ αὐτοὶ ἐπακολουθοῖεν
I say (I should not be surprised) if they follow
ἡμῖν ἀπιοῦσιν. 36. Ἴσως οὖν
us departing (when we begin to march). Perhaps, therefore,
ἀσφαλέστερον ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι ποιησαμέ-
(it will be) safer for-us to-march having-
νους πλαίσιον τῶν ὅπλων, ἵνα
formed (a hollow) square of-the heavy-armed-men, in-order-that
τὰ σκευοφόρα καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὄχλος εἴη ἐν
the baggage and the many camp-followers may-be in
ἀσφαλεστέρῳ. Εἰ νῦν οὖν
the-greater-security (in a safer position) (within it). If now, therefore,

ἀποδειχθείη, τίνα χρὴ ἡγεῖσθαι
it-should-be-designated (settled) whom it-becomes (who is) to-lead
τοῦ πλαισίου, καὶ κοσμεῖν τὰ πρόσθεν,
the square, and to-regulate (arrange) the front,
καὶ τίνας εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἑκατέρων πλευρῶν,
and who (are) to-be on — each flank,
δὲ τίνας ὀπισθοφυλακεῖν, ἂν οὐ
and who are-to-take-charge-of-the-rear, (so that) it may not
δέοι, ἡμᾶς βουλεύεσθαι ὁπότε
be-necessary (that) we discuss (these things) when
οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλθοιεν, ἀλλὰ ἂν εὐθὺς
the enemy may-come (approach), but we may immediately
χρώμεθα τοῖς τεταγμένοις.
make-use-of the (things) arranged (act at once in accordance
with arrangements made). **37.** Εἰ οὖν μὲν τις ἄλλος
If therefore indeed any-one else
ὁρᾷ βέλτιον, ἐχέτω ἄλλως.
sees (anything) better, | let-it-have-itself otherwise [let it be arranged
otherwise]. Δὲ εἰ μή, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγείσθω,
But if not, let Cheirisophus — lead,
ἐπειδὴ καὶ ἐστι Λακεδαιμόνιος· δὲ δύο
since — he-is (also) (a) Lacedæmonian; but let two
στρατηγὼ τῶν πρεσβυτάτων ἐπιμελείσθων
generals of-the oldest (generals) take-charge
ἑκατερῶν τῶν πλευρῶν· δὲ ἡμεῖς οἱ νεώτεροι,
of-each of-the flanks; and let us the younger,
τε Τιμασίων καὶ ἐγώ, ὀπισθοφυλακῶμεν, τὸ νῦν
namely Timasius and I, take-charge-of-the-rear, | the now
εἶναι. **38.** Δὲ τὸ λοιπόν, πειρώμενοι
to-be [for the present]. And (for) the rest, having-tried
ταύτης τῆς τάξεως,
this — arrangement (after we have tried this arrangement),
ἀεὶ βουλευσόμεθα ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ εἶναι
always (at any time) we-can-decide what may seem to-be (the)
κράτιστον. Εἰ δὲ τις ὁρᾷ ἄλλο
best (to be done). If indeed any-one perceives (anything) else

βέλτιον, λεξάτω. Δὲ
better (thinks of any better plan than this), let-him-speak." But

ἐπεὶ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν, εἶπε· Ὅτῳ δοκεῖ
when no-one objected, he-said: "To-whom it-seems (that)

ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. Ἔδοξε
these (things are right), let-him-hold-up — (his) hand." He-approved

ταῦτα. 39. Νῦν τοίνυν
these (things) (the proposals were approved). "Now, therefore,"

ἔφη, ἀπιόντας δεῖ ποιεῖν
said-he, "departing it-becomes (you) to-perform (carry into execution)

τὰ δεδογμένα· καὶ ὅστις
— (things that) have-seemed-good (been decided upon); and whoever

τε ὑμῶν ἐπιθυμεῖ ἰδεῖν τοὺς οἰκείους, μεμ-
— of-you wishes to-see — (his) home-and-family, let-

νήσθω εἶναι ἀγαθὸς ἀνήρ· γὰρ ἔστιν οὐ
him-remember to-be (a) brave man; | for it-is not

τυχεῖν τούτου ἄλλως·
to-obtain of-this otherwise [for by no other means can this object be

ὅστις τε ἐπιθυμεῖ ζῆν, πειράσθω νικᾶν·
attained]; whoever — desires to-live, let-him-strive to-conquer;

γὰρ μὲν ἐστί τῶν νικώντων, τὸ κατα-
for indeed (it) is (the part) of-the conquering | (the) to-

καίνειν, δὲ τῶν ἡττωμένων τὸ ἀποθνήσκειν· δὲ
kill, but of-the conquered | (the) to-die; and

καὶ εἴ τις ἐπιθυμεῖ χρημάτων πειράσθω
also if any-one desires property (covets spoil), let-him-strive

κρατεῖν· γὰρ ἐστὶ τῶν νικώντων
to-conquer; for it-is (the privilege) of — (those) conquering

καὶ σώζειν τὰ ἑαυτῶν, καὶ
both to-save the (property belonging) to-themselves, and

λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων.
to-seize that of-the conquered."

CHAPTER III.

The Greeks are visited by Mithridates as a friend, but he soon shows that he is an enemy, and they resolve to enter into no further negotiations with the Persian king. They pass the Zabatus, are harassed by Mithridates, and suffer from the want of slingers and cavalry. Volunteers are enrolled for these services.

1. Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν, καὶ
THESE (things) having-been-spoken, they-arose, and,
ἀπελθόντες κατέκαιον τὰς ἁμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς·
departing, burned the carriages and the tents;
δὲ μὲν τῶν περιττῶν ὅτου τις
and indeed of-the superfluous-things of-which (whatever) any-one
δέοιτο, μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις,
might-need, they-distributed-among one-another (divided among them-
δὲ τὰ ἄλλα ἐῤῥίπτουν εἰς τὸ πῦρ. Ποιή-
selves), — the rest they-threw into the fire. Having-
σαντες ταῦτα ἠριστοποιοῦντο. Δὲ
done these (things), they-breakfasted. But (while)
ἀριστοποιουμένων Μιθραδάτης ἔρχεται
breakfasting Mithridates came (rode up)
σὺν ὡς τριάκοντα ἱππεῦσι, καὶ καλεσάμενος τοὺς
with about thirty horsemen, and, having-called the
στρατηγοὺς εἰς ἐπήκοον
generals to (a) place-of-hearing (withing hearing distance),
λέγει ὧδε· 2. Ἐγώ, ὦ Ἕλληνες ἄνδρες,
he-speaks thus (spoke as follows): "I, O Grecian men,
ἦν καὶ πιστὸς Κύρῳ, ὡς ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε, καὶ
was even faithful to-Cyrus, as you know, and (am)
νῦν εὔνους ὑμῖν· καὶ εἰμὶ διάγων ἐνθάδε σὺν
now well-disposed to-you; and I-am living here with
πολλῷ φόβῳ. Εἰ οὖν ὁρῴην
much fear. If, therefore, I-perceive (could see) (that)
ὑμᾶς βουλευομένους τι σωτήριον,
you are-concerting anything salutary (devising some safe
ἂν ἔλθοιμι πρὸς ὑμᾶς, ἔχων
measure), I might go to (come and join) you, having

καὶ πάντας τοὺς θεράποντας. Οὖν
(bringing with me) also all — (my) followers. Therefore,
λέξατε με τί ἔχετε ἐν νῷ ὡς φίλον τε
tell me what you-have in mind as to (a) friend and
καὶ εὔνουν καὶ βουλόμενον ποιεῖσθαι τὸν
one-also well-disposed (to you), and desiring to-make the
στόλον κοινῇ σὺν ὑμῖν. 3. Τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
march in-common with you." To the generals,
βουλευομένοις ἔδοξεν ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε·
(after) consulting-together, it-seemed (best) to-have-answered thus
καὶ Χειρίσοφος ἔλεγε· Δοκεῖ
(to make this reply); and Cheirisophus spoke: "It seems (good)
ἡμῖν εἰ τις ἐᾷ ἡμᾶς ἀπιέναι
to-us (we have decided), if any-one allows (no one hinders) us to-depart
οἴκαδε, διαπορεύεσθαι τὴν χῶραν
for-home (from returning home), to-proceed-through the country
ὡς ἀσινέστατα ἂν δυνώμεθα·
as harmlessly-as we may be-able (with as little injury as possible);
δὲ ἤν τις ἀποκωλύῃ ἡμᾶς τῆς ὁδοῦ,
but if any-one prohibit us the road (opposes us on our
διαπολεμεῖν τούτῳ ὡς
march), to-fight (our way) against this-one (him) as
κράτιστα ἂν δυνώμεθα. 4. Ἐκ τούτου
bravely-as we may be-able (we can)." On this
Μιθραδάτης ἐπειρᾶτο διδάσκειν
(then) Mithridates endeavored to-instruct (convince them)
ὡς ἄπορον εἴη σωθῆναι,
how impossible (impracticable) it-would-be to-be-saved (escape), (the)
βασιλέως ἄκοντος. Ἔνθα δὴ ἐγιγνώσκετο
king (being) unwilling. Then indeed it-was-perceived
ὅτι εἴη ὑπόπεμπτος· γὰρ καὶ
that he-might-be (was) insidiously-sent (by the enemy); for also
τις τῶν οἰκείων Τισσαφέρνους παρηκολούθει
one of-the followers of-Tissaphernes attended (him)
ἕνεκα πίστεως. 5. Καὶ ἐκ τούτου
for-the-sake-of (insuring his) fidelity. And from this

ἐδόκει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς εἶναι βέλτιον
(in consequence) it-seemed to-the commanders to-be best
ποιήσασθαι δόγμα, ἔστ᾽
to-make (a) decree (pass a resolution) (that) as-long-as
εἶεν ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ τὸν
they-might-be (were) in the territory-of-the-enemy, (that) the
πόλεμον εἶναι ἀκήρυκτον. Γὰρ προσ-
war (was) to-be (should be) without-heralds. For coming-
ιόντες διέφθειρον τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ
to (them) they-tried-to-corrupt the soldiers, and
διέφθειραν γε ἕνα λοχαγὸν Νίκαρχον
they-did-corrupt at-least one captain, (namely) Nicarchus (the)
Ἀρκάδα· καὶ ᾤχετο ἀπιὼν νυκ-
Arcadian; | and he-went-away departing [and he deserted] in-the-
τὸς σὺν ὡς εἴκοσι ἀνθρώποις.
night with about thirty men.

6. Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες, καὶ
After this, having-taken-their-first-meal (breakfasted), and
διαβάντες τὸν ποταμόν Ζαπάταν, ἐπορεύοντο
having-crossed the river Zapata, they-marched
τεταγμένοι ἔχοντες τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν
drawn-up-in-order, having (keeping) the baggage-cattle and the
ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ. Δὲ αὐτῶν οὐ
camp-followers in (the) middle (of the square). But they not
προεληλυθότων πολὺ, ὁ Μιθραδάτης
having-gone (before they had gone) far, — Mithridates
πάλιν ἐπιφαίνεται ἔχων ὡς διακοσίους
again appeared, having (with him) about two-hundred
ἱππέας, καὶ ὡς τετρακοσίους τοξότας καὶ
horsemen, and about four-hundred archers and
σφενδονήτας, μάλα ἐλαφροὺς καὶ εὐζώνους· καὶ
slingers, very light and active; and
προσήει μὲν ὡς ὢν φίλος πρὸς τοὺς
approached indeed as (being) (a) friend to the
Ἕλληνας. 7. Δ᾽ ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἐγγὺς, ἐξαπίνης οἱ
Greeks. But when he-was near, suddenly —

μὲν αὐτῶν καὶ ἱππεῖς καὶ πεζοί
(those) indeed of-them (some of his men), both horse and foot,
ἐτόξευον, δ' οἱ ἐσφενδόνων,
commenced-discharging-arrows, and — (others) slinging-stones (used
καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον. Δὲ οἱ
their slings), and wounded (some of our men). — The
ὀπισθοφύλακες τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔπασχον μὲν
rear-guard of-the Greeks suffered indeed
κακῶς, δ' ἀντεποίουν οὐδέν.
badly, and could-do nothing against (the enemy) (in re-
Γὰρ τε οἱ Κρῆτες ἐτόξευον
turn). For not-only did the Cretans shoot (their) arrows
βραχύτερα τῶν Περσῶν, καὶ ἅμα
a-shorter-distance (than) the Persians, but-also at-the-same-time,
ὄντες φιλοὶ κατεκέκλειντο εἴσω
being light-armed, they-were-included (had taken shelter) within
τῶν ὅπλων· οἱ ἀκοντισταὶ τε
(behind) the heavy-armed-men; the javelin-men indeed threw
ἡκόντιζον βραχύτερα ἢ ὡς
(their) javelins shorter than so-as (not far enough)
ἐξικνεῖσθαι τῶν σφενδονητῶν. 8. Ἐκ τούτου
to-reach the slingers. Upon this
ἐδόκει Ξενοφῶντι εἶναι διωκτέον·
it-seemed to-Xenophon to-be necessary-(it would be well)-to-pursue
καὶ οἱ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν καὶ τῶν πελ-
(them); and — (such) of-the heavy-armed-men and of-the tar-
ταστῶν ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ ὀπισθοφυλακοῦντες
geteers (as) happened (to be) with him guarding-the-rear
ἐδίωκον· δὲ διώκοντες κατελάμβανον οὐδένα
began-to-pursue; but pursuing they-overtook no-one
τῶν πολεμίων. 9. Γὰρ οὔτε ἦσαν ἱππεῖς τοῖς
of-the enemy. For neither were-there horsemen to-the
Ἕλλησιν, οὔτε ἐδύναντο οἱ πεζοὶ
Greeks (they had no cavalry), nor could — (our) infantry
καταλαμβάνειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ,
overtake, in (a) small space (in a short distance),

τοὺς πεζοὺς φεύγοντας ἐκ
the infantry (of the enemy) fleeing (who fled) from (a)
πολλοῦ· γὰρ ἦν
(*much*) (distance) (when they were a long way off); for it-was
οὐχ οἷόν τε διώκειν πολὺ
not possible (for the Greeks) to-follow far (to a great distance)
ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου στρατεύματος. 10. Δὲ οἱ
from the rest (of the) army. And the
βάρβαροι ἱππεῖς καὶ ἅμα φεύγοντες ἐτίτρωσκον
barbarian cavalry even while fleeing wounded
τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων εἰς τοὔπισ-
(our men), shooting-their-arrows from the horses back-
θεν· δὲ ὁπόσον οἱ Ἕλληνες προ-
wards (as they rode); and as-much-(far)-as the Greeks ad-
διώξειαν τοσοῦτον ἔδει πάλιν
vanced-in-pursuit, so-much (far) it-was-necessary again (they were
ἐπαναχωρεῖν μαχομένους. 11. Ὥστε
obliged) to-retreat fighting. So-that (during)
τῆς ὅλης ἡμέρας οὐ διῆλθον πλέον
the entire day they-did not pass-through (advance) more
πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι σταδίων, ἀλλὰ δεί-
(than) five and twenty stadia, but late-in-the-
λης ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας. Ἔνθα
afternoon they-arrived at the villages. Here
δὴ ἦν πάλιν ἀθυμία. Καὶ
truly there-was again (much) dejection-of-mind. And
Χειρίσοφος καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν
Cheirisophus and the oldest of-the generals
ᾐτιῶντο Ξενοφῶντα, ὅτι ἐδίωκεν
blamed Xenephon, that (because) he-pursued (the enemy),
ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ τε
(departing) from the phalanx (main body), and by-so-doing
αὐτὸς ἐκινδύνευε καὶ οὐδὲν
he endangered (himself) (incurred risk) and was none
μᾶλλον ἐδύνατο βλάπτειν τοὺς πολεμίους. 12. Δὲ
the-more able to-injure the enemy. But

Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἠτιώντο
Xenophon, having-heard (this), said that they-blamed (him)
ὀρθῶς, καὶ τὸ ἔργον οὐτὸ μαρτυροίη
justly, and (that) the act itself (its results) bore-testimony
αὐτοῖς. Ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἀναγκάσ-
for-them (in their favor). "But I," said-he, "was-(practically)-
θην διώκειν, ἐπειδὴ ἑώρων ἡμᾶς μὲν ἐν τῷ
forced to-pursue, when I-saw (that) we indeed | in the
μένειν πάσχοντας
to-remain [in keeping our stations in the hollow square] were-suffering
κακῶς, δὲ οὐ δυναμένους ἀντιποιεῖν. 13. Δὲ
badly, and not being-able (unable) to-retaliate. But
ἐπειδὴ ἐδιώκομεν, ἔφη, ἀληθῆ ὑμεῖς
when we-began-to-pursue," said-he, "(the facts were) true (as) you
λέγετε· γὰρ μὲν ἐδυνάμεθα ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον
say; for indeed we-were-able to-do not-any more
κακῶς τοὺς πολεμίους, δὲ ἀνεχωροῦμεν πάνυ
injury (to) the enemy, but we-returned very
χαλεπῶς. 14. Χάρις
difficultly (we could not retreat without great difficulty). Thanks,
οὖν τοῖς θεοῖς ὅτι οὐκ ἦλθον
therefore, (are due) to-the gods, that they-did not come (upon
σὺν πολλῇ ῥώμῃ ἀλλὰ σὺν ὀλίγοις,
us) with (a) great force, but (only) with (a) few (troops),
ὥστε μὲν μὴ βλάψαι μεγάλα, δὲ δηλῶ-
so-as indeed not to-have-injured (us) much, and (yet) to-have-
σαι ὧν δεόμεθα. 15. Γὰρ νῦν μὲν οἱ
shown (us) what we-needed. For now indeed the
πολέμιοι τοξεύουσι καὶ σφενδονῶσιν
enemy shoot (their) arrows and sling-(their)-stones
ὅσον οὔτε οἱ Κρῆτες δύνανται ἀντιτοξεύειν,
so (far) as (that) neither the Cretans are-able to-shoot-back
οὔτε οἱ βάλλοντες ἐκ
(return their shots), nor — (are those) throwing from (the)
χειρὸς ἐξικνεῖσθαι, δὲ ὅταν διώκωμεν
hand (able) to-reach (them), and when we-pursue

αὐτοὺς, μὲν οὐχ οἷόν τε διώκειν πολὺ
them (it is) indeed not possible — to-follow (to pursue) (a) great
χωρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος, δὲ οὐδ' ἐν ὀλίγῳ,
distance from the army, and neither in (a) small
εἰ ταχὺς πεζός εἴη, ἂν
(short) (space), if (ever so) swift (the) foot-soldier might-be, could
διώκων καταλάβοι πεζὸν ἐκ
he pursuing overtake (a) foot-soldier | (he being distant) from
ῥύματος τόξου.
(the) drawing of (a) bow [starting from the distance of a bow-shot
16. Εἰ οὖν ἡμεῖς μέλλομεν εἴργειν
from him]. If, therefore, we intend to-keep-off
τούτους, ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι βλάπτειν
these (our enemies), so-as not to-be-able to-hurt
ἡμᾶς πορευομένους,
(so that they may be unable to harm) us marching
δεῖ τὴν ταχίστην
(advancing), it-is-necessary — as-quickly-as-possible (to provide our-
τε σφενδονητῶν καὶ ἱππέων. Ἀκούω δ'
selves with) both slingers and cavalry. I-hear indeed
εἶναι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἡμῶν
(that) there-are in the army of-us (our army) (some)
Ῥοδίους, τοὺς πολλούς ὧν φασιν ἐπίστασθαι
Rhodians, the most-of-whom, they-say, know (how)
σφενδονᾶν, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν
to-use-the-sling, and (that) the weapon of-them (their weapon)
καὶ φέρεσθαι διπλάσιον τῶν Περσικῶν
always carries double (the distance) of-the Persian
σφενδονῶν. 17. Γὰρ ἐκεῖναι διὰ
slings. For these (Persian slings), on-account-of
σφενδονᾶν τοῖς λίθοις χειροπληθέσι
slinging — stones filling-the-hands (since they sling
ἐξικνοῦνται ἐπὶ βραχὺ·
large stones), reach (only) to (a) short (distance);
δὲ γε οἱ Ῥόδιοι καὶ ἐπίστανται χρῆσθαι
but (while) — the Rhodians even know (how) to-use

μολυβδίσιν. 18. Ἢν οὖν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες
leaden-bullets. If, then, we-ascertain which-(ones)
αὐτῶν πέπανται σφενδόνας, καὶ μὲν δῶμεν
of-them have-acquired (possess) slings, and indeed give
ἀργύριον τούτῳ αὐτῶν, δὲ τῷ ἐθέλοντι
money to-that-one (to each) for-them; and — (to him) willing
πλέκειν ἄλλας τελῶμεν ἄλλο
to-plait other (more) (slings), we-(might)-give other
ἀργύριον, καὶ τῷ ἐθέλοντι σφενδονᾶν ἐν
money; and — (for him) willing to-use-the-sling in
τῷ τεταγμένῳ εὑρίσκωμεν τινὰ ἄλλην
the rank-or-place-assigned-to (him), we-may-find some other
ἀτέλειαν, ἴσως τινὲς ἱκανοὶ ὠφελεῖν ἡμᾶς
privileges, perhaps — some capable to-aid us
φανοῦνται. 19. Δὲ καὶ ὁρῶ
will-appear (offer their services). And also I-see (that
ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι, τοὺς
there are) horses (*being*) in the army, —
τινας μὲν παρ' ἐμοί δὲ τοὺς
some indeed (are) with me (in my possession) and — (others)
καταλελειμμένους τῷ Κλεάρχῳ, δὲ καὶ
left by — Clearchus, and also (besides)
πολλοὺς ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους
many others taken-from-the-enemy, (which are employed in)
σκευοφοροῦντας. Ἂν οὖν ἐκλέξαντες πάντας
carrying-the-baggage. If, therefore, collecting all
τούτους, μὲν ἀντιδῶμεν σκευο-
these (horses), we indeed give-(put)-in-place (of them) ordinary-
φόρα, δὲ κατασκευάσωμεν τοὺς ἵππους εἰς
baggage-cattle, and equip the horses for
ἱππέας, ἴσως καὶ οὗτοι ἀνιάσουσι τι
cavalry (riders), perhaps even these will-annoy somewhat
τοὺς φεύγοντας. 20. Ταῦτα
the (enemy) fleeing (in their flight)." | (Respecting) these
ἔδοξε.
(things) it-seemed-right. [These suggestions were approved.]

Καὶ τῆς ταύτης νυκτὸς μὲν σφενδονῆται
And (the) that-very night indeed slingers
ἐγένοντο εἰς διακοσίους, δὲ
there-became (were enrolled) to (the number of) two-hundred, and
καὶ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἵπποι δὲ καὶ ἱππεῖς εἰς
also on-the next-day, horses and also horsemen to (the
πεντήκοντα ἐδοκιμάσθησαν, καὶ
number of) fifty were-pronounced-fit (for service), and
σπολάδες καὶ θώρακες ἐπορίσθησαν αὐτοῖς· καὶ
leathern-jackets and breastplates were-provided for-them; and
Λύκιος ὁ Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος δὲ ἐπεστάθη
Lycius, the son-of-Polystratus, (the) Athenian, was — appointed
ἵππαρχος.
(their) commander.

CHAPTER IV.

Mithridates again pursues the Greeks, but is repulsed. They reach the Tigris, encamp at Mespila, and are attacked by Tissaphernes with a numerous force. They repel him, and alter their order of march. Traversing a mountainous part of the country, they are harassed by the enemy, till, on getting possession of a height, they are enabled to reach the plain beyond it in safety.

1. Δὲ μείναντες τὴν ταύτην ἡμέραν,
And halting (having halted) for — that day,
τῇ ἄλλῃ ἀναστάντες πρωϊαίτερον
on-the next, rising earlier-in-the-morning (than usual),
ἐπορεύοντο· γὰρ ἔδει αὐτοὺς
they-marched-forward, for it-was-necessary (that) they (for them)
διαβῆναι χαράδραν, ἐφ᾽ ᾗ ἐφο-
should-cross (to cross) (a) ravine-formed-by-a-torrent, at which they-
βοῦντο μὴ οἱ πομέμιοι ἐπιθοῖντο αὐτοῖς
were-afraid lest the enemy might-attack them
διαβαίνουσι. 2. Δὲ αὐτοῖς διαβε-
crossing-over (as they were crossing). But to-them having-
θηκόσιν ὁ Μιθρα-
crossed-over (they had just succeeded in crossing this when) — Mithri-
δάτης πάλιν φαίνεται ἔχων χιλίους ἱππέας
dates again appeared, having (a) thousand horsemen

δὲ καὶ τοξότας σφενδονήτας εἰς
and also archers (and) slingers to (the number of)
τετρακισχιλίους· γὰρ ᾔτησε Τισσαφέρνην
four-thousand; for he-solicited Tissaphernes (for)
τοσούτους, καὶ ἔλαβεν, ὑποσχόμενος
so-many (that number) and obtained (them), promising,
ἂν λάβῃ τούτους, παραδώσειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας
if-he should receive these, to-deliver the Greeks
αὐτῷ, καταφρονήσας,
to-him (into his hands), having-despised (for he had conceived a
ὅτι, ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν
contempt for) (them), because, in the former (previous)
προσβολῇ ἔχων ὀλίγους ἔπαθε
attack, having (only) (a) few (small force), he-suffered
μὲν οὐδέν, δὲ ἐνόμιζε ποιῆσαι πολλὰ
indeed no (loss), and thought (that) he-had-caused (them) much
κακὰ. 3 Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβεβηκότες
annoyance. When, indeed, the Greeks, having
ἀπεῖχον τῆς χαράδρας ὅσον ὀκτὼ
(now) crossed, were-distant from-the ravine about eight
σταδίους, καὶ ὁ Μιθραδάτης διέβαινεν ἔχων
stadia, — — Mithridates crossed-over (it) having
τὴν δύναμιν. Δὲ παρήγγελτο τε
(with) his force. And instructions-had-been-given not-only
τῶν πελταστῶν, καὶ τῶν ὁπλι-
(to those) of-the targeteers, but-also (to those) of-the heavy-armed-
τῶν, οὓς ἔδει διώκειν, καὶ εἴρητο
men, whom it-became (who were) to-pursue, and-also it-was-told (in-
τοῖς ἱππεῦσι διώκειν θαῤῥοῦσι,
structions were also given) to-the horsemen to-pursue being-confident
ὡς ἱκανῆς δυνάμεως ἑφε-
(with confidence and boldness), as (a) sufficient force would-
ψομένης. 4. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Μιθραδάτης
be-following (to support them). When, therefore, — Mithridates
κατειλήφει, καὶ ἤδη σφενδόναι καὶ
had-overtaken (them), and already (the) slings and

τοξεύματα ἐξικοῦντο ἐσήμηνε τοῖς
arrows began-to-reach (them), the-signal-was-(then)-given to-the
Ἕλλησι τῇ σάλπιγγι, καὶ εὐθὺς οἷς
Greeks with-the trumpet, and immediately those to-whom
εἴρητο, ἔθεον ὁμόσε
it-was-requested (orders had been given) ran there (rushed to
καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς ἤλαυνον·
the attack), and the cavalry (also at the same time) charged
δὲ οἱ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο
(upon them); but the (enemy) did not (wait to) receive (them),
ἀλλ' ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὴν χαράδραν. 5. Ἐν τῇ
but fled (back) to the ravine. In —
ταύτῃ διώξει τε πολλοί τῶν πεζῶν τοῖς βαρ-
this pursuit, not-only many of-the foot-soldiers (of) the bar-
βάροις ἀπέθανον, καὶ ἐν τῇ χαράδρᾳ
barians perished (were-killed), but-also, in the defile,
ἐλήφθησαν ζωοὶ εἰς ὀκτωκαίδεκα
(there) were-taken alive to (the number of) eighteen
τῶν ἱππέων. Οἱ Ἕλληνες δὲ αὐτοκέλευστοι
of-the horsemen. The Greeks, indeed, of-their-own-impulse,
ἠκίσαντο τοὺς ἀποθανόντας, ὡς ὅτι εἴη
mutilated the dead (bodies), so that it-might-be
φοβερώτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις ὁρᾶν.
most-frightful (horrible) for-the enemy to-see.

6. Καὶ μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι πράξαντες οὕτω
And indeed the enemy, having-fared thus
ἀπῆλθον· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες πορευόμενοι ἀσφαλῶς
departed; but the Greeks, proceeding safely
τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας,
(advancing without molestation) (for) the rest of-the day,
ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Τίγρητα. 7. Ἐνταῦθα
arrived at the river Tigris. Here
ἦν μεγάλη ἐρήμη πόλις, δ' ὄνομα αὐτῇ
there-was (a) large deserted city, and (the) name to-it
ἦν Λάρισσα· δὲ Μῆδοι τὸ παλαιὸν
(of which) was Larissa; and (the) Medes — formerly

ᾤκουν αὐτὴν. Τὸ εὖρος δὲ τοῦ τείχους αὐτῆς
inhabited it. The width, indeed, of-the wall of-it

ἦν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, δ' ὕψος
(its wall) was five and twenty feet, and (the) height

ἑκατόν· ἡ περίοδος δὲ τοῦ κύκλου δύο παρα-
a-hundred; the circuit indeed of-the enclosure (was) two para-

σάγγαι· ᾠκοδόμητο δὲ πλίνθοις κεραμίαις· δ' ὑπῆν
sangs; it-was-built — of-bricks made-of-clay; and there-was-under (it)

λιθίνη κρηπὶς τὸ ὕψος εἴκοσι ποδῶν. 8. Ὁ βασιλεὺς
(a) stone foundation, the height (of it being) twenty feet. The king

Περσῶν, ὅτε Πέρσαι ἐλάμβανον τὴν ἀρχὴν παρὰ Μήδων,
of (the) Persians, when (the) Persians were-wresting the empire from (the) Medes,

πολιορκῶν ταύτην, ἐδύνατο οὐδενὶ πρόπῳ
besieging this (city), could (was able) in-no way

ἑλεῖν· δὲ νεφέλη προκαλύψασα ἥλιον
(to) take (it); but (a) cloud having-covered (the) sun

ἠφάνισε, μέχρι οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἐξέλιπον, καὶ οὕτως ἑάλω.
made-it-disappear (hid it from view) until the people deserted (it), and so it-was-taken.

9. Παρὰ ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἦν λιθίνη πυραμὶς, τὸ εὖρος
Near this city there-was (a) stone pyramid, the width

μὲν ἑνὸς πλέθρου, δὲ τὸ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων. Ἐπὶ ταύτης
— (of it was) (of)-one plethrum, and the height of-two plethra. Upon this

ἦσαν πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἀποπεφευγότες ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν πλησίον.
(pyramid) there-were many of-the barbarians having-fled (who had fled) from the villages near.

10. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν ἕνα σταθμὸν, ἓξ παρασάγγας, πρὸς
Hence they-proceeded one day's-march, (a distance of) six parasangs, to

μέγα ἔρημον τεῖχος, κείμενον πρὸς τῇ πόλει· δὲ ὄνομα τῇ
(a) large deserted fortress, situated near — (a) city; and (the) name (*to-the*) (of the)

πόλει ἦν Μέσπιλα· δὲ Μῆδοι ποτε ᾤκουν
city was Mespila; and (the) Medes formerly inhabited
αὐτήν. Δὲ ἡ κρηπὶς μὲν ἦν ξεστοῦ
it. And the foundation (of the wall) indeed was of-polished
λίθου κονχυλιάτου, τὸ εὖρος πεντήκοντα
stone (full of) shells, the width (of it was) fifty
ποδῶν, καὶ τὸ ὕψος πεντήκοντα. 11. Ἐπὶ δὲ
feet, and the height, fifty. On —
ταύτῃ ἐπῳκοδόμητο πλίνθινον τεῖχος, τὸ εὖρος
this was-constructed (a) brick wall, the breadth
μὲν πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, δὲ τὸ ὕψος ἑκατόν·
(in width) — fifty feet; and (in) height, a-hundred;
δὲ ἡ περίοδος τοῦ κύκλου ἓξ παρασάγγαι.
and the circuit of-the enclosure (was) six parasangs.
Ἐνταῦθα Μηδία γυνὴ βασιλέως ἐλέγετο
Here Media, (the) wife of (the) king, is-said
καταφυγεῖν ὅτε Μῆδοι ἀπώλεσαν τὴν
to-have-taken-refuge when (the) Medes were-deprived (of) the (their)
ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν. 12. Δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς
empire by (the) Persians. But the king of (the)
Περσῶν πολιορκῶν ταύτην πόλιν οὐκ ἐδύνατο
Persians, besieging this city, was not able
ἑλεῖν οὔτε χρόνῳ, οὔτε βίᾳ· δὲ Ζεὺς ποιεῖ
to-take (it), either by-length-of-time or by-force; but Jupiter made
τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας ἐμβροντήτους,
the inhabitants (as it were) thunderstruck (deprived the
καὶ οὕτως ἑάλω.
inhabitants of their senses), and so (it) was-taken.
13. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν ἕνα σταθμὸν,
Hence — they-proceeded one day's-march, (a
τέτταρας παρασάγγας. Εἰς δὲ
distance of) four parasangs. In (during) —
τοῦτον τὸν σταθμὸν Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεφάνε, ἔχων
this — day's-march Tissaphernes appeared, having
τε ἱππέας οὓς αὐτὸς ἦλθε,
(with him) not-only (the) cavalry (with) which he came (he

καὶ τὴν δύναμιν Ὀρόντου του
himself commanded), but-also the force of-Orontes, — (he)
ἔχοντος τὴν θυγατέρα βασιλέως,
having (with him) the daughter (of the) king (in
καὶ ἔχων
marriage) (who had married the king's daughter), and having (the)
βαρβάρους οὓς Κῦρος ἀνέβη, καὶ ἔχων
barbarians with-whom Cyrus went-up, and having (the
οὓς ὁ ἀδελφὸς βασιλέως ἐβοήθει
troops) with-which the brother of (the) king assisted
βασιλεῖ, καὶ, πρὸς τούτοις, ὅσους
(the) king, and, besides (in addition to) these, as-many-as
βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ· ὥστε τὸ
(the) king (himself) had-given him; so-that the (his)
στράτευμα ἐφάνη πάμπολυ. **14.** Δ' ἐπεὶ
army appeared exceedingly (large). But when
ἐγένετο ἐγγὺς, μὲν καταστήσας τὰς
he-came near, — having-placed (stationed) — (some)
τῶν τάξεων ὄπισθεν εἶχε, δὲ παρα-
of — (his) ranks (forces) in-the-rear, he-kept (them there), and having-
γαγών τὰς ἐμβάλλειν
led-off — (others) (obliquely from these) to-throw (them)
εἰς τὰ πλάγια,
to the flanks (brought others round upon our flanks), (but)
μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ' ἐβού-
indeed he-did not dare (venture) (to attack), nor did-he-
λετο διακινδυνεύειν· δὲ παρήγγειλε
(evidently)-wish to-incur-any-risk; but ordered (his men)
σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν. **15.** Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ
to-use-their-slings and bows. When indeed the
Ῥόδιοι διαταχθέντες ἐσφενδόνη-
Rhodians (who were) dispersed-along-the-ranks began-to-use-their-
σαν, καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι τοξόται ἐτόξευσαν, καὶ οὐδεὶς
slings, and the Scythian archers used-their-bows, | and no-one
ἡμάρτανεν ἀνδρός (γὰρ οὐδὲ
failed of (a) man [no one failed to hit a man] (for neither

εἰ πάνυ προθυμοῖτο ἦν ῥᾴδιον,) καὶ
if he-had very-much desired was-it easy (to do so), —
ὁ Τισσαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἀπεχώρει ἔξω
— Tissaphernes very hastily retreated beyond (the)
βελῶν, καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τάξεις
(reach of the) missiles, and the other divisions (of the Persians)
ἀπεχώρησαν. 16. Καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν
(also) retreated (withdrew). And (for) the rest
τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο, δ'
of-the day the (Greeks) indeed continued-their-march, and
οἱ εἵποντο· καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι οὐκέτι ἐσίνοντο
the (enemy) followed; but the barbarians no-longer harassed
τότε τῇ ἀκροβολίσει· γὰρ οἱ
(them) then with — (their) (usual) skirmishing; for the
Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνων μακρότερον τῶν Περσῶν
Rhodians threw-stones farther (than) the Persians
καὶ πλείστων τοξοτῶν. 17. Δὲ καὶ τὰ τόξα, τὰ
and than-most of-the-bowmen. And also the bows (of) the
Περσικά, ἐστι μεγάλα· ὥστε ὁπόσα τῶν
Persians are (were) large; so-that as-many (such) of-the
τοξευμάτων ἁλίσκοιτο ἦν χρήσιμα τοῖς
arrows as-were-taken (up) were useful to-the
Κρηθσί· καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τοξεύ-
Cretans; and they-continued using the ar-
μασι τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἄνω
rows of-the enemy, | and they-practised shooting upwards
ἰέντες μακράν.
going far [shooting these arrows (by sending them far
Δὲ καὶ εὑρίσκετο πολλὰ νεῦρα
up) into the air]. And also they-found many bow-strings
ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, καὶ μόλυβδος, ὥστε χρῆσθαι
in the villages, also lead, so-as to-be-used
εἰς τὰς σφενδόνας.
(which they could use) for the slings.
18. Καὶ μὲν ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
And indeed on-that — day, when the Greeks

ἐπιτυχόντες κώμαις κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο, οἱ
arriving at (the) villages, encamped, the
βάρβαροι ἀπῆλθον, ἔχοντες τότε μεῖον ἐν
barbarians went-away, having (received) the-worst (of it) in
τῇ ἀκροβολίσει· δὲ τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἡμέραν οἱ
the skirmish; and, on-the following day, the
Ἕλληνες ἔμειναν, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο·
Greeks remained (where they were) and collected-provisions;
γὰρ ἦν πολὺς σῖτος ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. Δὲ
for there-was much (plenty-of) corn in the villages. But
τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ
on-the next-day they-advanced through the plain, and
Τισσαφέρνης εἵπετο ἀκροβολιζό-
Tissaphernes followed, throwing-(hurling missiles)-at-them-from-
μενος. 19. Ἔνθα δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν,
a-distance. Here, indeed, the Greeks perceived
ὅτι πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον εἴη πονηρὰ
that (a) column of-equal-sides (a square) was (a) bad
τάξις, πολεμίων ἑπομένων.
(troublesome) arrangement (when) (the) enemy (was) following.
Γὰρ ἦν μὲν τὰ κέρατα τοῦ πλαισίου
For if, indeed, the wings (flanks) of-the square
συγκύπτῃ, ἢ ὁδοῦ οὔσης στενωτέρας,
close-together, or (the) road being narrow (on account of a
ἢ ὀρέων ἀναγκαζόντων,
narrow road), or mountains forcing (making it necessary),
ἢ γεφύρας ἐστιν ἀνάγκη τοὺς
or (a) bridge (is to be crossed), it-is necessary (that) the
ὁπλίτας ἐκθλίβεσθαι, καὶ
heavy-armed-men (must) be-pushed-out-of-their-places, and (obliged to)
πορεύεσθαι πονήρως, ἅμα μὲν
march, with-difficulty, at-the-same-time indeed (being)
πιεζομένους, δὲ καὶ ἅμα ταραττο-
pressed-upon (crowded together) and also at-the-same-time thrown-
μένους· ὥστε ἐνάγκη εἶναι δυσχρή-
into-confusion; so-that (from) necessity to-be (they would be) use-

στους, ὄντας ἀτάκτους. 20. Δ' ἂυ ὅταν τὰ κέρατα διάσχῃ, ἀνάγκη τότε τοὺς ἐκθλιβομένους διασπᾶσθαι, καὶ τὸ μέσον τῶν κεράτων γίνεσθαι κενὸν, καὶ τοὺς ταῦτα πάσχοντας ἀθυμεῖν, τῶν πολεμίων ἑπομένων. Καὶ ὁπότε δέοι διαβαίνειν γέφυραν ἢ τινὰ ἄλλην διάβασιν, ἕκαστος ἔσπευδε βουλόμενος φθάσαι πρῶτος· καὶ ἦν ἐνταῦθα εὐεπίθετον τοῖς πολεμίοις. 21. Δ' ἐπεὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔγνωσαν ταῦτα, ἐποίησαν ἓξ λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ ἐπέστησαν λοχαγοὺς καὶ ἄλλους πεντηκοντῆρας, καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχας. Οὗτοι λοχαγοὶ δὲ

less, being in-confusion (such disorder). And again when the wings (flanks) divide, it-is-necessary then (that) — (those) (who were previously) pushed-(forced)-out-of-their-places be (now) separated, and the (space) middle (between) the wings (flanks) becomes (be left) empty, and — (those) being thus affected (thrown in such confusion) must-(naturally)-become-dispirited, (if) the enemy following (were behind them). And whenever it-might-be-necessary (they were obliged) to-go-over (a) bridge or any other crossing-place, each-one hastened desiring to-have-arrived the-first (to get across first); and there-was here a-fine-opportunity-of-attack for-the enemy (the enemy would have a good chance to attack them). But when the generals knew this (saw this was the case), they-formed six companies each-of a-hundred men, and they-appointed captains (over these), and (they appointed) others commanding-(to command)-fifty (men), and others commanding-(to command)-five-and-twenty (men). These captains indeed (with their com-

πορευόμενοι, ὁπότε μὲν τὰ κέρατα
panies) on-the-march, whenever indeed the wings (flanks of

συγκύπτοι, ὑπέμενον ὕστεροι,
the square) closed (together), remained (fell) behind,

ὥστε μὴ ἐνοχλεῖν τοῖς κέρασι, δὲ τότε
so-as not to-disturb (crowd) the flanks, and then

παρῆγον ἔξωθεν τῶν κεράτων. 22. Δὲ
they-led (their men along) outside the flanks. But

ὁπότε αἱ πλευραὶ τοῦ πλαισίου διάσχοιεν
whenever the flanks (sides) of-the square might-open

ἀνεξεπίμπλασαν τὸ μέσον, εἰ μὲν τὸ διέχον
they-filled-up the middle, if indeed the separating

εἴη στενώτερον κατὰ λόχους· δὲ εἰ
(opening) was narrow, by companies; but if

πλατύτερον κατὰ πεντηκοστῦς, δὲ εἰ πάνυ πλατύ
rather-wide, by fifties; and if very wide,

κατ' ἐνωμοτίας· ὥστε τὸ μέσον ἀεὶ εἶναι
by twenty-fives; so-as (for) the middle always to-be

ἔκπλεων. 23. Εἰ δὲ καὶ
full (so that the centre was always full). If then —

δέοι διαβαίνειν τινὰ διάβασιν ἢ
it-might-be-(was)-necessary to-go-through any defile or

γέφυραν, οὐκ ἐταράττοντο, ἀλλ' οἱ
(over a) bridge, they-were not thrown-into-confusion, but the

λοχαγοὶ διέβαινον ἐν τῷ μέρει· καὶ
captains (with their companies) went-over in — succession; and

εἴ τι δέοι που τῆς φάλαγγος,
if anything was-needed anywhere (in any part of) the phalanx,

οἵδε ἐπιπαρῆσαν. Τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν
these were-at-hand. In-this — order they-proceeded

τέτταρας σταθμούς. 24 Δὲ ἡνίκα ἐπορεύοντο
four days'-march. But as they-were-proceeding

τὸν πέμπτον, εἶδον τι βασίλειον, καὶ
on-the fifth (day's march), they-saw a-kind-of palace, and

περὶ αὐτὸ πολλὰς κώμας, δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν
around it (there were) many villages, and the road

πρὸς τὸ τοῦτο χωρίον γιγνομένην διὰ
to — this place lying over (through)
ὑψηλῶν γηλόφων, οἳ καθῆκον ἀπὸ ὄρους ὑφ'
high hills, which reached-down from (a) mountain at
ᾧ ἦν ἡ κώμη. Καὶ μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες
(the foot of) which was the village. And indeed the Greeks
ἄσμενοι εἶδον τοὺς γηλόφους, ὡς
rejoicing saw (were glad to see) the hills, as (was)
εἰκός, τῶν πολεμίων ὄντων
natural, (since the forces) of-the enemy being (consisted of)
ἱππέων. 25. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ
cavalry. When indeed, advancing from the
πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν πρῶτον
plain, they-ascended on-to (to the top of) the first
γήλοφον, καὶ κατέβαινον
hill, and (then) they-commenced-descending (were going
ὡς ἀναβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον. Ἐνταῦθα
down) so-as to-go up-to the next. Here
οἱ βάρβαροι ἐπίγιγνονται, καὶ ἀπὸ
the barbarians came-upon (them), and from
τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ ὑπὸ μαστίγων, ἔβαλλον
the high (ground), under (the) lash, they-threw (began
ἐσφενδόνων ἐτόξευον εἰς τὸ
to hurl darts), use-their-slings, (and) shoot-their-arrows to the
πρανὲς. 26. Καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον πολλοὺς
ground-below (down the slope). And they-wounded many,
καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν γυμνήτων Ἑλλήνων, καὶ
and they-had-the-advantage of-the light-armed Greeks, and
κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἴσω τῶν ὅπλων, ὥστε
shut them up within the heavy-armed-men, so-that
ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ οἱ σφενδονῆται καὶ οἱ
on-that — day both the slingers and the
τοξόται ἦσαν παντάπασι ἄχρηστοι, ὄντες ἐν
archers were entirely useless, being among
τῷ ὄχλῳ. 27. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ
(mixed up with) the crowd (camp followers). But when the

Ἕλληνες πιεζόμενοι ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν
Greeks, (on being) hard-pressed, attempted to-pursue,

μὲν ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον
indeed they-arrived at the summit (mounted the height), (but)

σχολῇ, ὄντες ὁπλῖται, δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι
slowly (with difficulty), being heavy-armed, but the enemy

ταχὺ ἀπεπήδων. 28. Δὲ πάλιν, ὁπότε ἀπίοιεν
quickly sprang-up. And again, when they-went-back

πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα, ἔπασχον ταὐτά·
to the rest (of the) army, they-suffered the-same;

καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ δευτέρου γηλόφου ταὐτὰ
and at (on) the second hill the-same-things

ἐγίγνετο· ὥστε ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ κινεῖν τοὺς
occurred; so-that it-seemed (best) to-them not to-move the

στρατιώτας ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου γηλόφου, πρὶν
soldiers from the third hill, before (until)

ἀνήγαγον πελταστὰς ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς τοῦ
they-had-led-up targeteers from the right flank of-the

πλαισίου πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. 29. Ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι
square on-to the mountain. When, indeed, these

ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ τῶν ἑπομένων πολεμίων, οἱ πολέμιοι
had-got above the pursuing enemy, the enemy

οὐκέτι ἐπετίθεντο τοῖς καταβαίνουσι,
no-longer attacked the (Greeks) (as they were) descending,

δεδοικότες μὴ ἀποτμηθείησαν, καὶ οἱ
having-feared (fearing) lest they-might-be-cut-off, and the

πολέμιοι γένοιντο αὐτῶν
enemy [the Greeks] might-be-on (assail) them [the Persians]

ἀμφοτέρωθεν. 30. Πορευόμενοι οὕτω τὸ λοιπὸν
from-both-sides. Marching thus for-the rest

τῆς ἡμέρας, οἱ μὲν τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ τοὺς
of-the day, — (some) indeed on-the road over the

γηλόφους, οἱ δὲ ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ
hills, — (others), however, advancing-abreast-of-them along

τὸ ὄρος, ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας, καὶ κατέ-
the mountain, they-arrived at the villages, and they-

στησαν ὀκτὼ ἰατροὺς· γὰρ ἦσαν πολλοὶ
appointed eight surgeons; for there-were many
τετρωμένοι.
wounded.

31. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ
Here they-remained three days, both
ἕνεκα τῶν τετρωμένων, καὶ εἶχον
on-account of-the wounded, and (because) they-had (found)
ἅμα πολλὰ ἐπιτήδεια,
at-the-same-time much (an abundance of) provisions, (namely)
ἄλευρα, οἶνον, καὶ πολλὰς κριθὰς συμβεβλημένας
wheat-flour, wine, and much barley having-been-laid-up
ἵπποις. Δὲ ταῦτα ἦν συνενηνεγμένα
for-horses. For these (supplies) were (had been) collected
τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς χώρας. Δὲ τετάρτῃ
for-the (person) (being)-satrap of-the country. But on-the-fourth
ἡμέρᾳ καταβαίνουσιν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. 32. Ἐπεὶ
day they-went-down into the plain. When,
δὲ Τισσαφέρνης κατέλαβεν αὐτοὺς σὺν τῇ
however, Tissaphernes overtook them with — (his)
δυνάμει, ἡ ἀνάγκη ἐδίδαξεν αὐτοὺς κατασκηνῆσαι
force, — necessity taught them to-encamp
οὗ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην, καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι ἔτι
where they-first saw (a) village, and not to-march-on still
μαχομένους· γὰρ ἦσαν πολλοὶ ἀπόμαχοι,
fighting; for there-were many unfit-for-action,
οἱ τετρωμένοι, καὶ οἱ φέροντες
(namely) — (those) wounded, and — (those) carrying
ἐκείνους καὶ οἱ δεξάμενοι
(who carried) those (wounded), and — (those) having-received
τὰ ὅπλα τῶν φερόντων.
(who received) the arms of — (those) carrying (the wounded).
33. Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεσκήνησαν, καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι
When indeed they-encamped, and the barbarians,
προσιόντες πρὸς τὴν κώμην ἐπεχείρησαν ἀκρο-
coming-up to the village, attempted to-

βολίζεσθαι αὐτοῖς, οἱ Ἕλληνες πολὺ περιῆσαν·
skirmish with-them, the Greeks had greatly the-advantage;
γὰρ διέφερε πολὶ ὁρμῶντες
for it-differed much (it was a very different thing) rushing
ἐκ χώρας ἀλέξασθαι
(sallying forth) from (their own) ground to-repel (the enemy)
ἢ πορευόμενοι μάχεσθαι τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐπιοῦσι.
from marching-along to-fight the enemy coming-upon

34. Ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἤδη δείλη,
(assailing) (them). When indeed it-was now late-in-the-afternoon
ἦν ὥρα τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀπιέναι· γὰρ οἱ
(evening), it-was time for-the enemy to-depart; for the
βάρβαροι οὔποτε ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο μεῖον
barbarians never encamped at-a-less (dis-
τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἑξήκοντα σταδίων,
tance) from-the Grecian (army) (than) sixty stadia,
φοβούμενοι μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιθῶνται αὐτοῖς
fearing lest the Greeks might-attack them (in)
τῆς νυκτὸς. 35. Γὰρ Περσικόν στράτευμα ἐστι
the night. For (a) Persian army is
πονηρὸν νυκτός· γὰρ τε
(a) miserable (difficult) (thing to manage) at-night; for not-only
οἱ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς δέδενται, καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ
are — (their) horses — tied, but-also (*as*) for the
πολὺ πεποδισμένοι εἰσὶ ἕνεκα τοῦ
most (part) have-been-tied-by-the-feet (fettered) | on-account the
μὴ φεύγειν εἰ λυθείησαν·
not to-run-away [to prevent them running away] if they-were-let-loose
ἐάν τέ τις θόρυβος γίγνηται,
(untied); if also any alarm (sudden attack) should-occur,
δεῖ Πέρσῃ ἀνδρί ἐπι-
it-becomes-necessary for (the) Persian man (he has) to-put-the
σάξαι τὸν ἵππον, καὶ δεῖ χαλινῶσαι,
housings on-the horse, and it-is-necessary to-bridle (him),
καὶ θωρακισθέντα ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν
and (then), having-put-on-his-own-armor, to-mount on the

ἵππον. Δὲ πάντα ταῦτα χαλεπὰ ποιεῖν
horse. But all these (things) (are) difficult to-do
νύκτωρ, καὶ ὄντος θορύβου.
by-night and there-being (an) alarm [when there is an alarm].
Ἕνεκα τούτου ἀπεσκήνουν πόρρω τῶν
On-account of-this they-encamped-at-a-distance far-from the
Ἑλλήνων.
Greeks.

36. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγίγνωσκον
But when the Greeks knew (noticed) (that)
αὐτοὺς βουλομένους ἀπιέναι καὶ
they were-desiring (wished) to-depart and (were)
διαγγελλομένους, ἐκήρυξε
announcing (this fact), it-was-proclaimed (signal was given)
τοῖς Ἕλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι, τῶν πολεμίων
to-the Greeks to-collect-their-baggage, the enemy
ἀκουόντων. Καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι μὲν τινα χρόνον
hearing (it). — The barbarians then for-some time
ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας· δὲ ἐπειδὴ
retarded (delayed) the (their) march; but when
ἐγίγνετο ὀψὲ ἀπῆεσαν. Γὰρ οὐ ἐδόκει
it-became (grew) late they-went-away. For it-did not seem
λυσιτελεῖν αὐτοῖς πορεύεσθαι, καὶ κατάγεσθαι
to-be-expedient to-them to-march, and arrive
ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς. 37. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ
at the camp in-the-night. When indeed the
Ἕλληνες ἤδη ἑώρων σαφῶς ἀπιόντας, καὶ
Greeks now saw (them) evidently departing, —
αὐτοὶ ἀναζεύξαντες, καὶ διῆλθον
they-themselves, having-decamped, — passed-over (proceeded)
ὅσον ἑξήκοντα σταδίους. Καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον
as-much-as sixty stadia. And there-became such
μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων,
(an) interval (was so great a distance) (between) the armies
ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ πολέμιοι οὐκ ἐφάνησαν,
that on-the next-day the enemy did not appear,

οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ· δὲ τῇ τετάρτῃ οἱ βάρβαροι
nor on-the third; but on-the fourth the barbarians,

προελθόντες νυκτὸς καταλαμβάνουσι
having-gone-forward in-the-night, occupied (took possession of)

χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον, ᾗ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔμελλον
(a) place above-on-the-right, by-which the Greeks had

παριέναι ἀκρωνυχίον ὄρους, ὑφ' ἣν ἦν ἡ
to-pass, on-the-brow of (the) mountain, beneath which was the

κατάβασις εἰς τὸ πεδίον. 38. Δὲ ἐπειδὴ Χειρί-
descent into the plain. But when Cheiri-

σοφος ἑώρα τὴν ἀκρωνυχίαν προκατειλημμένην,
sophus saw the eminence preoccupied,

καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς, καὶ
he-calls-for (sends for) Xenophon from the rear, and

κελεύει λαβόντα τοὺς πελταστὰς παραγενέσθαι
orders (him), taking the targeteers, to-advance

εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. 39. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν μὲν οὐκ
to the front. — But Xenophon, however, did not

ἦγε τοὺς πελταστὰς, (γὰρ ἑώρα Τισσαφέρνην
bring the targeteers (for he-saw Tissaphernes

ἐπιφαινόμενον, καὶ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα,)
appearing (in full view), and all — (his) army),

αὐτὸς δὲ προσελάσας ἠρώτα· Τί καλεῖς;
he-himself indeed having-ridden-up (alone) inquired: "Why do-you-call

Δὲ ὁ λέγει αὐτῷ· Ἔξεστιν ὁρᾶν·
(me)?" But — (Cheirisophus) said to-him: "You-may see;

γὰρ ὁ λόφος ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως προκα-
for the eminence above the descent has-been-

τείληπται ἡμῖν, καὶ ἔστι οὐ παρελθεῖν,
preoccupied against-us, and it-is not (possible) to-pass (it),

εἰ μὴ ἀποκόψομεν τούτους. Ἀλλὰ τί
— unless we-cut-off those (who are on it). But why

οὐκ ἦγες τοὺς πελταστάς; 40. Δὲ ὁ
did-you not bring the targeteers?" But —

λέγει, ὅτι οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ κατα-
(Xenophon) replies that it-did not seem-right to-him to-

λιπεῖν τὰ ὄπισθεν ἔρημα, πολεμίων
leave the rear destitute (unguarded), (the) enemy
ἐπιφαινομένων. Ἀλλὰ
appearing (when the enemy were in sight). "But
μέν, ἔφη, ὥρα γε βουλεύεσθαι πῶς τις
indeed," said-he "(it is) time at-least to-consider how some
ἀπελᾷ τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπὸ τοῦ
(of us) will-drive (may dislodge) — (these) men from the
λόφου. 41. Ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὁρᾷ τὴν
hill." Then Xenophon perceives (noticed that) the
κορυφὴν τοῦ ὄρους οὖσαν ὑπὲρ τοῦ
summit (top) of-the mountain (as) being (was) above the
στρατεύματος ἑαυτῶν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης
army of-themselves (their own army), and from this
ἔφοδον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἔνθα οἱ
(place) (there was) (an) approach to the hill, where the
πολέμιοι ἦσαν, καὶ λέγει· Κράτιστον,
enemy were, and he-says: "(I think it would be) best,
ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἴεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπι τὸ
O Cheirisophus, for-us to-go as quickly-as-possible to the
ἄκρον· γὰρ ἢν λάβωμεν τοῦτο,
summit (of the mountain); for if we-take (gain) this,
οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ οὐ δυνήσονται
— (those who are) above the road will not be-able
μένειν. Ἀλλὰ, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ τῷ
to-remain. But, if you-wish, remain with the
στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ' ἐθέλω πορεύεσθαι·
army, I indeed wish (am willing) to-go-forward;
εἰ δὲ χρῄζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, δὲ
if indeed you-desire-it (prefer), proceed to the mountain, and
ἐγὼ μενῶ αὐτοῦ. 42. Ἀλλὰ δίδωμι σοι,
I will-remain here." "But I-(prefer to)-allow you,"
ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, ἑλέσθαι ὁπότερον βούλει.
said — Cheirisophus, "to-choose which-of-the-two you-wish (please)."
Ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἰπών ὅτι ἐστιν νεώτερος αἱρεῖται
— Xenophon, saying that, (as) he-is the-younger, it-becomes

πορεύεσθαι, δὲ κελεύει
(him) (decides) to-proceed (to go), and he-requests (Cheirisophus)
συμπέμψαι οἱ ἄνδρας ἀπὸ τοῦ
to-have-sent (to send with him) — men (a detachment) from the
στόματος· γὰρ ἦν μακρὸν
front; for it-was (a) long (way) (too great a distance)
λαβεῖν ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς. 43. Καὶ ὁ
to-take (to bring) (them) from the rear. And —
Χειρίσοφος συμπέμπει τοὺς πελταστάς
Cheirisophus (then) sends-with (him) the targeteers
ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος· ἔλαβε δὲ τοὺς
from the front; he-took also the (targeteers) (that were)
κατὰ μέσον τοῦ πλαισίου. Δ᾽
in (the) middle of-the square. And (Cheirisophus)
ἐκέλευσε καὶ συνέπεσθαι αὐτῷ τοὺς τριακοσίους
ordered also to-follow him the three-hundred
τῶν ἐπιλέκτων, οὓς αὐτὸς εἶχε ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι
of-the picked-men whom he-himself had in the front
τοῦ πλαισίου.
of-the square.

44. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς τάχιστα ἐδύ-
Then they-marched-forward as quickly-as they-
ναντο. Δ᾽ οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου, ὡς
could. But the enemy on the eminence, when
ἐνόησαν τὴν πορείαν αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὸ
they-perceived the march of-these (the Greeks) towards the
ἄκρον, εὐθὺς καὶ αὐτοὶ ὥρμησαν ἁμιλ-
summit, directly also they rushed (forward) to-
λᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. 45. Καὶ
contend (with them) for (the possession of) the summit. And
ἐνταῦθα ἦν μὲν πολλὴ κραυγὴ τοῦ
thereupon (there) was (arose) indeed (a) great shout from-the
Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύματος, διακελευομένων τοῖς
Grecian army, cheering-on —
ἑαυτῶν, δὲ πολλὴ κραυγὴ τῶν
(of) their-men, and much shouting (on the other side) | from —

ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην διακελευομένων τοῖς
(those) about Tissaphernes, cheering-on — (of)
ἑαυτῶν. 46. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν παρελαύνων ἐπὶ τοῦ
their-men. But Xenophon, riding-along on — (a)
ἵππου παρεκελεύετο· Νομίζετε,
horse (horseback), encouraged (his men) (by saying): "Consider,
Ἄνδρες, νῦν ἁμιλλᾶσθαι
O men (soldiers), (that) now (you are) to-contend (now contending)
ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας καὶ
for — Greece, now for — (your) children and
τὰς γυναῖκας, νῦν πονήσαντες ὀλίγον
— (your) wives, now having-labored (struggled) a-little,
πορευσόμεθα τὴν λοιπὴν ἀμαχεί.
we-shall-march the rest (of the way) without-fighting."
47. Δὲ Σωτηρίδης ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν·
But Soterides, the Sicyonian, said (cried out):
Ἐσμέν οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν· γὰρ σὺ μὲν
"We-are not on an-equality, O Xenophon; for you indeed
ὀχεῖ ἐφ' ἵππου, ἐγὼ δὲ κάμνω χαλεπῶς,
are-carried on (a) horse, (while) I — labor grievously
φέρων τὴν ἀσπίδα. 48. Καὶ ὃς,
(have hard work), carrying — (my) shield." And who
ἀκούσας ταῦτα, καταπηδήσας
(he), hearing this (remark), having-leaped (leaped)
ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, ὠθεῖται αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως,
from — (his) horse, pushed him from the ranks,
καὶ ἀφελόμενος τὴν ἀσπίδα, ἐπορεύετο
and, taking — (his) shield (from him), advanced,
ἔχων ὡς τάχιστα ἐδύνατο. Ἐτύγχανε δὲ
having (with it) as fast-as he-was-able. He-happened —
καὶ ἔχων θώρακα τὸν
also having (to have on his) corselet, (namely, that peculiar to) the
ἱππικόν· ὥστε ἐπιέζετο.
cavalry (horseman's corselet); so-that he-was-oppressed (by the
Καὶ μὲν παρεκελεύετο τοῖς ἔμπροσ-
weight). Yet, however, he-continued-to-exhort — (those) in-

θεν ὑπάγειν, δὲ τοῖς ὄπισθεν, ἑπομένοις
front to-lead-on-gently, and — (those) in-the-rear, following

μόλις παριέναι. 49. Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται
with-difficulty, to-come-up. But the other soldiers

παίουσι, καὶ βάλλουσι καὶ λοιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτη-
beat and throw-stones-at and revile — Sote-

ρίδην, ἕστε ἠνάγκασαν λαβόντα τὴν ἀσπίδα
rides, until they-forced (him), having-taken — (his) shield,

πορεύεσθαι. Δὲ ὁ ἀναβάς
to-march-forward (again). But — (Xenophon), having-remounted,

ἕως μὲν ἦν βάσιμα ἦγεν ἐπὶ
as-long-as indeed it-was passable (for a horse) led-the-way on

τοῦ ἵππου, δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ἄβατα, καταλιπὼν τὸν
horseback, but when it-was impassable, leaving — (his)

ἵππον ἔσπευδε πεζῇ. Καὶ γενόμενοι ἐπὶ τῷ
horse, he-hastened-along on-foot. And having-got on to-the

ἄκρῳ φθάνουσι τοὺς πολεμίους.
summit, they-occupy (it) (before) the enemy (thus they got

the start of the enemy and arrived first at the summit).

CHAPTER V.

The Greeks arrive at a point where the Carduchian mountains overhang the river, and, as they are still harassed by the enemy, the generals hold a consultation and determine to march across the mountains.

1. Ἔνθα δὴ μὲν οἱ βάρβαροι στραφέντες
THEN — indeed the barbarians, having-turned,

ἔφευγον ᾗ ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο,
fled (by the way) which (whatever road) each-one could,

δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. Οἱ δὲ
and the Greeks held the summit. | — (Those) indeed

ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην καὶ Ἀριαῖον ἀποτραπό-
about (with) Tissaphernes and Ariæus, having-turned-

μενοι ᾤχοντο ἄλλην ὁδὸν. Οἱ
aside, went-off another way (in another direction). — (Those)

δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον καταβάντες ἐστρα-
— with Cheirisophus, descending (going down), en-
τοπεδεύσαντο ἐν κώμῃ μεστῇ πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν.
camped in (a) village filled (with) many good
Δὲ καὶ ἦσαν ἄλλαι κῶμαι, ἐν τούτῳ
(things). And — there-were (also) other villages in this
τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν Τίγρητα, πλήρεις
— plain along the river Tigris, full
πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. 2. Δ' ἡνίκα ἦν δείλη
of-many good (provisions). But, when it-was late-in-the-
οἱ πολέμιοι ἐξατίνης ἐπιφαίνονται
afternoon (evening), the enemy suddenly appear
ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ κατέκοψάν τινας τῶν Ἑλλήνων
in the plain, and cut-off some of-the Greeks
ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καθ' ἁρπα-
dispersed (who were scattered over) in the plain for plun-
γήν· γὰρ καὶ πολλαὶ νομαὶ βοσκημάτων
der; for also many herds of-cattle
κατελήφθησαν διαβιβαζόμεναι εἰς τὸ
were-seized (that were about) to-have-been-transported to the
πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ. 3. Ἐνταῦθα Τισσαφέρνης
opposite-side of-the river. Here Tissaphernes
καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐπεχείρησαν καίειν τὰς
and — (those) with him attempted to-burn the
κώμας. Καὶ τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων μάλα ἠθύ-
villages. And some of-the Greeks were much dis-
μησαν, ἐννοούμενοι μὴ, εἰ καίοιεν
heartened, being-apprehensive lest, if they-burned (the villages), they-
οὐκ ἔχοιεν ὁπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν τὰ
would not have (a place) whence they-might-procure —
ἐπιτήδεια. 4. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον
provisions. | And — (those) indeed about Cheirisophus
ἀπῆσαν ἐκ τῆς βοθ-
[Cheirisophus and his men] now returned from (giving) — assist-
θείας· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ κατέβη, παρελαύνων
ance; — and Xenophon, when he-came-down, riding-past

τὰς τάξεις, ἡνίκα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀπήντησαν ἀπὸ
the ranks as the Greeks came-back from

τῆς βοηθείας, ἔλεγεν· 5. Ὁρᾶτε ὦ Ἕλληνες
(giving) — assistance, said: "You-see, O Grecian

ἄνδρες, ὑφιέντας τὴν χώραν εἶναι
men, (the enemy) conceding (admit) (that) the country is

ἤδη ἡμετέραν· γὰρ ἃ, ὅτε ἐσπέν-
now ours; for that-which (whereas) when they-made-the-

δοντο, διεπράττοντο, μὴ καίειν τὴν χώραν
truce they-stipulated not to-burn the country of (the)

βασιλέως, νῦν αὐτοὶ καίουσιν ὡς
king, now they-themselves burn (it) as (if it belonged to)

ἀλλοτρίαν. Ἀλλ' ἐάν γε που καταλίπωσι τὰ
another. But if — anywhere they-leave —

ἐπιτήδεια αὐτοῖς ὄψονται καὶ ἡμᾶς πορευομένους
provisions for-themselves, they-will-see — us marching

ἐνταῦθα. 6. Ἀλλ', ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι
thither. But, O Cheirisophus," said-he, "it-seems to-me

βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας,
(that we ought) to-give-assistance against (resist) — (these) burning,

ὡς ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμετέρας. Ὁ δὲ
as for (if in defence of) — (our) own-country." — But

Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Οὐκ οὖν δοκεῖ
Cheirisophus said: "It-does not, however, seem (best)

ἔμοιγε· ἀλλὰ, ἔφη, ἡμεῖς καίωμεν, καὶ
to-me-at-least; but," said-he, "let us burn (it also), and

οὕτω θᾶττον παύσονται.
in-this-way they-will the-sooner cease."

7. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς
But when they-went-away (returned) to — (their) tents,

οἱ ἄλλοι ἦσαν μὲν περὶ τὰ ἐπιτή-
the rest (the soldiers) were indeed (occupied) about the pro-

δεια, δὲ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ συνῆλθον.
visions, but (the) generals and (the) captains convened-together

Καὶ ἦν πολλὴ ἀπορία ἐνταῦθα.
(in council). And there-was (now) much perplexity here.

Γὰρ μὲν ἔνθεν ἦν ὄρη
For indeed from-here (on one side of them) there-were mountains
ὑπερύψηλα, δὲ ἔνθεν ὁ ποταμὸς
exceeding-high, but from-there (on the other) — (a) river
τοσοῦτος τὸ βάθος, ὡς μηδὲ τὰ δόρατα
(having) so-great — (a) depth that not-even the spears
ὑπερέχειν πειρωμένοις τοῦ βάθους.
were-(rose)-above (the water) (to those) making-trial of-the depth
8. Δὲ τις ἀνὴρ Ῥόδιος
(when they sounded it). But a-certain man, (a) Rhodian,
προσελθών αὐτοῖς ἀπορουμένοις
coming-to them (while they were) (thus) perplexed,
εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι
said: "I will (am willing), O men, have-crossed
ὑμᾶς κατὰ τετρακισχιλίους
(to convey) you over (across) by four-thousand
ὁπλίτας, ἂν ὑπηρετήσητε ἐμοὶ ὧν
heavy-armed-men at-a-time, if you-will-supply me with-what
δέομαι, καὶ πορίσητε
I-want (require for the purpose), and will-furnish (give) (me) (a)
τάλαντον μισθὸν. 9. Δὲ ἐρωτώμενος ὅτου
talent (as a) remuneration." But being-asked what
δέοιτο· Δεήσομαι, ἔφη, δισχιλίων ἀσ-
he-might-require: "I-shall-want," said-he, "two-thousand hides-for-
κῶν· δ' ὁρῶ πολλὰ πρόβατα καὶ αἶγας καὶ
(made into)-bags; and I-see many sheep and goats and
βοῦς καὶ ὄνους, ἃ, ἀποδαρέντα καὶ φυση-
oxen and asses, which, having-been-skinned and blown-
θέντα, ἂν ῥᾳδίως παρέχοι τὴν
out (inflated), might (would) easily furnish the (means of)
διάβασιν. 10. Δὲ καὶ δεήσομαι τῶν δεσμῶν
crossing. And — I-shall-want (also) the cords
οἷς χρῆσθε περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· τούτοις
(bands) which you-use about the baggage-cattle; with-these
ζεύξας τοὺς ἀσκοὺς πρὸς ἀλλήλους,
having-joined (fastened) the bags (skins) to one-another,

ὁρμίσας ἕκαστον ἀσκὸν λίθους ἀρτή-
having-stretched (moored) each bag, stones having-been-
σας καὶ ἀφεὶς ὥσπερ ἀγκύρας
suspended (from them), and having-let (them) down like anchors
εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ, διαγαγὼν καὶ δήσας
into the water, having-extended (the bags) across, and having-secured
ἀμφοτέρωθεν ἐπιβαλῶ ὕλην,
(them) to-both (banks), I-will-put (lay) wood upon (them),
καὶ ἐπιφορήσω γῆν. 11. Ὅτι οὖν
and will-throw (strew) earth over (the wood). That, therefore,
μὲν οὐ καταδύσεσθε μάλα
indeed you-will not be-sunk (sink), | (as) you-will much
αὐτίκα εἴσεσθε· γὰρ πᾶς
immediately see (you will understand in a moment); for every
ἀσκὸς ἕξει δύο ἄνδρας τοῦ μὴ καταδῦναι·
skin | will-keep two men from-the not to-be-sunk (from
δὲ ἡ ὕλη καὶ ἡ γῆ σχήσει ὥστε μὴ
sinking); and the wood and the earth will-keep (them) so-as not
ὀλισθάνειν. 12. Τοῖς στρατηγοῖς,
to-fall-off (from slipping off)." To-the generals,
ἀκούσασι ταῦτα, τὸ ἐνθύμημα μὲν ἐδόκει
having-heard this (proposal), the contrivance indeed seemed
εἶναι χάριεν, δὲ τὸ ἔργον ἀδύνατον· γὰρ ἦσαν
to-be ingenious, but the execution impossible; for there-were
πέραν πολλοὶ ἱππεῖς οἱ κωλύσοντες,
on-the-other-side many horsemen — (those) would-be-disputing
οἱ εὐθὺς ἂν ἐπέτρεπον
(to hinder) (their passage), (and) who immediately would permit
τοῖς πρώτοις ποιεῖν οὐδὲν τούτων.
the first to-do none of-these (who at the

very outset would not have allowed the first that made the attempt

13. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν τὴν
to effect their purpose). Thence, indeed, on-the
ὑστεραίαν ὑπανεχώρουν εἰς τοὔμπαλιν,
next-day, they-slowly-began-to-retreat — back-again

τῇ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα, εἰς τὰς ἀκαύστους
by-the (road) towards Babylon, to the (some) unburnt
κώμας, κατακαύσαντες ἔνθεν ἐξῆεσαν· ὥστε οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ προσέλαυνον,
villages, having-(first)-burnt (those) whence they-departed (which they abandoned); so-that the enemy did not come-up
ἀλλὰ ἐθεῶντο, καὶ ἦσαν
(to them), but continued-observing (to watch) (them), | and they-were
ὅμοιοι θαυμάζειν ὅποι
like to-wonder [and they seemed to be wondering] where
ποτὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες πρέψονται, καὶ
at-any-time (which way) the Greeks would-turn-themselves, and
τί ἔχοιεν ἐν νῷ.
what (plans) they-might-have (had) in (their) mind (view).

14. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἦσαν
There indeed the rest (of the) soldiers were
ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ
(busied) about — (the) provisions, but the generals and the
λοχαγοὶ πάλιν συνῆλθον, καὶ συναγαγόν-
captains again assembled (in council), and having-brought-
τες τοὺς ἁλωκότας, ἤλεγχον
together — (those) taken-prisoners, they-questioned (them about)
πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν κύκλῳ, τίς
all the country in-a-circle (round about them), what
ἑκάστη εἴη. 15. Δὲ οἱ ἔλεγον, ὅτι
each (part) might-be (was). And — (they) said that
τὰ μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν εἴη τῆς
the (roads) indeed towards (the) south were — (those)
ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα καὶ Μηδίαν δι' ἥσπερ
towards Babylon and Media, through which they (the Greeks)
ἥκοιεν· δὲ ἡ πρὸς ἕω φέροι ἐπὶ
had-come; and — (those) towards (the) east would-lead (led) to
Σοῦσά τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα ἔνθα βασιλεύς λέγεται
Susa — and Ecbatana, where (the) king is-(was)-said
θερίζειν καὶ ἐαρίζειν· δὲ ἡ διαβάντι
to-spend-(pass)-the-summer and spring; and the (road) going-across

τὸν ποταμὸν πρὸς ἑσπέραν φέροι ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ
the river towards (the) west led to Lydia and

Ἰωνίαν· δὲ ὅτι ἡ διὰ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ τετραμμένη
Ionia; and that the (road) over the mountains and winding

πρὸς ἄρκτον ἄγοι εἰς Καρδούχους.
to (the) north might-lead (led) to (the) Carduchi.

16. Δὲ ἔφασαν τούτους οἰκεῖν
And they-said (that) these (people) dwell (scattered)

ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη, καὶ εἶναι πολεμικοὺς, καὶ
over (among) the mountains, and are warlike, and do

οὐκ ἀκούειν βασιλέως· ἀλλὰ καὶ ποτε
not obey (the) king; but (that) even once (one

βασιλικὴν στρατιάν, δώδεκα μυριάδας,
time) (a) royal army, (of) twelve ten-thousand

ἐμβαλεῖν εἰς αὐτοὺς· δὲ οὐδένα
[120,000] (men), attacked — them; but (that) not-one

τούτων ἀπονοστῆσαι διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν.
of-them returned on-account-of the difficult-nature-of-the-

Ὁπότε μέντοι σπείσαιντο πρὸς τὸν
country. When, however, they-made-a-treaty with the

σατράπην τὸν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ
satrap —(he who dwelt (ruled)) in the plain, —

σφῶν ἐπιμιγνύναι τε πρὸς ἐκείνους
some-of-those (of the plain) had-intercourse — with those

καὶ ἐκείνων πρὸς ἑαυτούς.
(mountaineers), and some-of-these (mountaineers) with those

(of the plain).

17. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα
The generals, having-heard these (statements),

ἐκάθισαν χωρὶς τοὺς φάσκοντας
placed apart — (those) saying (who said) (that)

εἰδέναι ἑκασταχόσε, ποιήσαντες οὐδὲν
they-knew (the road) in-each-direction, making no-one

δῆλον, ὅποι ἔμελλον
certain whither (not letting it be known which way) they-intended

πορεύεσθαι. Ἐδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς εἶναι
to-go. It-seemed, however, to-the generals to-be
ἀναγκαῖον ἐμβάλλειν διὰ τῶν ὀρέων εἰς
necessary to-force-their-way over the mountains into (the
Καρδούχους· γὰρ ἔφασαν
country of the) Carduchi; for they-(the prisoners)-said
διελθόντας τούτους ἥξειν εἰς
(that), having-passed-through these, (that) they-would-come into
Ἀρμενίαν πολλῆς καὶ εὐδαίμονος,
Armenia, (it being) (which was a) large and rich (country),
ἧς Ὀρόντας ἦρχε. Δ' ἐντεῦθεν ἔφασαν
(and) which Orontes governed. And whence they-said (that
εἶναι εὔπορον πορεύεσθαι τις ὅποι
it would) be an-easy-thing (for-them) to-proceed any where
ἐθέλοι. 18. Ἐπὶ τούτοις
they-might-wish (pleased). With-reference to-these (this proceeding)
ἐθύσαντο, ὅπως ὁπηνίκα καὶ δοκοίη
they-sacrificed, in-order-that when it-might even seem (to be)
τὴς ὥρας ποιοῖντο τὴν πορείαν
the time, they-might make (commence) the march
(γὰρ ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ τὴν ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὀρέων
(for they-feared lest the passage-over the mountains
προκαταληφθείη)· καὶ παρήγγειλαν
might-(should)-be-preoccupied) (by the enemy); and they-announced
ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν
(gave orders) (that) when (the soldiers) had-supped (that)
πάντας συνεσκευασμένους ἀναπαύεσθαι, καὶ
all, having-packed-up-their-baggage, are-to-go-to-rest, and
ἕπεσθαι ἡνίκα τις ἄν παραγγείλῃ.
to-follow (their leaders) when any signal might (should) be-given.

BOOK IV. — CHAPTER I.

The Greeks enter the territory of the Carduchi, where they suffer greatly from the wind and cold, as well as from the barbarians, who harass them with frequent attacks on their march.

1. Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐγένετο ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει
WHAT then really happened in the expedition-up (march up)
μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τὴν μάχην
until the battle, and what (took place) after the battle
ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς, ἃς βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
during the truce which (the) king and the Greeks
ἀναβάντες σὺν Κύρῳ ἐποιήσαντο, καὶ ὅσα
going-up with Cyrus made, and what (the)
βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους παραβάντος τὰς
king and Tissaphernes, having-broken the
σπονδὰς, ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς
truce, war-was-waged (what hostilities were committed) against
τοὺς Ἕλληνας, τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος
the Greeks (while) the Persian army
ἐπακολουθοῦντος δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ
(was) pursuing (them), has-been-related in the
πρόσθεν λόγῳ.
preceding narrative (book).

2. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο ἔνθα μὲν ὁ
But when they-arrived (at the spot) where indeed the
ποταμὸς Τίγρης ἦν παντάπασιν ἄπορος διὰ
river Tigris is altogether impassable on-account-of
τὸ βάθος καὶ μέγεθος, δὲ ἦν οὐ
— (its great) depth and size (width), and there-was no
πάροδος ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχια ὄρη
passage (along its banks), since the Carduchian mountains
ἐκρέματο ἀπότομα ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
hung steep over this — river,
ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς εἶναι πορευ-
it-seemed — (therefore) to-the generals to-be necessary-

τέον διὰ τῶν ὀρέων. 3. Γὰρ ἤκουον τῶν
to-march over the mountains. For they-had-heard — (from
ἁλισκομένων, ὅτι, εἰ διέλθοιεν τὰ Καρδού-
those) made-prisoners that, if they-should-cross the Cardu-
χια ὄρη, διαβήσονται τὰς πηγὰς
chian mountains, they-might-(would be able to)-ford the sources
τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος ἐν τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ, ἢν μὲν
of-the river Tigris in — Armenia, if indeed
βούλωνται, δὲ ἢν βούλωνται μὴ,
they-wished (to do so), but if they-wished not (to do this),
περιίασι. Καὶ τε ἐλέγετο
they (might) go-round (them). And also it-was-said (that)
τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Εὐφράτου εἶναι οὐ πρόσω
the sources of-the Euphrates were not far
τοῦ Τίγρητος, καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον.
from-(those of)-the Tigris, | and it-is so having
4. Δὲ ποιοῦνται ἐμβολὴν
[and it is really so]. And they-make (the) irruption (their
εἰς τοὺς Καρδούχους ὧδε,
entrance) into the (territory of the) Carduchi in-the-following-
πειρώμενοι ἅμα μὲν λαθεῖν
manner, endeavoring at-the-same-time indeed to-have-concealed (their
δὲ ἅμα φθάσαι
march) (escape observation), and-also at-the-same-time to-anticipate
τοὺς πολεμίους πρὶν καταλαβεῖν
the enemy before they-have-occupied (in getting possession
τὰ ἄκρα. 5. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν
of) the heights. When, indeed, it-was about the
τελευταίαν φυλακὴν, καὶ ἐλείπετο ὅσον
last watch, and there-was-left as-much (enough)
τῆς νυκτὸς διελθεῖν τὸ πεδίον
of-the night (as) (to allow them) to-pass-over (cross) the plain
σκοταίους, τηνικαῦτα ἀναστάντες, ἀπὸ παραγ-
in-the-dark, then rising-up, (and) at the-word-
γέλσεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικ-
of-command (a given signal) marching-forth (advancing), they-

νοῦνται ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς τὸ
arrived at-the-same-time with-the (break of) day at the
ὄρος.
mountain.

6. Ἔνθα δὴ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγεῖτο τοῦ
Here indeed Cheirisophus — took-the-lead of-the
στρατεύματος, λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ'
army, taking (having with him) — (those) about
αὑτὸν καὶ πάντας τοὺς γυμνήτας· δὲ
him (his own men) and all the light-armed-men; but
Ξενοφῶν εἵπετο σὺν τοῖς ὁπλίταις ὀπισθο-
(while) Xenophon followed with the heavy-armed rear-
φύλαξιν, ἔχων οὐδένα γυμνῆτα· γὰρ ἐδόκει
guard, having not-one light-armed-soldier; for there-seemed
εἶναι οὐδεὶς κίνδυνος, μή τις
to-be no fear (danger) lest any-one (the enemy)
ἐπίσποιτο ἐκ τοῦ ὄπισθεν,
might-pursue (attack them) from — behind (as they) (were)
πορευομένων ἄνω. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος
marching upwards (up the mountain). And Cheirisophus
μὲν ἀναβαίνει ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, πρίν τινα τῶν
indeed went-up on-to (reached) the summit, before any-one of-the
πολεμίων αἰσθέσθαι. Δ' ἔπειτα ὑφηγεῖτο·
enemy perceived (him). And then led-forward-slowly;

7. δὲ τὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος ὑπερβάλλον
and the (part) of-the army passing-over (the
ἀεὶ ἐφείπετο,
summit) from-time-to-time (in succession) continued-following (him),
εἰς τὰς κώμας τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἄγκεσι τε καὶ
into the villages (which lay) in the narrow-valleys and also
μυχοῖς τῶν ὀρέων.
in (the) recesses of-the mountains.

8. Ἔνθα δὴ μὲν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι, ἐκλιπόντες τὰς
Then — indeed the Carduchi, having-left —
οἰκίας, καὶ ἔχοντες γυναῖκας
(their) dwellings, and having (taking with them) (their) wives

καὶ παῖδας, ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. Ἦν δὲ
and children, fled to the mountains. There-was indeed
πολλὰ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια λαμβάνειν· δὲ καὶ
much (a great quantity of) — provisions to-take; and also
αἱ οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατεσκευασμέναι παμπόλλοις
— (their) houses were furnished with-a-great-many
χαλκώμασι, ὧν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔφερον οὐδέν,
brazen-utensils, of-which the Greeks took-away none,
οὐδὲ ἐδίωκον τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, ὑπορειδόμενοι,
nor did-they-pursue the people, sparing (them),
εἰ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι ἐθελήσειαν πως
if (perchance) the Carduchi would (be willing) by-any-means
αὐτοὺς διιέναι ὡς διὰ τῆς φιλίας χώρας
(to) let them pass-through as through — (a) friendly country,
ἐπείπερ ἦσαν πολέμιοι βασιλεῖ. 9. Μέντοι
since they-were enemies to (the) king. However,
τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὅτῳ τις ἐπιτυγχάνοι,
the provisions |to-which any-one might-arrive [which any one
ἐλάμβανον· γὰρ ἦν ἀνάγκη.
chanced upon], they-took; for it-was (a) (matter of) necessity
Δὲ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε ὑπήκουον,
(to do so). But the Carduchi neither listened
καλούντων, οὔτε ἐποίουν οὐδὲν ἄλλο
being-called (when they called), nor did-they-make any other
φιλικὸν. 10. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ τελευταῖοι
friendly (demonstration). But when the rear
τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς κώμας ἀπὸ τοῦ
of-the Greeks were-descending into the villages from the
ἄκρου ἤδη σκοταῖοι (γὰρ διὰ τὴν
eminence (hill), (it being) now somewhat-dark (for on-account-of the
ὁδὸν τὸ εἶναι στενὴν ἡ ἀνάβασις καὶ κατάβασις
road — being narrow, the ascent and descent
εἰς τὰς κώμας ἐγένετο αὐτοῖς τὴν ὅλην
to the villages happened for-them (had lasted) the entire
ἡμέραν)· τότε δὴ τινὲς τῶν Καρδοῦχων συλλεγέν-
day); then indeed some of-the Carduchi, collecting-

τες ἐπέθεντο τοῖς τελευταίοις, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν
together, attacked the hindmost, and they-killed
τινας, καὶ κατέτρωσαν λίθοις καὶ τοξεύμασι,
some, and wounded (them with) stones and arrows,
ὄντες ὀλίγοι, γὰρ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν
(they, the Carduchi,) being few, for the Grecian
ἐπέπεσε ἐξ ἀπροσδοκήτου.
(army) had-come-on (them) — suddenly (unexpectedly).

11. Εἰ μέντοι συνελέγησαν τότε πλείους
If, however, they-had-assembled then more (in larger num-
πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐκινδύνευσεν
bers), (a) great (part) of-the army would-have-been-in-danger
ἂν διαφθαρῆναι. Καὶ οὕτω μὲν τὴν
— to-have-been-(of being)-destroyed. And so indeed — (that)
νύκτα ηὐλίσθησαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· δὲ οἱ Καρ-
night they-lodged in the villages; and the Car-
δοῦχοι ἔκαιον πολλὰ πυρὰ κύκλῳ ἐπὶ
duchi burned many fires in-a-circle (around them) on
τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ συνεώρων ἀλλήλους.
the mountains, and observed (the position of) one-another.

12. Ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἔδοξε
At-the-same-time indeed with-the (break of) day it-seemed (best)
τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων
to-the generals and captains of-the Greeks,
συνελθοῦσι, πορεύεσθαι ἔχοντας τε
having-assembled-in-council, to-march-forth, having (taking) —
τὰ ἀναγκαῖα καὶ δυνατώτατα τῶν ὑποζυγίων,
(only) the necessary and strongest of-the baggage-cattle,
καταλιπόντας τἄλλα, καὶ ἀφεῖναι πάντα
leaving-behind the-rest, and to-dismiss all (the)
ἀνδράποδα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ, ὁπόσα ἦν
slaves in the army, as-many (as) were (had been)
νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα. **13.** Γὰρ τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ
recently captured. For the baggage-cattle and
τὰ αἰχμάλωτα ὄντα πολλὰ ἐποίουν
— (those) captured (the slaves), being many, made

τὴν πορείαν σχολαίαν· δὲ οἱ πολλοὶ ὄντες
the march slow; and the many (men) being (in
ἐπὶ τούτοις ἦσαν ἀπόμαχοι,
charge) over these were unfit-for-action (unable to take part in
ἔδει τε διπλάσια
any encounter, besides) it-was-necessary also (that) double (the
ἐπιτήδεια πορίζεσθαι καὶ φέρεσθαι,
quantity of) provisions be-procured and carried, (because)
τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄντων πολλῶν. Δ' δόξαν
the men being (were so) many. And they-approved
ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν ποιεῖν οὕτω.
(adopted) these (resolutions), (and) proclaimed to-do so
14. Ἐπεὶ
(issued proclamation that the troops should act accordingly). When
δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο, οἱ
indeed having-breakfasted they-proceeded (on their march), the
στρατηγοὶ ὑποστάντες ἐν τῷ στενῷ,
generals taking-their-stand in — (a) narrow (part of the
εἰ εὑρίσκοιεν τι τῶν εἰρημένων μὴ
road), if they-found any of-the (before) mentioned (things) not
ἀφειμένον, ἀφηροῦντο· οἱ δ'
left (behind), they-took (them) away; the (men) indeed
ἐπείθοντο, πλὴν εἴ τις ἔκλεψε τι,
obeyed, unless if any-one (some one) had-secreted anything
οἷον ἢ ἐπιθυμήσας παιδὸς ἢ
(something), as if, (for example), having-desired (a) boy or
γυναικὸς τῶν εὐτρεπῶν. Καὶ μὲν ἐπορεύθησαν
woman of-the handsome-ones. And indeed they-proceeded
οὕτω ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν, τὰ μὲν
thus (during) that — day, — (sometimes) indeed
μαχόμενοι τι, δὲ καὶ τὰ ἀναπαυό-
fighting somewhat (a little), and — — (sometimes) rest-
μενοι. **15.** Δὲ εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν πολύς χειμὼν
ing. But on the next-day (a) great storm
γίγνεται, δ' ἦν ἀναγκαῖον πορεύεσθαι·
happened (arose), but (yet) it-was necessary to-proceed;

γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦν οὐ ἱκανὰ. Καὶ
for the provisions were not sufficient (to last very long). And

μὲν Χειρίσοφος ἡγεῖτο δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὠπισθο-
indeed Cheirisophus continued-to-lead and Xenophon brought-up-

φυλάκει. 16. Καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπετίθεντο ἰσχυρῶς
the-rear. And the enemy pressed greatly

καὶ τῶν χωρίων ὄντων
(steadily upon) (them), and (where) the places being (were)

στενῶν, προσιόντες ἐγγὺς ἐτόξευον καὶ
narrow, (the enemy), coming-up near (close), they-shot-arrows and

ἐσφενδόνων· ὥστε οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιδιώκοντες
slung-stones; so-that the Greeks, (sometimes) pursuing

καὶ πάλιν ἀναχάζοντες ἠναγκάζοντο πορεύεσθαι
and again retreating, were-compelled to-march

σχολῇ· καὶ θαμινὰ ὁ Ξενοφῶν παρήγγελλεν
slowly; and frequently — Xenophon passed-the-word (com-

ὑπομένειν, ὅτε οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπικέοιντο
manded) (them) to-halt, when the enemy might-press

ἰσχυρῶς. 17. Ἐνταῦθα ὁ Χειρίσοφος
(pressed) hard upon (them). Then — Cheirisophus,

ὅτε παρεγγυῷτο ἄλλοτε μὲν
when the-word-was-passed (command was given) at-*other*-times indeed

ὑπέμενε, δὲ τότε οὐκ ὑπέμενεν, ἀλλ' ἦγε
halted, but once he-did not halt, but led-on

ταχέως, καὶ παρηγγύα ἕπεσθαι· ὥστε ἦν
rapidly, and ordered (them) to-follow; so-that it-was

δῆλον ὅτι εἴη τι πρᾶγμα· δ' ἦν οὐκ
evident that there-was some thing (unusual); but there-was not

σχολὴ παρελθόντι ἰδεῖν
leisure moving-along (no time to go forward) to-have-ascertained

τὸ αἴτιον τῆς σπουδῆς· ὥστε ἡ πορεία
(to learn) the cause of-the haste; so-that the march

ἐγίγνετο ὁμοία φυγῇ τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι.
became like (a) flight for-the rear-guard.

18. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ Κλεώνυμος
And here (a) brave man (soldier), Cleonymus,

Λακωνικὸς ἀποθνήσκει, τοξευθεὶς
(a) Lacedæmonian, died (was killed), being-shot-with-an-arrow
εἰς τὰς πλευράς, διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος καὶ τῆς
in the side, through the shield and the
στολάδος, καὶ Βασίας Ἀρκάς διαμπερὲς
corselet, and-also Basias, (an) Arcadian, (shot) right-through
εἰς τὴν κεφαλήν. 19. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ
— the head. When, indeed, they-arrived at (the)
σταθμόν, ὁ Ξενοφῶν εὐθὺς
station (place of encampment), — Xenophon, immediately
ἐλθὼν ὥσπερ εἶχε πρὸς τὸν
having-gone | as he-had (himself) [just as he was] to —
Χειρίσοφον ᾐτιᾶτο αὐτὸν, ὅτι οὐχ ὑπέμεινεν
Cheirisophus, blamed him, because he-did not halt,
ἀλλ᾽ φεύγοντες ἠναγκάζοντο ἅμα
and (said) — (that) fleeing they-were-compelled at-the-same-time
μάχεσθαι. Καὶ νῦν δύο καλώ τε καἀγαθὼ
to-fight. And now two honorable and also-brave
ἄνδρε τέθνατον, καὶ ἐδυνάμεθα
men have-died (been killed), and we-could (have been
οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι οὔτε θάψαι. 20. Ὀ
able) neither to-carry-away (their bodies) nor bury (them). —
Χειρίσοφος ἀποκρίνεται πρὸς ταῦτα·
Cheirisophus answered (as follows) to these
Βλέψον, ἔφη, πρὸς τὰ ὄρη, καὶ ἴδε
(remarks): "Look," said-he, "at — (those) mountains, and see
ὡς ἄβατα πάντα ἐστί· δὲ αὕτη μία
how impassable (they) all are; and this one (the only)
ὁδός, ἣν ὁρᾷς, ὀρθία, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ
road, which you-see, (is) steep, and close-upon this
ἔξεστί σοι ὁρᾶν τοσοῦτον ὄχλον
it-is-allowed to-you to-see (you can see) how-great (a) multitude
ἀνθρώπων οἳ κατειληφότες φυλάττουσι
of-men (there are) who, having-occupied (seized), are-guarding
τὴν ἔκβασιν. 21. Ταῦτ᾽ ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον,
the pass. For-these (reasons) I hastened-on,

καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὐχ ὑπέμενον σε,
and for this I-did not wait-for you, (but exerted myself
εἴ πως δυναίμην
and men to the utmost), if by-chance (by any means) I-could
φθάσαι τὴν ὑπερβολήν πρὶν κατειλῆφθαι·
reach the pass-over (the mountain) before it-had-been-seized
(by the enemy); for the guides whom we-have say
δ' οἱ ἡγεμόνες οὓς ἔχομεν, φασιν
(that) there-is no other road." — But Xenophon
εἶναι οὐκ ἄλλην ὁδόν. 22. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν
says: "But I have two men (prisoners). | For
λέγει· Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ ἔχω δύο ἄνδρας. Γὰρ
when (the enemy) presented things to-us [when they
ἐπεὶ παρεῖχον πράγματα ἡμῖν,
annoyed us], we-placed-an-ambush, | (which also made
ἐνηδρεύσαμεν, (ὅπερ καὶ ἐποίησε
us breathe) [gave us time to breathe], and
ἡμᾶς ἀναπνεῦσαι,) καὶ
we-killed some of-them, and we-were-anxious
ἀπεκτείναμέν τινας αὐτῶν, καὶ προὐθυμήθημεν
to-take (some) alive, on-account-of this very-same (for this
λαβεῖν ζῶντας, ἕνεκεν αὐτοῦ τούτου
very purpose), that we-might-use (them as) guides,
ὅπως χρησαίμεθα ἡγεμόσιν
knowing (since they are well acquainted with) the country."
εἰδόσι τὴν χώραν.

23. Καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους,
And immediately leading-forward the (two) men,
ἤλεγχον, διαλαβόντες εἰ εἰδεῖεν
they-questioned (them), having-taken apart (separately), if they-knew
τινα ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν φανεράν.
any other road than the (one) visible (before them).
Ὁ μὲν οὖν ἔφη οὐχ ἕτερος,
The (one) indeed — said (that he) did not (know of any) other,
καὶ μάλα πολλῶν φόβων προσαγομένων· δὲ
and very many fearful-threats were-brought-forward; but

ἐπεὶ ἔλεγεν οὐδὲν ὠφέλιμον,
when he-said nothing useful (gave no useful information)
κατεσφάγη, τοῦ ἑτέρου ὁρῶντος.
he-was-put-to-death, the other-one seeing (in the presence of the other). **24.** Δὲ ὁ λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι
But the (one) remaining (survivor) said that
οὗτος μὲν οὐ φαίη εἰδέναι
this (man) indeed would not say | to-know (said that he did not know) through this, [for the reason] that (a) daughter happens
διὰ ταῦτα ὅτι θυγάτηρ τυγχάνει
(to be) to-him there with (a) man, having-been-given (to him in marriage) (because he had a married daughter living there); but he
αὐτῷ ἐκεῖ παρ' ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη·
stated (that) he-(himself)-would-lead (them) by (a) road able
δ' αὐτὸς ἔφη ἡγήσεσθαι ὁδὸν δυνατὴν
to-be-passed even by-beasts-of-burden. **25.** But being-asked if
πορεύεσθαι καὶ ὑποζυγίοις. Δ' ἐρωτώμενος, εἰ
there-were any place (spot) in it difficult-to-pass, he-said
εἴη τι χωρίον ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον, ἔφη
(replied) (that) there-was (one) height which, — unless some-one
εἶναι ἄκρον, ὃ εἰ μή τις
should-seize (it) beforehand, it-would-be impossible to-
προκαταλήψοιτο ἔσεσθαι ἀδύνατον παρελ-
pass. **26.** Ἐνταῦθα it-seemed-best having-called-together
θεῖν. ἐδόκει συγκαλέσαντας
(the) captains both (of the) targeteers and the
λοχαγοὺς καὶ πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν
heavy-armed-men, | and to-tell (them) the (things)
ὁπλιτῶν, τε λέγειν τὰ
being-present [acquaint them with the present state of affairs],
παρόντα,
and to-ask if there-is any-one of-them who might wish
καὶ ἐρωτᾶν εἰ ἔστι τις αὐτῶν, ὅστις ἂν ἐθέλοι
(would be willing) to-be (to prove himself) (a) courageous man,
γενέσθαι ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ,

καὶ ὑποστὰς πορεύεσθαι
and having-engaged (himself) to-go-on (this expedition as a)
ἐθελοντὴς. 27. Τῶν ὁπλιτῶν μὲν Ἀριστώνυμος
volunteer. Of-the heavy-armed-men indeed Aristonymus
Μεθυδριεὺς Ἀρκὰς ὑφίσταται, καὶ Ἀγασίας
(of) Methydrium, (an) Arcadian, offered-himself, and (also) Agasias
Στυμφάλιος Ἀρκάς· δὲ Καλλίμαχος Παρ-
(of) Stymphalus, (an) Arcadian; but Callimachus (of) Par-
ῥάσιος, Ἀρκάς, ἀντιστασιάζων
rhasia, (also) (an) Arcadian, contesting (the honor) with
αὐτοῖς, ἔφη οὗτος ἐθελεῖν πορεύεσθαι
them, said (that) he-himself wished (was willing) to-go
προσλαβὼν ἐθελοντὰς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ
taking (with him) volunteers from all the
στρατεύματος. Γὰρ ἐγὼ, ἔφη, οἶδα ὅτι
army. "For I," said-he, "know (am sure) that
πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἕψονται, ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένου.
many of-the young-men will-follow, I leading (if I take
28. Ἐκ τούτου ἐρωτῶσι, εἴ τις καὶ τῶν
the lead)." After this they-inquired if any also of-the
γυμνήτων ταξιάρχων ἐθέλοι
light-armed officers (officers of light-armed troops) might-wish
συμπορεύεσθαι. Ἀριστέας
(were willing) to-go-with (join) (the volunteers). Aristeas (of)
Χῖος ὑφίσταται, ὃς πολλαχοῦ ἐγένετο ἄξιος
Chios offers-himself, (a man) who often had-been worthy
πολλοῦ τῇ στρατιᾷ εἰς
of-much (proved himself of great value) in-the army on (occa-
τὰ τοιαῦτα.
sions) — like-these (for similar services).

CHAPTER II.

One of the prisoners is forced to guide them to an eminence, from which they dislodge the Carduchi. But they are still harassed, and the rear suffers severely.

1. Καὶ ἦν ἤδη μὲν δείλη, δ' οἱ
AND it-was now indeed late-in-the-afternoon, and the

ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφα-
(generals, Cheirisophus and Xenophon,) ordered them, having-

γόντας πορεύεσθαι. Καὶ δήσαντες τὸν
eaten-something, to-advance. And having-bound the

ἡγεμόνα παραδιδόασιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ συντίθενται
guide they-delivered (him) to-them, and arrange-with

ἢν λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, φυλάττειν
(them), if they-should-take (possession of) the summit, to-guard

τὸ χωρίον μὲν τὴν νύκτα, δὲ ἅμα τῇ
the place (during) — the night, but at-the-same-time with-the

ἡμέρᾳ σημαίνειν σάλπιγγι· καὶ
(dawn of) day to-give-the-signal with (the) trumpet; and

μὲν τοὺς ὄντας ἄνω ἰέναι ἐπὶ
(that) indeed — (those) being above (on the height) to-go against

τοὺς κατέχοντας
(should charge) — (those) (the enemy) having-(in)-possession-of

τὴν φανερὰν ἔκβασιν, δὲ αὐτοὶ ἐκβαί-
the apparent egress, and they (the generals) coming-

νοντες συμβοηθήσειν ὡς
forth (from below) in-a-body-to-(should)-assist (them) as

τάχιστα δύνωνται. Συνθέμενοι ταῦτα
quickly as they-were-able. They-having-arranged these

οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος
(things), the (detachment) indeed went-forward, (being) in-number

ὡς δισχίλιοι· καὶ ἦν πολὺ ὕδωρ ἐξ οὐρανοῦ.
about two-thousand; | and there-was much water from heaven

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἔχων
[a heavy rain at the time]. And Xenophon, having (taking)

τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας, ἡγεῖτο πρὸς τὴν
the rear-guard, led (them) towards the

φανερὰν ἔκβασιν, ὅπως οἱ πολέμιοι προσέχοιεν
apparent egress, so-that the enemy might-direct
τὸν νοῦν ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ, καὶ ὡς οἱ περιιόντες μάλισ-
— (their) mind (turn their attention) to-that — road (in this direction), and so (that) — (those) going-round might as-much-as-
τα λάθοιεν. 3. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες
possible escape-notice. But when the rear-guard
ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ, ἣν ἔδει
were at (came to) (the) ravine, | which it-was-necessary
διαβάντες ἐκβαίνειν πρὸς τὸ ὄρθιον,
they-having-passed-through to-come-out on the acclivity
[which they had to cross to gain the ascent], τηνικαῦτα οἱ
then the
βάρβαροι ἐκυλίνδουν ὁλοιτρόχους
barbarians rolled (down) round-stones (masses of rock)
ἁμαξιαίους καὶ μείζους καὶ
large-enough-to-load-a-wagon, and (other stones also) greater and
ἐλάττους, οἳ φερόμενοι πταίοντες
smaller, which, being-borne-along (rolling down) (and) striking
πρὸς τὰς πέτρας διεσφενδονῶντο· καὶ
against the rocks, were-shattered-in-all-directions; and
παντάπασιν ἦν οὐδὲ οἷόν τε πελάσαι
altogether it-was not-even possible to-have-approached (to
τῇ εἰσόδῳ. 4. Ἔνιοι δὲ τῶν
approach) the entrance (of the pass). Some indeed of-the
λοχαγῶν, εἰ μὴ δύναιντο ταύτῃ
captains, as (when) they-could not effect (a passage) in-this
ἐπειρῶντο ἄλλῃ· καὶ ἐποίουν ταῦτα
(way), endeavored (to approach) in-another; and they-did these
μέχρι ἐγένετο σκότος· δὲ ἐπεὶ
(continued their attempts) until it-became dark; but when
ᾤοντο ἀπιόντες εἶναι ἀφανεῖς,
they-thought (that) retiring to-be (they might retire) unobserved,
τότε ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον· καὶ δὲ οἱ
then they-went-away to — (their) supper; for indeed — (those)

αὐτῶν ὀπισθοφυλακήσαντες ἐτύγχανον
of-them guarding-the-rear (who guarded the rear) happened

ὄντες ἀνάριστοι. Οἱ πολέμιοι μέντοι
being dinnerless (had no dinner). The enemy, however,

δηλονότι φοβούμενοι, οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο
evidently fearing (something), did not cease

δι' τῆς ὅλης νυκτὸς κυλινδοῦντες τοὺς λίθους·
through the whole night rolling (down) — stones;

δ' ἦν τεκμαίρεσθαι τῷ ψόφῳ. 5. Δ' οἱ
as it-was (easy) to-be-conjectured from-the noise. But — (those)

ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα περιιόντες κύκλῳ,
having (who had) the guide, | going-around in-a-circle

καταλαμβάνουσι τοὺς φύλακας
[taking a circuitous route], surprise the guard

καθημένους ἀμφὶ πῦρ· καὶ μὲν
(of the enemy) sitting round (a) fire; and —

κατακανόντες τοὺς, δὲ καταδιώξαντες
having-killed — (some) (of them) and having-followed-after

τοὺς αὐτοὶ ἔμενον ἐνταῦθ' ὡς
— (others) (put the rest to flight), they remained there as-if

κατέχοντες τὸ ἄκρον.
occupying (having an idea that they had gained) the summit.

6. Δ' οἱ οὐ κατεῖχον, ἀλλὰ
But — they-did not occupy (hold) (the summit), for (a)

μαστὸς ἦν ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν, παρ' ὃν ἦν
knoll (small hill) was above them, by (around) which was

ἡ αὕτη στενὴ ὁδός, ἐφ' ᾗ οἱ φύλακες
(lay) the same narrow road at which the guard

ἐκάθηντο. Μέντοι ἦν ἔφοδος
were-seated (had been posted). However, there-was (an) approach

αὐτόθεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οἱ
from thence to the enemy, — (namely, those)

ἐκάθηντο ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ.
stationed at the open way (egress).

7. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα μὲν διήγαγον τὴν νύκτα· δὲ
And here indeed they-passed the night; but

ἐπεὶ ἡμέρα ὑπέφαινε συντεταγμένοι
when (the) day was-beginning-to-dawn, drawn-up-in-order,
ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· γὰρ καὶ
they-advanced in-silence against the enemy; for —
ἐγένετο ὁμίχλη, ὥστε προσελθόντες ἐγγὺς
there-was (a) mist, so-that, advancing near,
ἔλαθον.
they-escaped-observation (came close upon them before they were dis-

Δὲ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, καὶ τε ἡ σάλπιγξ
covered). But when they-saw one-another, both — the trumpet
ἐπεφθέγξατο, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀλαλάξαντες
sounded-the-attack, and the Greeks, raising-the-shout-of-battle,
ἴεντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, δὲ οἱ
rushed against the men (upon the enemy), but the (barbarians)
οὐκ ἀδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ λιπόντες τὴν ὁδόν
did not receive (their charge), but, leaving the road,
ὀλίγοι φεύγοντες ἀπέθνησκον·
(a) few (only) fleeing died (only a few of them were
γὰρ ἦσαν εὔξωνοι. 8. Δὲ οἱ
killed); for they-were well-girt (active in moving). But —
ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον, ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος,
(those) with Cheirisophus, hearing the trumpet,
εὐθὺς ἴεντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν φανερὰν ὁδόν·
immediately rushed up along the open road; (while)
ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἐπορεύοντο
others indeed of-the generals (with their men) proceeded
κατὰ ἀτριβεῖς ὁδοὺς ἧ ἕκαστοι ἔτυχον ὄντες,
by untrodden paths wherever each happened being (to
καὶ ἀναβάντες ὡς ἐδύναντο,
be), and, ascending (climbing up) as (well as) they-could,
ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους τοῖς δόρασι. 9. Καὶ οὗτοι
drew-up one-another with — (their) spears. And these
πρῶτοι συνέμιξαν τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ
first-ones joined — (those) having-(who had)-secured the
χωρίον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων τοὺς ἡμίσεις τῶν
place. But Xenophon, having the half of-the

ὀπισθοφυλάκων, ἐπορεύετο ᾗ οἱ
rear-guard, proceeded (by the road) in-which (as) —
ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα· (γὰρ ἦν
(those) having (who had) the guide (for it-was
εὐοδωτάτη τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις·) δὲ τοὺς ἡμίσεις
the-most-practicable for-the baggage-cattle); but the (other) half
ἔταξε ὄπισθεν τῶν ὑποζυγίων. 10. Δὲ
he-ordered (to come up) behind the baggage-cattle. And
πορευόμενοι ἐντυγχάνουσι λόφῳ ὑπὲρ
proceeding-forward, they-happened-to-find (a) hill over (hanging)
τῆς ὁδοῦ κατειλημμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων,
the road, (which was) occupied by the enemy,
οὓς ἦν ἀνάγκη ἢ ἀποκόψαι
whom it-was (a) necessity (they must) either to-have-dislodged (dis-
ἢ διεζεῦχθαι ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων
lodge) or to-have-been-separated (be separated) from the other
Ἑλλήνων. Καὶ αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύ-
Greeks. — (The men) themselves indeed might have-pro-
θησαν ᾗ οἱ ἄλλοι, δὲ
ceeded (gone) (by the same road) (in)-which the others (did), but (for)
τὰ ὑποζύγια ἦν οὐκ ἐκβῆναι
the baggage-cattle it-was not (possible) to-go-from (the valley) (ascend)
ἄλλῃ ἢ ταύτῃ. 11. Ἔνθα δὴ παρακε-
in-any-other (way) than this. Then, indeed, having-
λευσάμενοι ἀλλήλοις, προσβάλλουσι πρὸς
encouraged one-another, they-make-an-attack (charge) against
τὸν λόφον τοῖς ὀρθίοις λόχοις, οὐ κύκλῳ,
the hill | in straight companies [in files], not in (a) circle
ἀλλὰ καταλιπόντες ἄφοδον τοῖς
(on every side), but leaving (a) way-of-escape for-the
πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλοιντο φεύγειν. 12. Καὶ τέως,
enemy, if they-wished to-flee. And for-a-while
μὲν, αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ὅπη ἕκαστος
indeed, they ascending in-whatever-manner each
ἐδύναντο, οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευον καὶ ἔβαλλον,
could, the barbarians shot-arrows and threw-stones (at

δ' οὐ προσίεντο ἐγγὺς,
them), but they did not let them come near (receive them in close

ἀλλὰ φυγῇ λείπουσι τὸ χωρίον.
encounter), but in flight they leave (at last abandoned) the place.

Καὶ τε οἱ Ἕλληνες παρεληλύθεσαν
And — the Greeks having passed over (had no sooner passed)

τοῦτον, καὶ ὁρῶσιν ἕτερον λόφον ἔμπροσθεν
this (hill) — (when) they see another hill before

κατεχόμενον. Ἐδόκει
(them) occupied (by the enemy). It seemed (necessary)

αὖθις πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τοῦτον.
again (they resolved) to proceed against this.

13. Δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐννοήσας, μή,
But — Xenophon, having been apprehensive (fearing) lest,

εἰ καταλείποι τὸν ἡλωκότα λόφον ἔρημον,
if he should leave the captured hill destitute (of

καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι πάλιν λαβόντες
troops) (unguarded), and the enemy again taking

ἐπιθοῖντο τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις
(recovering) (it) might attack the baggage cattle (as they were)

παριοῦσι, (δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἦν ἐπὶ πολὺ
passing by (for the baggage cattle were on much [extended

ἅτε πορευόμενα
a long distance], as when proceeding (as they were travelling along)

διὰ τῆς στενῆς ὁδοῦ,) καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου
through — (a) narrow road), leaves on the hill

λοχαγοὺς Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφῶντος,
(the) captains Cephisodorus, (the son) of Cephisophon,

Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Ἀμφικράτην Ἀμφιδήμου,
(an) Athenian; and Amphicrates, (the son) of Amphidemus,

Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν, φυγάδα
(an) Athenian; and Archagoras, (an) exile (from)

Ἀργεῖον· αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς
Argos; (while he) himself indeed with the rest

ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ αἱροῦσι
advanced against the second hill, and they capture

τοῦτον καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ. 14. Ἔτι δ' ἦν
this-one also in-the same manner. Still, however, there-was

τρίτος μαστὸς λοιπὸς αὐτοῖς, πολὺ
(a) third hill remaining for-them (to take), much (by far)

ὀρθιώτατος, ὃ ὑπὲρ τῆς
the-steepest (of all), that (this was) above (the place where) the

φυλακῆς ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ καταληφθείσης
guard at (by) the (watch) fire was-taken (by

τῆς νυκτὸς ὑπὸ τῶν ἐθελοντῶν. 15. Ἐπεὶ
surprise) — at-night by the volunteers. When

δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγένοντο ἐγγὺς οἱ βάρβαροι
indeed the Greeks were near (came up), the barbarians

λείπουσι τὸν μαστόν ἀμαχητί,
leave the hill without-fighting (attempting any defence),

ὥστε γενέσθαι θαυμαστὸν πᾶσι,
so-as to-be wonderful to-all (so that all were sur-

καὶ ὑπώπτευον αὐτούς ἀπολιπεῖν,
prised), and suspected (that) they left (the

δείσαντες μὴ κυκλωθέντες πολιορ-
place) having-been-in-fear (fearing) lest, being-surrounded, they-might-

κοῖντο. Δ' ἄρα οἱ καθορῶντες
be-besieged. But indeed (the truth was that) — (they), looking-down

ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου τὰ γιγνόμενα ὄπισθεν,
from the height (upon) the (things) occurring behind,

πάντες ἐχώρουν ἐπὶ τοὺς
all went-off against (with the intention of attacking) the

ὀπισθοφύλακας.
rear-guard.

16. Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις
And Xenophon indeed, with the youngest-(of his)-men,

ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, δὲ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν
ascended on-to the summit, and the rest he-ordered

ὑπάγειν, ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι προσμί-
to-march-slowly, so-that the rear companies might-come-

ξειαν καὶ εἶπε προελθόντας κατὰ
up-with (join them), and he-told (them), having-proceeded along

τὴν ὁδὸν θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τῷ
the road (some distance), to-halt under-arms on the (a)
ὁμαλῷ. 17. Καὶ ἐν τῷ τούτῳ χρόνῳ
level (piece of) (ground). And at the same time
Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος ἦλθε πεφευγώς,
Archagoras, the Argive, came having-fled (from the
καὶ λέγει ὡς ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ
enemy), and says that (the Greeks) had-been-cut-off (driven) from
τοῦ πρώτου λόφου, καὶ ὅτι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ
the first hill, and that Cephisodorus and
Ἀμφικράτης τεθνᾶσι, καὶ ὅσοι
Amphicrates were-dead (had been killed), and-also how-many
ἄλλοι μὴ ἁλλόμενοι κατὰ
others (all the rest) (who) not having-(had not)-leaped down (from)
τῆς πέτρας ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τοὺς ὀπισθο-
the rocks (and) arrived at (joined) the rear-
φύλακας. 18. Οἱ βάρβαροι δὲ διαπραξάμενοι
guard. The barbarians indeed, having-accomplished
ταῦτα ἦκον ἐπὶ λόφον ἀντί-
these (things) (after this success), came (appeared) on (a) hill oppo-
πορον τῷ μαστῷ· καὶ Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο
site the eminence (third hill); and Xenophon commenced-treating
αὐτοῖς δι' ἑρμηνέως περὶ
(communicated) with-them through (an) interpreter about (making) (a)
σπονδῶν, καὶ ἀπῄτει τοὺς νεκρούς.
truce, and demanded (asked them to give up) the dead.
19. Οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν
— (They) indeed said (replied) (that) they-would-give-them-up
ἐφ' ᾧ μὴ καίειν τὰς κώμας.
on — (this condition), (that) he-would not burn the (their) villages.
Ὁ Ξενοφῶν συνωμολόγει ταῦτα. Δὲ ἐν ᾧ
— Xenophon agreed-to this. [But in which [but
μὲν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα παρῄει,
while] indeed the remaining (part of the) army was-passing-along,
δὲ οἱ διελέγοντο ταῦτα, πάντες οἱ
and — they-were-discussing these (the terms of a truce), all —

ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου συνερρύησαν.
(the barbarians) from that (part of) the country flocked-together.

20. Ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι ἵσταντο· καὶ ἐπεὶ
There the enemy made-a-stand; and when they (the
ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ
Greeks with Xenophon) began to-descend from the
μαστοῦ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους, ἔνθα τὰ ὅπλα
hill towards (to join) the others, | where the arms
ἔκειντο, οἱ πολέμιοι
lay [where the heavy-armed troops were drawn up], the enemy
δὴ ἴεντο πολλῷ πλήθει καὶ
truly hurried-on (came forward) in-great multitude (numbers), and with
θορύβῳ· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ
(much) noise (loud shouts); and when they-got on
τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ μαστοῦ, ἀφ' οὗ Ξενοφῶν
(reached) the top of-the hill from which Xenophon
κατέβαινεν, ἐκυλίνδουν πέτρας· καὶ μὲν
was-descending, they-commenced-rolling (down) stones; and indeed
κατέαξαν τὸ σκέλος ἑνὸς, δὲ ὑπασπιστής
broke the leg of-one (man), and the shield-bearer
ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπέλιπε Ξενο-
having (bearing) the shield (of Xenophon) deserted Xeno-
φῶντα· 21. δὲ Εὐρύλοχος Ἀρκὰς Λουσιεὺς
phon; but Eurylochus, (an) Arcadian of-Lusia, (a)
ὁπλίτης προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ, καὶ προβεβλημέ-
heavy-armed-soldier, ran-to him, and having-
νος πρὸ ἀμφοῖν ἀπεχώρει, καὶ οἱ
thrown (his shield) before (them) both they-departed, and the
ἄλλοι ἀπῆλθον πρὸς τοὺς
others (the rest) went to (join) — (those) (already)
συντεταγμένους.
drawn-up (on the level ground).

22. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ τὸ πᾶν Ἑλληνικὸν ἐγένετο
From this indeed the entire Grecian (force) got
ὁμοῦ, καὶ ἐσκή-
alike-(was now brought)-together (on the level ground), and they-

νησαν αὐτοῦ ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις
encamped there in many (and) fine (good) houses
καὶ δαψιλέσι ἐπιτηδείοις· γὰρ καὶ
and (in the midst of) abundant provisions; for also
ἦν πολὺς οἶνος, ὥστε εἶχον
there-was much wine (wine was so abundant) that they-kept (it)
ἐν κονιατοῖς λάκκοις. 23. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ Χειρί-
in plastered cisterns. Xenophon and also Cheiri-
σοφος διεπράξαντο,
sophus effected (this) (made this agreement with the enemy),
ὥστε λαβόντες τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπέ-
that having-taken (on receiving) the dead (bodies) they-
δοσαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα· καὶ ἐποίησαν
would-deliver-up (to them) the guide; and they-performed
πάντα ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν
all (funeral rites) in — (their) power (so far as they could)
τοῖς ἀποθανοῦσιν, ὥσπερ νομί-
for — (those) having-died (deceased), such-as is-customary-and-
ζεται ἀγαθοῖς ἀνδράσι. 24. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ
appropriate for-brave men. And on-the next-day
ἐπορεύοντο ἄνευ ἡγεμόνος· δ' οἱ πολέμιοι
they-proceeded without (a) guide; but the enemy
μαχόμενοι, καὶ ὅπη εἴη στενὸν
fighting, and where there-might-be (was) (a) narrow
χωρίον προκαταλαμβάνοντες ἐκώλυον τὰς
place, preoccupying (it), obstructed the
παρόδους. 25. Ὁπότε οὖν μὲν κωλύοιεν
passes (their progress). When, therefore, indeed, they-impeded
τοὺς πρώτους, Ξενοφῶν ἐκβαίνων
| — (those) first [the front], Xenophon, going-from
ὄπισθεν πρὸς τὰ ὄρη, ἔλυε
behind to the mountain (ascending the hill from the rear), opened
τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς παρόδου τοῖς πρώτοις
the obstructions of-the passes for-the (those in) front, (always)
πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι ἀνωτέρω τῶν
endeavoring (trying) to-get higher (than) — (those)

κωλυόντων· 26. δὲ ὁπότε ἐπιθοῖντο τοῖς
obstructing (them); and when they-attacked — (those)
ὄπισθεν, Χειρίσοφος ἐκβαίνων
behind (in the rear), Cheirisophus, departing (leaving his
καὶ πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι ἀνωτέρω
place) and striving to-get higher (than) (above)
τῶν κωλυόντων, ἔλυε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν
— (those) obstructing, opened (removed) the obstruction
τῆς παρόδου τοῖς ὄπισθεν· καὶ οὕτως
of-the passes for — (those) behind (in the rear); and thus
ἀεὶ ἐβοήθουν. ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ἰσχυρῶς
always they-assisted (relieved) each-other, and strenuously
ἐπεμέλουτο ἀλλήλων. 27. Δὲ καὶ ὁπότε
took-care of-(supported)-each-other. And also sometimes
ἦν οἱ βάρβαροι παρεῖχον πολλὰ πράγματα
it-was (that) the barbarians | exhibited many things
τοῖς ἀναβᾶσι
to — (those) [annoyed very much those] having-ascended (when)
πάλιν καταβαίνουσι· γὰρ ἦσαν ἐλαφροὶ ὥστε
again descending; for (as) they-were nimble so-as
ἀποφεύγειν καὶ φεύγοντες ἐγγύθεν,
to-escape (they could escape) even fleeing from-near,
γὰρ εἶχον οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ τόξα καὶ
for they-had nothing else (to carry) than (except) bows and
σφενδόνας. 28. Δὲ καὶ ἦσαν ἄριστοι
slings. And also they-were the-best (very expert)
τοξόται· εἶχον δὲ τόξα ἐγγὺς τριπήχη, δὲ
archers; they-had — bows nearly three-cubits (long), and
τὰ τοξεύματα πλέον ἢ διπήχη· εἵλκον δὲ τὰς
the arrows more than two-cubits; they-drew — the
νευράς, ὁπότε τοξεύοιεν προβαίνοντες τῷ
strings, when they-shot stepping-forward with-(advancing)-
ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ πρὸς τὸ κάτω τοῦ τόξου.
the left foot against the lower (part) of-the bow.
Δὲ τὰ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει διὰ τῶν ἀσπίδων καὶ
And the arrows went through the shields and

διὰ τῶν θωράκων. Δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες,
through (penetrated) (even) the corselets. And the Greeks,

ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν, ἐχρῶντο αὐτοῖς ἀκοντίοις,
when they-took (captured any), used them as-javelins,

ἐναγκυλῶντες. Ἐν τούτοις τοῖς
having-fitted-a-thong-to-the-middle-like-a-javelin. In these —

χωρίοις οἱ Κρῆτες ἐγένοντο χρησιμώτατοι. Δὲ
places the Cretans were the-most-useful. And

Στρατοκλῆς Κρής ἦρχε αὐτῶν.
Stratocles, (a) Cretan, commanded them.

CHAPTER III.

The Greeks arrive at the river Centrites, which divides the Carduchi from Armenia. They see the Persians drawn up on the opposite bank, while the Carduchi threaten their rear. They are encouraged by a dream of Xenophon's to try a ford, and effect a safe passage across the stream.

1. Δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν αὖ ηὐλίσθη-
AND this — day likewise (the Greeks) were-quar-

σαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ταῖς ὑπὲρ τοῦ πεδίου
tered in the villages, (namely) — (those) above the plain

τοῦ παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν Κεντρίτην, εὖρος
— along (near) the river Centrites, (the) width (of

ὡς δίπλεθρον, ὃς ὁρίζει
which is) about two-hundred-feet, which (river) bounds (forms the

τὴν Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν χώραν τῶν
boundary between) — Armenia and the country of-the

Καρδούχων. Καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνεπαύσαντο
Carduchi. And the Greeks rested

ἐνταῦθα ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες πεδίον·
here, rejoiced (at) seeing (being glad to see) (a) plain

δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς ἀπεῖχε τῶν
(a piece of level country); and the river was-distant from-the

ὀρέων τῶν Καρδούχων ἓξ ἢ ἑπτὰ στάδια.
mountains of-the Carduchi (about) six or seven stadia.

2. Τότε μὲν οὖν ηὐλίσθησαν μάλα ἡδέως,
| Then indeed, therefore, they-were-lodged very pleasantly [here

ἔχοντες καὶ τἀπι-
they were glad to stay], having also (since they had) (plenty of) pro-
τήδεια καὶ μνημονεύοντες πολλὰ τῶν
visions and were-reflecting much — (on their)
παρεληλυθότων πόνων. Γὰρ ἑπτὰ
past labors (sufferings). For (during) seven
ἡμέρας ὅσασπερ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ
days however-many-that (which) they-marched through (the
τῶν Καρδούχων, διετέλεσαν πάσας
country) of-the Carduchi, they-passed (them) all (had
μαχόμενοι, καὶ ἔπαθον κακὰ ὅσα
been constantly) fighting, and suffered evils so-many-that
οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα
not (more evils than) all — (those) (put) together (which they had re-
ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους. Ὡς
ceived) from (the) king and Tissaphernes. So-that,
οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων
therefore, freed from-these (dangers) (having escaped
ἡδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν.
from such hardships), they gladly took-repose (rested).

3. Ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὁρῶσιν
At-the-same-time indeed with-the (break of) day they-perceive
ἱππέας ἐξωπλισμένους ποῦ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ,
horsemen completely-armed — on-the-other-side of-the river,
ὡς κωλύσοντας
so-as (that) they-would-be-hindering (ready to prevent) (the Greeks)
διαβαίνειν, δὲ πεζοὺς
to-cross-over (from crossing), and (also they perceived) foot-soldiers
παρατεταγμένους ἐπὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις ἄνω τῶν
drawn-up-in-order-of-battle on the high-banks above the
ἱππέων, ὡς κωλύσοντας
horsemen, so-as (that) they-would-be-hindering (prepared to prevent)
ἐκβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν. 4. Δ'
(them) to-cross-over into (from entering) — Armenia. And
οὗτοι ἦσαν Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μάρδοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι
these were Armenians and Mardians and Chaldæans,

μισθοφόροι Ὀρόντου καὶ Ἀρτούχου. Δὲ οἱ Χαλ-
mercenaries of-Orontes and Artuchus. And the Chal-

δαῖοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἐλεύθεροί τε καὶ ἄλκιμοι·
dæans were-said to-be (a) free and also brave

δ' εἶχον ὅπλα μακρὰ γέρρα καὶ
(people); and they-had (for) arms long shields and

λόγχας. 5. Δὲ αἱ αὗται ὄχθαι, ἐφ' ὧν οὗτοι
spears. But — these high-banks, on which these

ἦσαν παρατεταγμένοι, ἀπεῖχον
(foot-soldiers) were drawn-up-in-order-of-battle, were-distant

ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τρία ἢ τέτταρα πλέθρα·
from the river three or four plethra

δὲ μία ὁδὸς ἡ ὁρωμένη
(about four hundred feet); and (the) one (only) road which was-visible

ἦν ἄγουσα ἄνω, ὥσπερ χειροποίητος· οἱ Ἕλληνες
was(one)leading upwards, as-if made-by-hand; the Greeks

ἐπειρῶντο διαβαίνειν ταύτῃ. 6. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ
attempted to-cross in-this (place). When indeed the

τε ὕδωρ ἐφαίνετο ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν πειρωμένοις
— water appeared (rose) above the breasts to-those-making-trial

καὶ ὁ ποταμὸς ἦν
(attempting) (to cross over), and the (bed of the) river was

τραχὺς μεγάλοις καὶ ὀλισθηροῖς λίθοις, καὶ οὔτ'
rough with-large and slippery stones, and neither

ἦν ἔχειν τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τῷ ὕδατι· δὲ
was-it (possible) to-have (carry) — (their) arms in the water; | but

εἰ μή ὁ ποταμὸς ἥρπαζεν·
if not (if they did) the river swept (them) away; (while)

εἴ τις φέροι τὰ ὅπλα ἐπί τε τῆς κεφαλῆς
if any-one carried — (his) arms on — — (his) head

ἐγίγνοντο γυμνοὶ πρὸς τὰ τοξεύματα καὶ τἄλλα
they-became exposed to the arrows and the-other

βέλη· οὖν ἀνεχώρησαν, καὶ ἐστρατο-
missiles (of the enemy); therefore they-retreated, and en-

πεδεύσαντο αὐτοῦ παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν. 7. Ἔνθα
camped there along the river. There

δὲ αὐτοὶ ἦσαν τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα,
indeed (where) they-themselves had-been on-the previous night,
ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους, ἑώρων τοὺς Καρδούχους
on the mountain, they-saw the Carduchi
συνειλεγμένους πολλοὺς ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις.
assembled-together (in) great-numbers, in — arms.
Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἦν πολλὴ ἀθυμία τοῖς
Here truly there was great despondency to-(among)-the
Ἕλλησιν ὁρῶσι μὲν τὴν δυσπορίαν
Greeks (when) they-saw (knew) indeed the difficult-passage
τοῦ ποταμοῦ, δὲ ὁρῶσι τοὺς
of-the river, and saw — (those on the other side of the
κωλύσοντας διαβαίνειν,
river) opposed to-crossing-over (ready to hinder them from
δὲ ὁρῶσι τοὺς Καρδούχους
crossing), and saw (realized that) the Carduchi
ἐπικεισομένους ὄπισθεν τοῖς διαβαίνουσιν.
hanging-on (the) rear (of) — (those) crossing-over
8. Οὖν
(would attack them from behind if they attempted to cross). Therefore
μὲν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ τὴν νύκτα
— on-that-same (this) — day and — night
ἔμειναν ὄντες ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ.
they-remained (where they were), being in great perplexity.
Δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶδεν ὄναρ·
[But Xenophon saw (a) dream [Xenophon had a dream]:
ἔδοξε δεδέσθαι ἐν πέδαις, δὲ αὗται
he-seemed to-have-been-bound in fetters, but these (seemed)
περιῤῥυῆναι αὐτῷ αὐτόμαται, ὥστε
to-have-dropped-off from-him (fell off) of-their-own-accord, so-that (he
λυθῆναι, καὶ διαβαίνειν,
seemed) to-have-been-loosened (set at liberty), and (able) to-walk-about
ὁπόσον ἐβούλετο. 9. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ὄρθρος,
as-much-as he-pleased. But when it-was near-the-dawn-of-day,
ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ λέγει,
he-went to — Cheirisophus, and says (tells him)

ὅτι ἔχει ἐλπίδας ἔσεσθαι καλῶς, καὶ
that he-has hopes (that all) will-be well, and

διηγεῖται αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ. Ὁ δὲ
relates to-him — (his) dream. — (Cheirisophus) indeed

ἥδετό τε, καὶ ὡς τάχιστα ἕως
was-much-pleased —, and, as quickly-(soon)-as (the) dawn

ὑπέφαινε πάντες οἱ στρατηγοί πορόντες
began-to-appear, all the generals being-(who were)-present

ἐθύοντο· καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν καλὰ εὐθὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ
sacrificed; and the victims were favorable immediately from the

πρώτου. Καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπιόντες
first. And the generals and captains going-away

ἀπὸ τῶν ἱερῶν παρήγγελλον τῇ στρατιᾷ
from the sacrifices gave-orders in-the army

ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι. 10. Καὶ δύο νεα-
(for the troops) to-breakfast. And two young-

νίσκω προσέτρεχον τῷ Ξενοφῶντι
men came-running to — Xenophon (while) (he was)

ἀριστῶντι· γὰρ πάντες ἤδεσαν ὅτι ἐξείη
breakfasting; for all knew that it-might-be-(was)-

προσελθεῖν αὐτῷ καὶ ἀριστῶντι καὶ
allowed (to them) to-approach him even (while) breakfasting and

δειπνοῦντι, καὶ εἰ καθεύδοι, ἐπεγείραντα
(or) supping, and (also) if he-was-asleep, having-been-awakened

εἰπεῖν εἴ τις ἔχοι τι
(waking him), to-speak (to tell him) if any-one might-have anything

τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. 11. Καὶ
(to say) of — (matters) (relating) to the war. And

τότε ἔλεγον, ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν συλλέγοντες
then they-said | that they-might-happen gathering

φρύγανα ὡς ἐπὶ πῦρ,
sticks as for (the) fire [were gathering sticks for the fire],

κἄπειτα κατίδοιεν, ἐν τῷ πέραν
(*and then*) saw (chanced to see), on the other-side (of the

ἐν πέτραις καθηκούσαις ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
river) on (the) rocks reaching-down to the river

αὐτὸν, γέροντά τε καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παιδίσκας,
itself, an-old-man and — (some) women and girls,
κατατιθεμένους ὥσπερ μαρσίπους ἱματίων ἐν
depositing something-like bags of-clothes in (a)
ἀντρώδει πέτρᾳ. 12. Δὲ δόξαι σφισι ἰδοῦσι
cavernous rock. And (that) it-appeared to-them, seeing
εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς διαβῆναι· γὰρ οὐδὲ εἶναι
(this), to-be safe to-cross-over; for (that) neither was-it
πρόσβατον τοῖς πολεμίοις ἱππεῦσι κατὰ
(it was not) accessible for-the enemy's cavalry at
τοῦτο. Δ' ἔφασαν ἐκδύντες ἔχοντες
this (place). And they-said (that), having-undressed (and) having
τὰ ἐγχειρίδια διαβαίνειν γυμνοὶ
— (their) daggers (in their hands), they-crossed-over naked
ὡς νευσούμενοι, δὲ πορευό-
as being-about-(in the expectation of having)-to-swim, and, proceed-
μενοι πρόσθεν διαβῆναι πρὶν
ing forwards (going on), they-(actually)-crossed-over before
βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα, καὶ διαβάντες καὶ λαβόντες
they-wetted the (their) middle, and, crossing-over and taking
τὰ ἱμάτια ἥκειν πάλιν.
the clothes, (that) they-came (back) again.

13. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν αὐτός οὖν τε εὐθὺς
— Xenophon himself, therefore, not-only immediately
ἔσπενδε καὶ ἐκέλευε τοῖς νεανίσκοις
made (a) libation, but-also ordered the young-men
ἐγχεῖν, καὶ εὔχεσθαι τοῖς θεοῖς φήνασι
to-pour-in (join him), and to-pray to-the gods having-shown
τε τὰ ὀνείρατα καὶ τὸν
(who had sent) not-only the dreams, but-also (pointed out) the
πόρον, καὶ ἐπιτελέσαι τὰ ἀγαθὰ λοιπά.
ford, even (that) they-would-complete the good-things remaining
Δὲ σπείσας
(what was wanting to their success). And having-made-the-libation,
εὐθὺς ἦγε τοὺς νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρί-
he immediately led the young-men to — Cheiri-

σοφον, καὶ διηγοῦνται ταῦτα. Δὲ
sophus, and they-relate these-same (things) (to him). And

καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἀκούσας ἐποίει σπονδὰς.
also — Cheirisophus, having-heard (them), made (a) libation.

14. Δὲ μὲν σπείσαντες παρήγγελλον ἄλλοις
And indeed, having-made-the-libations, they-ordered | the-others

συσκευάζεσθαι· αὐτοὶ
[the soldiers] to-collect-their-baggage-together; (while) they-themselves,

δὲ συγκαλέσαντες τοὺς στρατηγοὺς
— calling-together (the rest of) the generals,

ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως ἂν διαβαίεν
consulted-with (them) how they might cross (the river)

κάλλιστα, καὶ τε νικῷεν τούς
to-the-best-advantage, and (how) not-only they-might-conquer —

ἔμπροσθεν, καὶ πάσχοιεν μηδὲν
(the enemy) in-front-of (them), but-also suffer no

κακὸν ὑπὸ τῶν ὄπισθεν. 15. Καὶ
harm from — (those) in (their) rear. And

ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγεῖσθαι,
it-seemed (best) to-them (that) Cheirisophus indeed should-take-

καὶ διαβαίνειν ἔχοντα τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ
the-lead, and to-cross-over having the (with) half of-the

στρατεύματος, δὲ ἔτι τὸ ἥμισυ
army, and, moreover, (that) the (other) half

ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενοφῶντι, δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια
should-remain-behind with Xenophon, and (that) the baggage-cattle

καὶ τὸν ὄχλον διαβαίνειν ἐν μέσῳ
and the crowd (camp-followers) to-cross-over in (the) middle

τούτων.
of-these (between the two).

16. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶχε καλῶς,
When, indeed, these (things) had (were) well

ἐπορεύοντο· δ' οἱ νεανίσκοι ἡγοῦντο
(arranged), they-proceeded-forward; — the young-men guided

ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμὸν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ,
(them), having (keeping) the river on (the) left,

δὲ ὁδὸς ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν ἦν ὡς τέτταρες
and (the) way (distance) to the ford was about four
στάδιοι. 17. Δὲ, αὐτῶν πορευομένων, αἱ
stadia. But, (as) they (were) proceeding, the
τάξεις τῶν ἱππέων ἀντιπαρῆεσαν.
lines of-the (enemy's) cavalry passed-along-opposite (advanced
Δὲ ἐπειδὴ ἦσαν
abreast of them, on the other side of the river). And when they-were
κατὰ τὴν διάβασιν καὶ τὰς ὄχθας τοῦ
at (came to) the ford and the shores (banks) of-the
ποταμοῦ, ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ Χειρίσοφος
river, they-stacked — (their) arms, and Cheirisophus
αὐτὸς πρῶτος στεφανωσάμενος καὶ ἀποδὺς
himself, first having-crowned-himself and taking-off-his-clothes
ἐλάμβανε τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ
(laying aside his outer garments), he-took (up) — (his) arms, and
παρήγγελλε πᾶσι τοῖς ἄλλοις, καὶ
commanded all the rest (to follow his example), and
ἐκέλευε τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἄγειν τοὺς λόχους ὀρ-
he-ordered the captains to-lead the companies drawn-up-
θίους, τοὺς μὲν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, δὲ τοὺς
in-columns (in files), — (some) — on (his) left-hand, and —
ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. 18. Καὶ οἱ μάντεις
(some) on (the) right-hand of-himself. And the augurs
μὲν ἐσφαγιάζοντο
(soothsayers) (at the same time) sacrificed-victims (so that the blood
εἰς τὸν ποταμόν· οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ
flowed) into the river; (while) the enemy — (at the
ἐτόξευόν τε καὶ ἐσφενδόνων· ἀλλ'
same time) kept-shooting-arrows and also slinging-stones; but
οὔτω ἐξικνοῦντο. 19. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
they-did not yet reach (the Greeks). When, indeed,
τὰ σφάγια ἦν καλὰ πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται
the victims were favorable, all the soldiers
καὶ ἀνηλάλαζον, δὲ καὶ ἅπασι αἱ γυναῖκες
— raised-the-war-cry, and also all the women

συνωλόλυζον. Γὰρ ἦσαν πολλαὶ ἑταῖραι
joined-in-the-cry. For there-were many of-the-men's-mistresses
ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι. 20. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν
in the army. And Cheirisophus (then)
ἐνέβαινε καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ· ὁ δὲ
entered (the river), and — (those) with him; but —
Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζωνοτάτους τῶν
Xenophon, taking the most-active of-the
ὀπισθοφυλάκων, ἔθει ἀνὰ κράτος
rear-guard, ran (marched) at (the) utmost (full speed)
πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον τὸν κατὰ τὴν ἔκβασιν τὴν
back to the ford, — opposite the outlet —
εἰς τὰ ὄρη τῶν Ἀρμενίων, προσποιούμενος
(that led) to the mountains of — Armenia, making-a-feint
διαβὰς ταύτῃ
(pretending) (that) crossing in-that (the river in this place)
ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς ἱππεῖς παρὰ τὸν
to-cut-off (he would cut off) the cavalry along the
ποταμόν. 21. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι μὲν
(banks of the) river. But the enemy indeed,
ὁρῶντες τοὺς ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον εὐπετῶς
seeing — (those) with Cheirisophus easily
περῶντας τὸ ὕδωρ, ὁρῶντες δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ
crossing-over the water, seeing also — (those) with
Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας εἰς τοὔμπαλιν,
Xenophon | running to the-contrary [running back],
δείσαντες μὴ ἀποκλεισθείησαν, φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ
fearing lest they-might-be-intercepted, they-flee at
κράτος ὡς πρὸς τὴν
(their utmost) power (with all their might), as-if to (gain) the
ἔκβασιν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄνω.
outlet from the river upwards (which led up from the
Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγένοντο κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν
river). When indeed they-got (came) to the road (outlet)
ἔτεινον ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ὄρος.
they-stretched (turned their course) upwards to the mountain.

22. Λύκιος δὲ, ὁ ἔχων τὴν τάξιν
Lycius indeed, who having (the command of) the body (troops)
τῶν ἱππέων, καὶ Αἰσχίνης, ὁ ἔχων
of — cavalry, and Æschines, who having (the command
τὴν τάξιν τῶν πελταστῶν τῶν
of) the body (band) of targeteers, (namely) — (those)
ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἐπεὶ ἑώρων, φεύγοντας
with Cheirisophus, when they-saw (the enemy) fleeing
ἀνὰ κράτος εἵποντο· οἱ
at (their utmost) power (at full speed), started-in-pursuit; the
στρατιῶται δὲ ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολεί-
soldiers also called-out (to one another) not to-be-left-(stay)-
πεσθαι, ἀλλὰ συνεκβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος.
behind, but to-go-along-with (them) to the mountain.

23. Δ' αὖ Χειρίσοφος ἐπεὶ διέβη,
But, on-the-contrary, Cheirisophus, when he-crossed-over,
οὐ μὲν ἐδίωκε τοὺς ἱππέας, δὲ εὐθὺς ἐξέβαινεν
did not indeed follow the cavalry, but immediately made-his-way
κατὰ τὰς ὄχθας προσηκούσας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
along the banks extending-down to the river,
ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἄνω. Δὲ οἱ
against (to attack) the enemy (stationed) above. But — (these)
ἄνω ὁρῶντες μὲν τοὺς ἱππέας ἑαυτῶν
above (on the heights), seeing indeed the cavalry of-themselves
φεύγοντας, δ' ὁρῶντες ὁπλίτας ἐπιόν-
fleeing, and seeing (the) heavy-armed-soldiers advanc-
τας σφίσιν ἐκλείπουσι τὰ ἄκρα ὑπὲρ τοῦ
ing-against themselves, they-abandon the heights above the
ποταμοῦ.
river.

24. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἐπεὶ ἑώρα τὰ πέραν
Xenophon, however, when he-saw (things) on-the other-side
γιγνόμενα καλῶς ἀπεχώρει τὴν
becoming (going) well, departed (returned) (with) —
ταχίστην πρὸς στράτευμα τὸ
all-possible-speed to (join the) army — (which was)

διαβαῖνον· (γὰρ καὶ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι ἦσαν ἤδη
crossing (over); (for — the Carduchi were now

φανεροὶ καταβαίνοντες εἰς τὸ πεδίον ὡς ἐπιθησό-
evidently descending to the plain, as-if about-(for the

μενοι τοῖς τελευταίσις.) 25. Καὶ
purpose of)-attacking — (those) behind (the rear)). And

Χειρίσοφος μὲν κατεῖχε τὰ ἄνω,
Cheirisophus indeed(now)occupied(held possession of)the(place)above

δὲ Λύκιος, σὺν ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας
(the heights), and Lycius, with (his) few (men), having-ventured

ἐπιδιῶξαι, ἔλαβε τὰ τῶν σκευοφόρων,
to-pursue (the enemy), captured the (some) of-the baggage

ὑπολειπόμενα, καὶ μετὰ τούτων τε
(which they had) left-behind, and among these not-only

καλὴν ἐσθῆτα καὶ ἐκπώματα.
(some) fine (rich) garments, but-also (some) drinking-cups.

26. Καὶ μὲν τὰ σκευοφόρα τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ ὁ
And — the baggage of-the Greeks and the

ὄχλος ἀκμὴν διέβαινε, δὲ
crowd (camp-followers) were still passing (crossing), and

Ξενοφῶν στρέψας πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους, ἔθετο
Xenophon, having-turned towards the Carduchi, halted

ἀντία τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς
over-against (them) under-arms; and he-ordered the

λοχαγοῖς ποιήσασθαι ἕκαστον τὸν λόχον ἑαυτοῦ
captains to-form each — company of-theirs

κατ' ἐνωμο-
(each should arrange his own company) into divisions-of-five-and-twenty-

τίας, παραγαγόντας τὴν ἐνωμο-
men, having-wheeled (bringing around) the division-of-twenty-five-

τίαν παρ' ἀσπίδας ἐπὶ φάλαγγος· καὶ
men by the-left into line; and (he ordered)

μὲν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς καὶ ἐνωμοτάρχας
(both) — the captains and (the) commanders-of (these)

ἰέναι πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων, δὲ
divisions to-go (advance) against (facing) the Carduchi, and

οὐραγοὺς καταστήσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ
(the) commanders-of-the-rear to-halt at (facing) the
ποταμοῦ. 27. Δ' οἱ Καρδοῦχοι, ὡς ἑώρων τοὺς
river. But the Carduchi, when they-saw the
ὀπισθοφύλακας τοῦ ὄχλου ψιλουμένους,
rear-guard of-the crowd (camp-followers) diminished
καὶ ἤδη φαινουμένους ὀλίγους, δὴ
(in number), and now appeared (to be but) few, they indeed
ἐπῄεσαν θᾶττον ᾄδοντες τινας ᾠδάς. Ὁ Χειρί-
advanced more-quickly, singing certain songs. — Cheiri-
σοφος δὲ, ἐπεὶ εἶχε τὰ παρ' αὐτῷ
sophus, indeed, when he-had (saw) the (things) about himself (were)
ἀσφαλῶς, πέμπει τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ σφενδονήτας
safe, sends the targeteers and slingers
καὶ τοξότας παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ κελεύει
and archers to Xenophon, and he-commanded
ποιεῖν ὅ τι ἂν παραγγέλλῃ. 28. Δ' ὁ
(them) to-do whatever he might order. But —
Ξενοφῶν ἰδὼν αὐτοὺς διαβαίνοντας
Xenophon having-seen (when he saw) them crossing,
πέμψας ἄγγελον κελεύει μεῖναι αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ
having-sent (a) messenger, he-requests (them) to-remain there at
τοῦ ποταμοῦ, μὴ διαβάντας. Ὅταν
the river, not having-crossed (without crossing). When
δ' αὐτοὶ ἄρξωνται διαβαίνειν
indeed they [Xenophon and his men] begin to-cross,
ἐμβαίνειν ἐναντίους ἔνθεν καὶ
(they should) enter (the river) opposite on-this-side and
ἔνθεν σφῶν ὡς διαβησομένους,
on-that-side (on each side) of-them, as-if about-to-cross (with the
τοὺς ἀκοντιστὰς διηγκυλωμέ-
intention of crossing over), the javelin-men holding the-javelin-
νους, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ἐπιβεβλημένους·
by-the-thong, and the archers having-placed (their)
δὲ μὴ προβαίνειν πρόσω τοῦ
arrows-on-the-string; but not to-advance far-into the

ποταμοῦ. 29. Παρήγγειλε δὲ τοῖς παρ' ἑαυτῷ
river. | He-ordered — — (those) about himself

ἐπειδὰν
[he ordered his own men] (that) when (as soon as) (a stone from a)

σφενδόνη ἐξικνῆται, καὶ ἀσπὶς ψοφῇ
sling should-reach (them) and (a) shield resounded (should

παιανίσαντας θεῖν εἰς τοὺς
ring), (that), having-sung-the-pæan, they-should-rush on (towards) the

πολεμίους· δὲ ἐπειδὰν οἱ πολέμιοι ἀναστρέψωσι,
enemy; and when the enemy should-turn-to-flee

καὶ ὁ σαλπιγκτὴς σημήνῃ τὸ πολεμικόν
and the trumpeter should-sound-the-signal, the warlike-one

ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τοὺς οὐραγούς μὲν
(of attack) from the river, (that) the leaders-of-the-rear, —

ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ δόρυ ἡγεῖσθαι, δὲ
having-turned to (the) right, to-(should)-take-the-lead, and

πάντας θεῖν, καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅτι τάχιστα, ᾗ
all to-(should)-run, and cross-over as fast-as-possible, where

ἕκαστος εἶχεν τὴν τάξιν, ὡς
each-one had — (his) file (happened to be stationed), so-as

μὴ ἐμποδίζειν ἀλλήλους· ὅτι οὗτος
not to-impede one-another; (telling them) that that-one (he)

ἔσοιτο ἄριστος ὃς ἂν πρῶτος γένηται
would-be the-best (man) who might (should) first get

ἐν τῷ πέραν.
on (reach) the other-side.

30. Δ' οἱ Καρδοῦχοι ὁρῶντες τοὺς λοιπούς
But the Carduchi, seeing — (those) remaining

ἤδη ὀλίγους, (γὰρ καὶ πολλοὶ
(who were left) (were) now (but) few (for — many

τῶν τεταγμένων μένειν ᾤχοντο
of — (those) ordered to-remain departed (had gone away)

ἐπιμελόμενοι, οἱ μὲν ὑποζυ-
taking-care, — (some) indeed (to take care) of-the-baggage-

γίων, οἱ δὲ σκευῶν, δ' οἱ
cattle, — (some) also of (their) utensils (and baggage), and — (others)

ἑταιρῶν,) ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπέκειντο θρασέως
of (their) mistresses), thereupon indeed pressed boldly
καὶ ἤρχοντο σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν.
on, and began to-use (their) slings and bows.

31. Δ᾽ οἱ Ἕλληνες παιανίσαντες ἅρμησαν
But the Greeks, having-sung-the-pæan, started-forward in (a)
δρόμᾳ ἐπ᾽ αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ
run (rushed) upon them; (but) — they — did not
ἐδέξαντο· γὰρ καὶ ἦσαν ὡπλισμένοι,
receive (the charge of the Greeks); for though they-were armed,
ὡς μὲν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν, ἱκανῶς πρὸς τὸ
as — among-the — mountains, sufficiently for —
ἐπιδραμεῖν καὶ φεύγειν, δὲ οὐχ
making-an-attack and (then) fleeing (retreating), — they (were) not
ἱκανῶς πρὸς δέχεσθαι τὸ εἰς χεῖρας.
sufficiently (armed) to receive (any enemy) | the to hand

32. Ἐν τούτῳ ὁ σαλπιγκτής
[hand to hand]. At this (time) the trumpeter
σημαίνει· καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι ἔφευγον
sounds (gives the signal); and the — enemy fled
πολὺ θᾶττον ἔτι, δ᾽ οἱ Ἕλληνες στρέψαντες
much faster still, but the Greeks, having-turned
τἀναντία ἔφευγον ὅτι τάχιστα
to-the-contrary (in the opposite direction), fled as fast-as-possible
διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. 33. Οἱ τινες δὲ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων,
over the river. — Some, however, of-the enemy,
αἰσθόμενοι ἔδραμον πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν
perceiving (this movement), ran back to the
ποταμὸν, καὶ τοξεύοντες ἔτρωσαν
river, and, using (their) bows, wounded (a)
ὀλίγους, δ᾽ οἱ πολλοὶ, καὶ
few (of our men), but the greater (number of them), even (when)
τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὄντων πέραν, ἦσαν ἔτι
the Greeks being (were) on-the-other-side, were still
φανεροὶ φεύγοντες. 34. Δ᾽ οἱ
evidently fleeing. But — (the troops that)

ὑπαντήσαντες, ἀνδριζόμενοι
had-come-to-meet (Xenophon), priding-themselves-on-their-manhood
καὶ προϊόντες προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ,
(courage), and advancing farther (than) — proper
πάλιν διέβησαν ὕστερον
(the occasion warranted), again crossed (the river) behind
τῶν μετὰ Ξενοφῶντος· καὶ τινες τούτων
— (those) with Xenophon; and some of-these
ἐτρώθησαν.
were wounded (by the Carduchi).

CHAPTER IV.

The Greeks enter Armenia, pass the sources of the Tigris, and arrive at the Teleboas. They make a treaty with Tiribazus, the governor of the province, and discover his insincerity.

1. Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, συνταξά-
When indeed they-had-crossed, (and) having-drawn-themselves-
μενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας, ἐπορεύ-
up-in-order, about (the) middle of (the) day (noon) they-
θησαν, οὐ μεῖον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγας, διὰ τῆς
proceeded, not less than five parasangs, through —
Ἀρμενίας, ἅπαν πεδίον καὶ
Armenia, (the country being) entirely (a) plain, and (having)
γηλόφους λείους· γὰρ ἦσαν οὐ κῶμαι ἐγγὺς
hills of-gentle-ascent; for there-were not (no) villages near
τοῦ ποταμοῦ διὰ τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς
the river, on-account-of the wars, (namely,) — (those)
πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους. 2. Δὲ εἰς
with (against) the Carduchi. But (the village) at
ἣν κώμην ἀφίκοντο ἦν τε μεγάλη, καὶ
which (village) they-(at length)-arrived was not-only large. but-also
εἶχε βασίλειον τῷ σατραπῃ, καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς
had (contained) (a) palace for-the satrap, and upon —
πλείσταις οἰκίαις ἐπῆσαν τύρσεις·
most (of the) houses there-were towers; and

ἐπιτήδεια δ' ἦν δαψιλῆ. 3. Ἐντεῦθεν δ'
provisions indeed were abundant. Thence —

ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμὸς, δέκα
they-proceeded two days'-march, (a distance of) ten

παρασάγγας, μέχρι ὑπερῆλθον τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ
parasangs, until they-passed-beyond the sources of-the

ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν
river Tigris. Thence — they-proceeded

τρεῖς σταθμοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα παρασάγγας
three days'-march, (a distance of) fifteen parasangs,

ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Τηλεβόαν. Οὗτος δ' ἦν
to the river Teleboas. This (river) — was

μὲν καλὸς, δ' οὐ μέγας· δ' ἦσαν πολλαὶ κῶμαι
indeed beautiful, but not large; and there-were many villages

περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν. 4. Δὲ ὁ οὗτος
along — (both banks of this) river. And — this

τόπος ἐκαλεῖτο Ἀρμενία
place (part of the country) was-called Armenia, (that, namely,)

ἣ πρὸς ἑσπέραν. Δ'
which (was) towards (the) west (Western Armenia). And (the)

ὕπαρχος αὐτῆς ἦν Τηρίβαζος, ὁ καὶ γενόμενος
lieutenant-governor of-it was Teribazus, who even had-become

φίλος βασιλεῖ καὶ ὁπότε παρείη
(was an intimate) friend to (the) king, and when he-might-be-

οὐδεὶς ἄλλος ἀνέβαλλε βασιλέα ἐπὶ
(was)-present, no-one else put (the) king on

τὸν ἵππον. 5. Οὗτος
(assisted him to mount) — (his) horse. This (person)

προσήλασεν ἔχων ἱππέας,
(now) came-forward (rode up) having (a body of) cavalry (with

καὶ προπέμψας ἑρμηνέα εἶπεν ὅτι
him), and having-sent-forward (an) interpreter to-say (said) that

βούλοιτο διαλεχθῆναι τοῖς ἄρχουσι. Ἔδοξε
he-wished to-have-spoken-(to speak)-with the commanders. It-seemed

δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀκοῦσαι. Καὶ προσ-
indeed (best) to-the generals to-hear (him). And ad-

ελθόντες εἰς ἐπήκοον ἠρώτων τί θέλοι.
vancing within hearing (distance), they-inquired what he-might-wish

6. Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν, ὅτι βούλοιτο
(wanted). Who — (then) said (he replied) that he-wished

σπείσασθαι, ἐφ' ᾧ μήτε
to-make-a-treaty (with them), | on which [on the condition] (that) neither

αὐτὸς ἀδικεῖν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, μήτε ἐκείνους
he-himself should-injure the Greeks, nor (that) they

καίειν τὰς οἰκίας, τε
(in turn) (the Greeks) should-burn the houses, also (that they might)

λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσων δέοιντο.
take — provisions (*of*)-as-much-as they-wanted (re-

Ταῦτα ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς,
quired). These (proposals) seemed (agreeable) to-the generals,

καὶ ἐσπείσαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις.
and they-made-a-treaty on these (terms).

7. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ πεδίου
Thence indeed they-proceeded through (the) plain

τρεῖς σταθμοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα παρα-
three days'-march, (a distance of) fifteen para-

σάγγας· καὶ Τηρίβαζος παρηκολούθει, ἔχων τὴν
sangs; and Teribazus followed, | having the

δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ, ἀπέχων
force of-himself [with his own troops], (and) being-distant (keep-

ὡς δέκα σταδίους· καὶ ἀφίκοντο
ing at a distance of) about ten stadia; and they-arrived

εἰς βασίλεια, καὶ πολλὰς κώμας
at (came to) (a) palace, (with) — many villages

πέριξ μεστάς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτη-
round-about (it), filled-with much (an abundance of) — pro-

δείων. 8. Δ' αὐτῶν στρατοπεδευομένων
visions. But (while) they having-(were)-encamped,

γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς πολλὴ χιών·
there-happened (fell) in-the night much (a great quantity of) snow;

καὶ ἕωθεν ἔδοξε διασκηνῆσαι τὰς
and in-the-morning it-seemed-best to-distribute-in quarters the

τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς κατὰ τὰς
troops and the generals among the (neighboring)
κώμας· γὰρ οὐ ἑώρων οὐδένα πολέμιον,
villages; for they-did not see (*no*) (any) enemy,
καὶ ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς
and it-seemed to-be safe on-account-of the quantity of —
χιόνος. 9. Ἐνταῦθα εἶχον τὰ
snow. Here they-had (found all kinds of) —
ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν ἀγαθά, ἱερεῖα,
provisions such-as are good, (namely,) | victims [animals
σῖτον, εὐώδεις παλαιοὺς οἴνους, ἀστα-
used for food], corn, fragrant old wines, dried-
φίδας, παντοδαπά ὄσπρια. Τινὲς δὲ τῶν
grapes, all-kinds (of) pulse (vegetables). Some — of —
ἀποσκεδαννυμένων ἀπὸ
(the soldiers) scattered-about (who had strolled away) from
τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἔλεγον, ὅτι κατίδοιεν
the camp said (brought back word) that they-saw
στράτευμα, καὶ πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοιτο
(an) army, and (that) many fires appeared (had
νύκτωρ. 10. Ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς
been visible) during-the-night. It-seemed indeed to-the
στρατηγοῖς οὐκ εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς διασκη-
generals not to-be safe (for the troops) to-quarter-
νοῦν, ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν τὸ στράτευμα
apart, and (they resolved) to-bring the (whole) army
πάλιν. Ἐντεῦθεν συνῆλθον· γὰρ ἐδόκει
(together) again. Thereupon they-assembled; for it-seemed
καὶ συναιθριάζειν. 11. Δ' αὐτῶν νυκτερευ-
now to-be-clearing-up. But (as) they (were) passing-the-
όντων ἐνταῦθα ἄπλετος χιὼν ἐπιπίπτει,
night here, (a) vast-quantity (of) snow falls (upon them),
ὥστε ἀπέκρυψε καὶ τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους
so-that it-covered both the arms and the men
κατακειμένους· καὶ ἡ χιὼν συνεπόδισε
lying (on the ground); and the snow benumbed

τὰ ὑποζύγια· καὶ ἦν πολὺς ὄκ-
(cramped) the baggage-cattle; and there-was much (they were) very-re-
νος ἀνίστασθαι· γὰρ ἡ χιὼν ἐπιπεπτωκυῖα
luctant to-rise; for the snow having-fallen-on (them)
κατακειμένων ἦν ἀλεεινὸν
lying-down was warm (served to keep them warm), (provided)
μὴ παραῤῥουεῖν ὅτῳ. 12. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν
it-did not fall-off from-them. When, however, Xenophon
ἐτόλμησε ἀναστὰς γυμνὸς
| dared (had the courage) having-risen-up naked (undressed)
σχίζειν ξύλα, τάχ' ἂν καὶ
[without his outer garments] to-split wood, quickly — then
τις ἄλλος ἀναστὰς ἀφελόμενος
some other-one (some one else), having-risen-up (and) having-taken
ἐκείνου ἔσχιζεν. Ἐκ τούτου
(the wood away) from-him, split (it) (himself). After this
δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες ἔκαιον πῦρ καὶ
— also the others, having-risen, lighted (the) fires and
ἐχρίοντο. 13. Γὰρ εὑρίσκετο πολὺ χρῖσμα
anointed-themselves. For they-found much ointment
ἐνταῦθα, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο ἀντ' ἐλαίου,
there, which they-used instead-of oil, (it being made of)
σύειον, καὶ σησάμινον, καὶ ἀμυγδάλινον ἐκ τῶν
hog's-lard, and sesame, and almonds of the
πικρῶν, καὶ τερεβίνθινον. Δὲ ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν
bitter (kind), and turpentine. And of — these
τούτων καὶ μύρον εὑρίσκετο.
same (substances) also an-odoriferous-unguent was-found.

14. Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν εἶναι διασκη-
After this it-seemed again to-be necessary-to-be-
νητέον εἰς τὰς κώμας
dispersed-in-quarters (they resolved to lodge) in the villages
εἰς στέγας. Ἔνθα δὴ οἱ στρατιῶται ᾔεσαν
under shelter. Then indeed the soldiers went (off)
σὺν πολλῇ κραυγῇ καὶ ἡδονῇ ἐπὶ τὰς στέγας,
with much shouting and delight to the shelter-under-

καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· δὲ ὅσοι, ὅτε
roofs (houses), and (to) — provisions; but as-many-as, when

πρότερον ἀπῆεσαν ἐνέ-
(those who) before they-departed (from the villages), (had) set-

πρησαν τὰς οἰκίας ὑπὸ ἀτασθαλίας ἐδίδοσαν
fire-to the houses through folly | gave

δίκην σκηνοῦντες
justice [paid the penalty] (by) encamping (being obliged to encamp)

κακῶς. **15.** Ἐντεῦθεν ἔπεμψαν
uncomfortably (in the open air). Thence they-sent

νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην Τεμενίτην, δόντες
at-night Democrates (of) Temenos, giving (him a de-

ἄνδρας, ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, ἔνθα οἱ
tachment of) men, to the mountains, where — (those)

ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι ἔφασαν καθορᾶν
having-straggled (from the camp) said (that) they-saw

τὰ πυρά· γὰρ οὗτος ἐδόκει
the fires; (they selected him) for (because) this (he) seemed

καὶ ἤδη πρότερον ἀλη-
(was thought) also already before (on former occasions) to-

θεῦσαι πολλὰ τοιαῦτα, τε
have-truly-reported many such (facts), (reporting) not-only

τὰ ὄντα ὡς ὄντα, καὶ τὰ
the (things) being (that were) as being (existing), but-also the

μὴ ὄντα ὡς οὐκ ὄντα.
(things) not being (that were not) as not being (existing).

16. Δὲ πορευθεὶς, ἔφη μὲν οὐκ ἰδεῖν
And having-gone he-said (that he) indeed did not see

τὰ πυρὰ, δὲ ἦκεν ἄγων ἄνδρα
the fires, but he-came (returned) bringing (with him) (a) man

συλλαβὼν, ἔχοντα Περ-
having-captured (he had captured), having (who had) (a) Per-

σικόν τόξον καὶ φαρέτραν, καὶ σάγαριν
sian bow and quiver, and (a) short-battle-axe

οἵανπερ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν. **17.** Ἐρωτώμενος
such-as the Amazons have. Being-asked

δὲ ποδαπὸς εἴη, ἔφη μὲν εἶναι
— of-what-country he-might-be (was), he-said indeed (that) he-was (a)
Πέρσης, δὲ πορεύεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος
Persian, and (that) he-was-going from the army
Τηριβάζου, ὅπως λάβοι ἐπιτήδεια· δ' οἱ
of-Teribazus, that he-might-procure provisions; and —
ἠρώτων αὐτόν, τε ὁπόσον τὸ στράτευμα
they-asked him, not-only how-great (large) the army
εἴη, καὶ ἐπὶ τίνι συνειλεγμένον.
might-be (was), but-also for what (purpose) it-had-been-assembled.

18. Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν, ὅτι Τηρίβαζος εἴη ἔχων τε
And — (he) said | that Teribazus might-be having not-only
τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ . καὶ
the force of-himself (had not only his own troops), but-also
Χάλυβας καὶ Ταόχους μισθοφόρους· δὲ ἔφη
Chalybian and Taochan mercenaries; and he-said (that)
αὐτὸν παρεσκευάσθαι ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους,
he was-prepared at the crossing of-the mountain,
ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς, ᾗπερ μοναχῇ εἴη πορεία,
in the narrow (part) by-which alone there-was (a) passage
ὡς ἐνταῦθα ἐπιθησόμενον
(through which lay their only road), that there he-was-about-attacking
τοῖς Ἕλλησιν. 19. Ἔδοξε τοῖς
(was intending to attack) the Greeks. It-seemed (best) to-the
στρατηγοῖς ἀκούσασι ταῦτα συναγαγεῖν τὸ
generals (after) having-heard this to-collect-together the
στράτευμα· καὶ εὐθὺς καταλιπόντες φύλακας,
army; and immediately leaving sentinels
καὶ Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον στρατηγὸν
(a guard) with Sophænetus (the) Stymphalian, (as) commander
ἐπὶ τοῖς μένουσι, ἐπορεύοντο,
over — (those) remaining (who remained) (behind), they-advance,
ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνα τὸν ἄνθρωπον ἁλόντα.
having (taking) (as) guide the man captured
20. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑπερέβαλλον
(they had captured). When, however, they-crossed-(were

τὰ ὄρη, οἱ πελτασταὶ προϊόντες
crossing)-over the mountains, the targeteers, going-before (ahead)
καὶ κατιδόντες τὸ στρατόπεδον
and having-(discovered) the camp (of the enemy),
οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὁπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἀνακρα-
did not wait-for the heavy-armed-men, but having raised-
γόντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 21. Δ' οἱ
a-shout ran to-(attack) the camp. But the
βάρβαροι ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον, οὐχ
barbarians, hearing the noise, did not
ὑπέμειναν, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον· ὅμως δὲ καὶ
remain (receive them), but fled; but — —
τινες τῶν βαρβάρων ἀπέθανον· καὶ ἵπποι
some of-the barbarians were-killed; and horses
ἥλωσαν εἰς εἴκοσι, καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ
were-taken, about twenty (in number), and (also) the ten'
ἡ Τηριβάζου ἑάλω, καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ
— of-Teribazus was-taken, and in it (there were found
εἶναι ἀργυρόποδες κλῖναι καὶ ἐκπώματα,
to-be silver-footed couches and drinking-cups,
καὶ οἱ φάσκοντες
and — (some prisoners) saying (who said) (that they were)
ἀρτοκόποι, καὶ οἱ οἰνοχόοι. 22. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ
bakers, and — cup-bearers. When indeed
οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν ἐπύθοντο ταῦτα,
the commanders of-the heavy-armed-men heard these
ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι
(what had taken place), it-seemed to-them (best) to-depart (return)
τὴν ταχίστην ἐπὶ τὸ
[the fastest [as quickly as possible] to — (their own)
στρατόπεδον, μὴ τις ἐπίθεσις γένοιτο
camp, lest any (some) attack might-happen (might
τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις.
be made) to — (upon) (those) having-been-left-behind (who were left
Καὶ εὐθὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι τῇ
there). And immediately, having-recalled (the men) by-the (sound

σάλπιγγι ἀπῆεσαν, καὶ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ
of the) trumpet, they-departed, and they-arrived at —
στρατόπεδον αὐθημερὸν.
(their) camp the-same-day.

CHAPTER V.

The Greeks march through an uninhabited tract of country, suffering greatly from cold winds, snow, and want of provisions. At length they reach some well stored villages, where they rest seven days.

1. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐδόκει εἶναι πορευτέον,
But on-the next-day it-was-thought to-be necessary-to-proceed
ὅπῃ δύναιντο τάχιστα, πρὶν ἢ
in-what-way they-could most-speedily (as fast as possible), before that
τὸ στράτευμα συλλεγῆναι πάλιν,
the army (of the enemy) was-(could be)-collected again,
καὶ καταλαβεῖν τὰ στενά. Δ'
and to-have-seized (get possession of) the narrow-passes. And
εὐθὺς συσκευασάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο διὰ
immediately, having-collected-their-baggage, they-proceeded through
πολλῆς χιόνος ἔχοντες πολλούς
much (deep) snow, having (taking with them) many
ἡγεμόνας· καὶ αὐθημερὸν ὑπερβαλόντες τὸ ἄκρον,
guides; and on-the-same-day, having-passed-over the height
ἐφ' ᾧ Τηρίβαζος ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι,
on which Teribazus intended to-attack (them),
κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο. 2. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύ-
they-encamped. Hence they-pro-
θησαν τρεῖς σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους
ceeded three days'-march (through a) desert (tract of country),
πεντεκαίδεκα παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν
(a distance of) fifteen parasangs, to the
ποταμόν Εὐφράτην, καὶ διέβαινον αὐτὸν
river Euphrates, and they-crossed-over it
βρεχόμενοι πρὸς τὸν ὀμφαλόν. Δὲ ἐλέγοντο
being-wet (only) to the navel. And they-say

αἱ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ οὐ εἶναι πρόσω.
the sources of-it not to-be (were not) far (off).

3. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ πολλῆς χιόνος καὶ
Hence they-advanced through much snow and
πεδίου τρεῖς σταθμούς, πεντε-
(through a) plain three days'-march, (a distance of) fif-
καίδεκα παρασάγγας. Ὁ δὲ τρίτος
teen parasangs. The — third (day's march)
ἐγένετο χαλεπός καὶ βορρᾶς ἄνεμος
was difficult (painful), as (the) north wind
ἔπνει ἐναντίος, παντάπασιν ἀποκαίων
blew against-them-in-their-faces, completely parching-up
πάντα, καὶ πηγνὺς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 4. Ἔνθα
everything, and numbing the men. Then
δή τις τῶν μάντεων εἶπε σφαγιάσασθαι
indeed some-one of-the augurs said (that) it-was-to-be-sacrificed (they
τῷ ἀνέμῳ, καὶ σφαγιάζεται·
should sacrifice) to-the wind, and a-sacrifice-was-accordingly-offered;
καὶ δὴ τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος ἔδοξε περι-
and indeed the violence of-the wind seemed evi-
φανῶς πᾶσι λῆξαι. Δὲ τὸ βάθος τῆς χιόνος ἦν
dently to-all to-cease. And the depth of-the snow was (a)
ὀργυιά· ὥστε καὶ πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων καὶ τῶν
fathom; so-that even many of-the baggage-cattle and —
ἀνδραπόδων ἀπώλετο, καὶ ὡς τριάκοντα τῶν
slaves perished, and about thirty of-the
στρατιωτῶν. 5. Δὲ διεγένοντο τὴν νύκτα καίοντες
soldiers. And they-passed the night burning
πῦρ· δ' ἦν πολλά ξύλα ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ
fires; for there-was much wood in the place-where-they-halted;
οἱ δὲ προσιόντες ὀψὲ εἶχον οὐ ξύλα.
— (those), however, coming late had (could get) no wood.
Οἱ οὖν ἥκοντες πάλαι καὶ
For — (those), therefore, coming (who had arrived) before them and
καίοντες τὸ πῦρ οὐ τοὺς
burning (had kindled) the fire (would) not (let) — (those)

ὀψίζοντας προσίεσαν πρὸς τὸ πῦρ, εἰ μὴ μετα-
coming-late approach to the fire, unless they-
δοῖεν αὐτοῖς πυροὺς, ἤ τι ἄλλο βρωτόν, εἴτι
shared with-them wheat, or anything else eatable, if-any-
ἔχοιεν. 6. Ἔνθα δὴ μετεδί-
thing they-might-have (if they had anything). So-then indeed they-
δοσαν ἀλλήλοις ὧν ἕκαστοι εἶχον.
shared with-one-another what each had. (In the places)
Ἔνθα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο, τῆς χιόνος
where indeed the fire was-burning, the snow (being)
διατηκομένης, ἐγίγοντο μεγάλοι βόθροι
melted, there-became (were formed) large pits
ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ δάπεδον· οὗ δὴ παρῆν
until (reaching) to the ground; where indeed it-was-allowed
μετρεῖν τὸ βάθος τῆς χιόνος.
(they had an opportunity) to-measure the depth of-the snow.
7. Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύοντο τὴν ὅλην
Hence — they-proceeded (during) the whole-of-the
ἐπιοῦσαν ἡμέραν διὰ χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν
following day through snow, and many of-the
ἀνθρώπων [1]ἐβουλιμίασαν. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὀπισ-
men contracted-the-"*bulimia*." But Xenophon, com-
θοφυλακῶν, καὶ καταλαμβάνων τοὺς
manding-the-rear, and finding (meeting with) — (those)
τῶν ἀνθρώπων πίπτοντας ἠγνόει ὅ τι
of-the men (who had) fallen-down (with it), knew-not what
τὸ πάθος εἴη. 8. Δὲ ἔπειδή τις τῶν
the disease might-be (was). But when some-one of — (those)
ἐμπείρων εἶπε αὐτῷ ὅτι σαφῶς βουλιμιῶσι,
acquainted-with(it) told him that evidently they-had-the-"*bulimia*,"
κἂν φάγωσι τι, ἀναστήσονται,
and-if they-eat something (had something to eat) they-would-get-up,

---

[1] Ἐβουλιμίασαν. This is said to be "a disease in which the patient frequently craves for food, loses the use of his limbs, falls down, turns pale, feels his extremities become cold, his stomach oppressed, and his pulse feeble." Here, however, it seems to mean little more than a faintness from long fasting.

περιιὼν περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, εἴ πού ὁρῴη τι
going-about among the baggage-cattle, if anywhere he-saw anything
βρωτὸν ἢ ποτόν, διεδίδου, καὶ διέπεμπε
eatable or drinkable, he-distributed (it), and he-sent-around
τοὺς δυναμένους παρατρέχειν,
— (those) being-able (who were able) to-run-about,
διδόντας τοῖς βουλιμιῶσι. Ἐπειδὴ
giving (it) to — (those) having-(suffering from)-"*bulimia*." When
δὲ ἐμφάγοιεν τι, ἀνίσταντο
(as soon as) — they-might-have-(had)-eaten anything, they-stood-up
καὶ ἐπορεύοντο. 9. Δὲ πορευομένων Χειρί-
and marched-along. But, proceeding (on their march), Cheiri-
σοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ κνέφας ἀφικνεῖται πρὸς κώμην,
sophus indeed about dark arrives at (a) village,
καὶ καταλαμβάνει πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ
and finds at the spring in-front of-the
ἐρύματος γυναῖκας καὶ κόρας ἐκ τῆς κώμης
rampart (some) women and girls from the village
ὑδροφορούσας. 10. Αὗται ἠρώτων αὐτοὺς
carrying-water. These (the women) asked them
τίνες εἶεν. Ὁ δ' ἑρμηνεὺς εἶπε
who they-might-be (were). And the interpreter said (replied) in
Περσιστί, ὅτι πορεύονται παρὰ βασιλέως
(the) Persian-language that they-were-going from (the) king
πρὸς τὸν σατράπην. Αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο, ὅτι
to the satrap. — (They) — replied that
εἴη οὐκ ἐνταῦθα, ἀλλ' ἀπέχει ὅσον
he-was not there, but was-distant as-much-as (about) (a)
παρασάγγην. Ὁ δ' οἱ ἐπεὶ ἦν ὀψὲ συνεισέρ-
parasang. But — (they), since it-was late, enter-(went)-
χονται σὺν ταῖς ὑδροφόροις εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα πρὸς
together with the water-carriers into the fort to
τὸν κωμάρχην. 11. Ἐνταῦθα οὖν
the head-man-(magistrate)-of-the-village. Here therefore,
μὲν Χειρίσοφος καὶ ὅσοι τοῦ στρατεύματος
indeed, Cheirisophus and as-many of-the army

ἐδυνηθήσαν ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο· δ'
(as) were-able (to-come up) encamped; but
οἱ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν μὴ
— (those) of-the other soldiers that-were not
δυνάμενοι διατελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν ἐνυκτέρευσαν
able to-have-completed the journey passed-the-night
ἄσιτοι καὶ ἄνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες τῶν
without-food and without fire; and there some of-the
στρατιωτῶν ἀπώλοντο. 12. Δὲ τινὲς τῶν πολεμίων
soldiers perished. And some of-the enemy-too
συνειλεγμένοι ἐφείποντο, καὶ ἥρπαζον τὰ
being-collected-together pursued (the rear), and seized —
τῶν ὑποζυγίων μὴ δυνάμενα,
(some) of-the baggage-cattle not being-(that were not)-able (to
καὶ ἐμάχοντο ἀλλήλοις περὶ
proceed), and fought with-one-another for (the possession of)
αὐτῶν. Δὲ καὶ ἐλείποντο τῶν στρατιωτῶν
them. And also there-were-left-behind of-the soldiers
τε οἱ διεφθαρμένοι τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς
both — (those) having-been-ruined (as respects) the eyes
ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος, τε οἱ
(having lost their sight) by the snow, | and — (those)
ἀποσεσηπότες τοὺς δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν
having-been-mortified (as respects) the fingers of-the feet
ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους·
by the cold [those who had their toes frozen by the cold].
13. Δὲ μὲν ἦν ἐπικούρημα τοῖς
But indeed it-was (found to be a) defence (relief) to-the
ὀφθαλμοῖς τῆς χιόνος, εἴ τις πορεύοιτο
eyes from-the snow, if any-one (when) he-proceeded (on)
ἔχων τι μέλαν πρὸ τῶν
(the march) (*having*) (placed) something black before the (his)
ὀφθαλμῶν, δὲ τῶν ποδῶν, εἴ τις
eyes, and (a relief) of-(to)-the feet, if any-one
κινοῖτο, καὶ μηδέποτε ἔχοι
moved-about (kept constantly in motion) and never might-have

ἡσυχίαν, καὶ εἴ τὴν νύκτα ὑπολύ-
(allowed himself no) rest, and if at — night he-took-
οιτο. 14. Δὲ ὅσοι ἐκοιμῶντο ὑποδε-
off-his-shoes. But (as many) as slept having-
δεμένοι, οἱ ἱμάντες εἰσεδύοντο εἰς
(with)-their-shoes-on, the straps worked into (penetrated)
τοὺς πόδας καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγνυντο·
the feet, and the soles were-frozen-about
γὰρ καὶ, ἐπειδὴ τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα
(them); for indeed, when — (their) old shoes
ἐπήλιπε, πεποιημένοι ἦσαν
(had) failed (them), they-had-made (for themselves)
καρβάτινας ἐκ τῶν νεοδάρτων βοῶν. 15. Διὰ
rough-leather-shoes from the raw-hides of-oxen. Through
τὰς ἀνάγκας οὖν τοιαύτας τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν
— (such) necessities, therefore, as-these, some of-the soldiers
ὑπελείποντο· καὶ ἰδόντες τι μέλαν χωρίον, διὰ
were-left-behind; and seeing a black place | on-account-of
τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι αὐτόθι τὴν χιόνα,
the to-have-disappeared there (as respects) the snow (caused by
εἴκαζον τετηκέ-
the disappearance of the snow), they-conjectured (that it) had-(must
ναι· καὶ ἐτετήκει διὰ τινὰ
have)-melted; and it-had-melted through some (from the effect of a)
κρήνην, ἣ ἦν ἀτμίζουσα πλησίον ἐν νάπῃ.
spring, which was sending-up-a-vapor near-by in (a) woody-hollow.
Ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι ἐκάθηντο, καὶ ἔφασαν
There turning-aside they-sat-down, and said
οὐ πορεύεσθαι. 16. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν
(that they would) not proceed (farther). — But Xenophon
ἔχων ὀπισθοφύλακας, ὡς
having (who was with the) rear-guard, as (soon as)
ἤσθετο ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ
he-perceived (heard) (this), begged of-them by-every art and
μηχανῇ μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, λέγων, ὅτι
means not to-be-left-behind, saying (telling them) that

πολλοὶ πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι ἕπονται,
many (of the) enemy being-assembled-together were-following
καὶ τελευτῶν ἐχαλέπαινε. Οἱ
(them), and finishing (at last) he-grew-angry. — (They)
δὲ ἐκέλευον σχάζειν· γὰρ ἂν
indeed requested (him) to-kill (them); for (as) they — were
οὐ δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι. 17. Ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε
not able to-advance. Then it-seemed
εἶναι κράτιστον φοβῆσαι τοὺς
(to him) to-be the-best (thing) to-have-scared (to scare) the
πολεμίους ἑπομένους, εἴ τις δύναιτο μὴ
enemy pursuing-them, if anything could-be-done (if possible) lest
ἐπιπέσοιεν τοῖς κάμνουσι. Καὶ μὲν
they-should-fall-upon — (those) suffering-from-exhaustion. And indeed
ἦν ἤδη σκότος, οἱ δὲ προσήεσαν
it-was now dark, (and) — they (the enemy) indeed were-advancing
πολλῷ θορύβῳ διαφερόμενοι ἀμφὶ ὧν
with-much noise, disputing about (the booty) which
εἶχον. 18. Ἔνθα δὴ μὲν οἱ ὀπισθο-
they-had (taken). Then — indeed — (those of the) rear-
φύλακες ἅτε ὑγιαίνοντες,
guard as being-in-good-condition (who were not disabled),
ἐξαναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους·
starting-up, ran (rushed) toward the enemy;
δ' οἱ κάμνοντες, ἀνακραγόντες ὅσον μέγισ-
while the exhausted (men), | having-shouted as-much as-the-
τον ἠδύναντο,
greatest they-could [shouting as loud as they possibly could],
ἔκρουσαν τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ δόρατα. Οἱ
struck the shields against the spears. The
πολέμιοι δὲ δείσαντες, ἧκαν ἑαυτοὺς
enemy, indeed, having-become-alarmed, threw themselves
κατὰ τῆς χιόνος εἰς τὴν νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς
into the snow in the woody-hollow, and no-one (of them)
ἔτι ἐφθέγξατο οὐδαμοῦ.
afterwards made-a-noise anywhere.

19. Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ,
And Xenophon indeed and — (those) with him,
εἰπόντες τοῖς ἀσθενοῦσιν, ὅτι
telling — (those) being-weak-and-helpless (the sick men) that
τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τινες ἥξουσί ἐπ' αὐτούς,
on-the next-day some-one would-come to them (their
πορευόμενοι, πρὶν διελ-
relief), proceeding (on their march, but) before they-had-gone-
θεῖν τέτταρα στάδια ἐντυγχάνουσιν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ
more-than four stadia they-found on the road
τοῖς στρατιώταις ἀναπαυομένοις ἐπὶ τῆς
— (other) soldiers resting on (in) the
χιόνος ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις, καὶ οὐδὲ
snow (and) having-been-covered-up (by it), and neither had
οὐδεμία φυλακὴ καθειστήκει, καὶ
(*no*) (any) guard been-placed-(stationed)-over (them), and
ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. Δ' οἱ ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ
they-roused them (up). And — they-said that — (those)
ἔμπροσθεν οὐχ ὑποχωροῖεν.
before did not make-progress (were not moving forward).

20. Ὁ δὲ παριών, καὶ παραπέμπων
— (Xenophon), indeed, going-past (them), and sending-on
τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους τῶν πελταστῶν, ἐκέλευε
the strongest of-the targeteers, ordered (them)
σκέψασθαι τί εἴη τὸ κωλῦον.
to-see-and-ascertain what might-be the hindrance (prevented them from
advancing). — They indeed brought-back-word that the whole
army might-be thus (was in the same manner) taking-
rest.

Οἱ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον, ὅτι τὸ ὅλον
στράτευμα οὕτως ἀναπαύ-
οιτο. 21. Καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἐνταῦθα
And — (those) with Xenophon then
ηὐλίσθησαν αὐτοῦ ἄνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἄδειπνοι,
took-up-their-quarters there, without fire and supperless,
καταστησάμενοι φυλακὰς οἵας ἐδύναντο.
stationing (such) guards as they-were-able.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν πρὸς ἡμέραν, ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν
When indeed it-was towards (near) day, — — Xenophon,
πέμψας τοὺς νεωτάτους πρὸς τοὺς
having-sent the youngest (of his men) to — (those)
ἀσθενοῦντας ἐκέλευεν ἀναστήσαντας
being-(who were)-weak-and-sick, ordered (them), having-roused
ἀναγκάζειν προϊέναι. 22. Ἐν δὲ
(them) up, to-compel (them) to-go-forward. At —
τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει τῶν
this (juncture) Cheirisophus sends (some) of — (his people)
ἐκ τῆς κώμης σκεψομένους πῶς οἱ τελευταῖοι
from the village | about-seeing (to see) how the last
ἔχοιεν. Δ' οἱ
might-have (themselves) [to see how the rear was faring]. But —
ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες
(the young men sent by Xenophon), rejoiced (glad) (at) seeing (to
παρέδοσαν τούτοις ἀσθενοῦντας
see) (them), gave-(handed)-over to-these (the) weak-and-sick
κομίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, αὐτοὶ δὲ
to-convey to the camp, (while) they-themselves —
ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ πρὶν διεληλυθέναι εἴκοσι
went-forward, and before they-had-completed (gone) twenty
στάδια ἦσαν πρὸς τῇ κώμῃ ἔνθα
stadia they-were (found themselves) at the village where
Χειρίσοφος ηὐλίζετο. 23. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
(in which) Cheirisophus was-quartered. When indeed
συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε
they-got-together among-(joined company with)-one-another, it-seemed
εἶναι ἀσφαλές σκηνοῦν τὰς τάξεις κατὰ τὰς
to-be safe to-quarter the troops up-and-down the
κώμας. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἔμενεν αὐτοῦ,
villages. And Cheirisophus indeed remained there (where
οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ διαλαχόντες κώμας
he was), the others indeed, having-drawn-lots (for the) villages
ἃς ἑώρων, ἐπορεύοντο, ἕκαστοι ἔχοντες τοὺς
which they-saw, proceeded, | each having the

ἑαυτῶν.
(men) of-themselves (went to their respective quarters with their men).

24. Ἔνθα δὴ Πολυβώτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχαγὸς
Here, indeed, Polybotes, (an) Athenian captain,
ἐκέλευσεν ἑαυτὸν ἀφιέναι·
requested (that) they-would-allow him to-go-away (leave of
absence); | and taking καὶ λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζώνους,
the well-girt [the most active of his
men], running θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κώμην, ἣν Ξενοφῶν
(hastening) to the village, which Xenophon
εἰλήχει, καταλαμβάνει
obtained-by-lot (had been allotted), he-surprises (captures)
πάντας τοὺς κωμήτας ἔνδον; καὶ
all the inhabitants-of-the-village at-home (in their houses), and
τὸν κωμάρχην, καὶ ἑπτακαίδεκα πώλους
the village-chief, and seventeen colts (that were
τρεφομένους εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ, καὶ
being) bred for (a) tribute to (the) king, and
τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου γεγαμημένην
the daughter of-the village-chief married (the)
ἐνάτην ἡμέραν· δ' ὁ
ninth day (who had been married but nine days); but the
ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ᾤχετο θηράσων λαγῶς, καὶ
husband of-her had-gone-out hunting hares, and
οὐχ ἥλω ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. 25. Αἱ δ'
was not found in (any of) the villages. The —
οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα
(their) houses were underground, the — mouth
ὥσπερ φρέατος, δὲ εὐρεῖαι κάτω.
(entrance was) like (that) of (a) well, but spacious below.
Δὲ αἱ εἴσοδοι μὲν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ὀρυκταί,
And the entrances — for-the cattle (were) dug
δὲ οἱ ἄνθρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ
(into them), but the men (people) descended on

κλίμακος. Ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἷες,
ladders. In — the houses there-were goats, sheep,

βόες, ὄρνιθες, καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων· δέ πάντα τὰ
cows, fowls, and the young of-these; and all the

κτήνη ἐτρέφοντο χιλῷ ἔνδον. 26. Δὲ
cattle were-nourished (fed) on-hay within (the houses). And

καὶ ἦσαν πυροί, καὶ κριθαί, καὶ ὄσπρια,
also there-was wheat, and barley, and legumes (vegetables),

καὶ κρίθινος οἶνος ἐν κρατῆρσι· δὲ καὶ αἱ
and barley wine (beer) in large-bowls; and also — (the)

κριθαὶ αὐταὶ ἐνῆσαν ἰσοχειλεῖς,
barley-grains themselves floated (in them) even-with-the-brims

καὶ κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο, οἱ
(of the vessels), and reeds (also) lay-in (them), — (some)

μὲν μείζους, δὲ οἱ ἐλάττους, οὐκ ἔχοντες
indeed larger, but — (others) smaller, (and) not having

γόνατα· 27. δ' ἔδει ὁπότε τις
(without) joints; and it-was-proper when any-one

διψῴη λαβόντα τούτους εἰς τὸ στόμα
might-be-(was)-thirsty, having-taken these into — (his) mouth,

μίζειν. Καὶ ἦν πάνυ ἄκρατος, εἰ μή
to-suck. And it-(the liquor)-was very strong, | if not

τις ἐπιχέοι ὕδωρ· καὶ τὸ πῶμα ἦν
[unless] some-one poured-into (it) water; and the drink was

πάνυ ἡδὺ συμμαθόντι.
very pleasant to-one-accustomed-to (it).

28. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐποιήσατο τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς
— And Xenophon made the ruler of—

ταύτης κώμης σύνδειπνον, καὶ ἐκέλευε
this village his-guest-at-supper (sup with him), and he-exhorted

αὐτὸν θαῤῥεῖν, λέγων, ὅτι οὔτε
(told) him to-be-of-good-courage, saying that he-should not

στερήσοιτο τῶν τέκνων, τε ἀπίασιν ἀντεμπ-
be-deprived of— (his) children, and (when) they-depart they-

λήσαντες τὴν οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ
would-be-about-filling the house of-himself (would fill his house)

τῶν ἐπιτηδείων, ἢν φαίνηται
with — provisions (in return for what they took), if he-show-himself

ἐξηγησάμενος τι
(as) having-been-the-leader (should prove himself the author of) some

ἀγαθόν τῷ στρατεύματι, ἔστ' ἂν γέγωνται
good (service to) the army, until they might get

ἐν ἄλλῳ ἔθνει. 29. Ὁ δὲ ταῦτα ὑπισχ-
with (should reach) another tribe. — And this he-

νεῖτο, καὶ, φιλοφρονούμενος,
promised, and, being-kindly-disposed (to show his good-will),

ἔφρασεν οἶνον ἔνθα ἦν κατωρυγμένος.
he-told (them about some) wine where it was buried.

Οὖν μὲν ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, πάντες, οἱ στρα-
Therefore, indeed, this — night, all the sol-

τιῶται διασκηνήσαντες οὕτως, ἐκοιμή-
diers having-been-quartered-here-and-there thus, were-made-

θησαν ἐν πᾶσιν ἀφθόνοις, ἔχοντες
to-rest (rested) in (the midst of) great abundance, having

τὸν κωμάρχην ἐν φυλακῇ, καὶ τὰ τέκνα
(keeping) the village-chief under guard, and the children

αὐτοῦ ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς. 30. Δ τῇ
of-him likewise under eye (in sight). And on-the

ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κωμάρχην
next day Xenophon, taking the village-chief,

ἐπορεύετο πρὸς Χειρίσοφον· ὅπου δὲ παρίοι
went to Cheirisophus; wherever indeed he-might-

κώμην, ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς
pass-(passed)-by (a) village, he-turned-aside to (visit) —

ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, καὶ πανταχοῦ
(those) (quartered) in the villages, and everywhere

κατελάμβανε εὐωχουμένους καὶ εὐθυμουμένους,
he-found (them) feasting and enjoying-themselves,

καὶ οὐδαμόθεν ἀφίεσαν
and nowhere (from no place) did-they-allow (them) to-go-away

πρὶν παραθεῖναι ἄριστον αὐτοῖς.
before they-had-set dinner (refreshments) before them.

31. Δ' ἦν οὐκ ὅπου οὐ παρετίθεσαν
And there-was not any-place (where) they-did not set
ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτὴν τράπεζαν κρέα ἄρνεια, ἐρίφεια,
on the same table flesh (of) lamb, kid,
χοίρεια, μόσχεια, ὀρνίθεια, σὺν πολλοῖς
pork, veal, fowl, with much (plenty of)
ἄρτοις, τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις, δὲ τοῖς κριθίνοις.
bread, — (both) — wheat and — barley.

32. Ὁπότε δὲ τις φιλοφρονούμενος βούλοιτο
Whenever — any-one being-friendly-disposed | wished
προπιεῖν τῷ εἵλκεν ἐπὶ τὸν
to-drink-before to-the [to his health], he-drew (led) (him) to the
κρατῆρα, ἔνθεν ἔδει ἐπικύψαντα πίνειν
large-bowl, where it-was-necessary, having-stooped-down, to-drink
ῥοφοῦντα ὥσπερ βοῦν. Καὶ ἐδίδοσαν τῷ
sucking like (an) ox. And they-granted to-the
κωμάρχῃ λαμβάνειν ὅ τι βούλοιτο. Ὁ
village-chief to-take whatever he-might-wish (pleased). Who,
δὲ ἐδέχετο οὐδὲν ἄλλο μὲν ὅπου
however, accepted nothing else (from them, except) indeed where
δὲ ἴδοι τινα τῶν συγγενῶν ἀεὶ
— he-may-have-seen (saw) any of — (his) relatives, he always
ἐλάμβανεν πρὸς ἑαυτόν.
took (them) with him.

33. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατε-
When, however, they-came to Cheirisophus, they-
λάμβανον κἀκείνους σκηνοῦντας,
found also-these (his men feasting) (being)-in-their-quarters,
ἐστεφανωμένους στεφάνοις τοῦ ξηροῦ
crowned with-crowns (wreaths) (made) of — dry
χιλοῦ, καὶ Ἀρμενίους παῖδας σὺν ταῖς
grass (hay), and Armenian boys — (in) — (their)
βαρβαρικαῖς στολαῖς διακονοῦντας. Δὲ
barbarian dresses waiting-upon-them. And
ἐδείκνυσαν τοῖς παισὶν ὥσπερ
they-showed the boys (by signs), as-if (they were)

ἐνεοῖς ὅ τι δέοι ποιεῖν. 34. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Χειρί-
deaf-and-dumb, what they-ought to-do. When — Cheiri-
σοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἐφιλοφρονήσαντο ἀλλήλους,
sophus and Xenophon had-saluted one-another,
κοινῇ δὴ ἀνηρώτων τὸν κωμάρχην, διὰ
in-common — they-questioned (asked) the village-chief, through
τοῦ ἑρμηνέως περσίζοντος, τίς ἡ χώρα
the interpreter speaking-the-Persian-language, what the country
εἴη. Δ' ὁ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Ἀρμενία.
might-be. And who said (he replied) that (it was) Armenia.
Καὶ πάλιν ἠρώτων τίνι οἱ ἵπποι τρέφοιντο.
And again asking for-whom the horses might-be-(were)-bred.
Δ' ὁ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι δασμός βασιλεῖ· ἔφη
— — (He) said, as (a) tribute to (the) king; he-said
δὲ, τὴν πλησίον χώραν εἶναι
(added) also (that) the neighboring country was (that of the)
Χάλυβας, καὶ ἔφραζεν τὴν ὁδὸν ᾗ εἴη.
Chalybes, | and mentioned the road in-what it-might-be [told
35. Καὶ τότε μὲν
them in what direction the road lay]. And then indeed
Ξενοφῶν ᾤχετο ἄγων αὐτὸν πρὸς τοὺς οἰκέτας
Xenophon departed conducting him (back) to the family
ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ δίδωσι τῷ κωμάρχῃ
of-himself [to his own family], and he-gave to-the village-chief (the)
ἵππον ὃν εἰλήφει παλαίτερον
horse which he-had-taken, (which was) rather-old, (he)
ἀναθρέψαντι καταθῦσαι, ὅτι ἤκουσεν
having-fattened (it) to-offer-it-in-sacrifice, because he-had-heard
αὐτὸν εἶναι ἱερὸν τοῦ Ἡλίου,
(that) it was (a) victim (a sacred horse) of-the Sun,
δεδιὼς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ· γὰρ ἐκεκάκωτο ὑπὸ
having-feared lest it-might-(should)-die; for it-had-been-injured by
τῆς πορείας· αὐτὸς δὲ λαμβάνει
the journey; he — himself (however) takes (some)
τῶν πώλων, καὶ ἑκάστῳ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν
of-the colts, and to-each of-the other generals

καὶ λοχαγῶν ἔδωκε πῶλον. 36. Οἱ δ' ἵπποι ταύτῃ
and captains he-gave (a) colt. The — horses in-this

ἦσαν μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν,
(country) were smaller indeed (than those) of-the Persians,

δὲ πολύ θυμοειδέστεροι. Καὶ δὴ ἐνταῦθα ὁ
but much more-spirited. And indeed here the

κωμάρχης διδάσκει περιειλεῖν σακία περὶ τοὺς
village-chief instructs (them) to-tie little-bags about the

πόδας τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων, ὅταν ἄγωσι
feet of-the horses and of-the cattle, when they-drove

διὰ τῆς χιόνος· γὰρ ἄνευ τῶν σακίων
(them) through the snow; for without the bags

κατεδύοντο μέχρι τῆς γαστρός.
they-sunk up-to the belly.

CHAPTER VI.

The Greeks leave the villages, under conduct of a guide, who, on being struck by Cheirisophus, deserts them. After wandering through the country for seven days, they arrive at the Phasis, and in two days more at some mountains occupied by the Phasiani, Taochi, and Chalybes, whom, by skilful manœuvring, they dislodge.

1. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦν ὀγδόη ἡμέρα μὲν
When — it-was (the) eighth day he (Xenophon) indeed

παραδίδωσι τὸν ἡγεμόνα Χειρισόφῳ, δὲ
delivered-over the guide to-Cheirisophus, but

καταλείπει τοὺς οἰκέτας τῷ κωμάρχῃ,
left the members-of (his) family to-the chief-of-the-village,

πλὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἡβάσκοντος·
except — (his) son — (who was) just coming-to-(mature)-age;

δὲ παραδίδωσι τοῦτον Ἐπισθένει Ἀμφιπολίτῃ
and he-gave him-over to-Episthenes (of) Amphipolis

φυλάττειν ὅπως, εἰ ἡγήσοιτο
to-guard, (in order) that, if he (the father) should-guide

καλῶς, ἀπίοι ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον.
(them) well, he-might-return (home) having also this-one (with

Καὶ εἰσεφόρησαν εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ
him). And they-brought (carried) to the house of-him

ὡς πλεῖστα ἐδύναντο, καὶ ἀναζεύξαν-
as many-things (provisions) (as) they-could, and, having-broken-up-

τες ἐπορεύοντο. 2. Δ᾽ ὁ κωμάρχης
their-camp, they-proceeded-on-their-march. And the village-chief

λελυμένος ἡγεῖτο αὐτοῖς διὰ χιόνος· καὶ
unbound guided them through (the) snow; and

ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ Χειρίσο-
already — it-was in the third day's-march, and Cheiriso-

φος ἐχαλεπάνθη αὐτῷ ὅτι οὐκ
phus became-angry with-him that (because) he-did not

ἦγεν εἰς κώμας. Δ᾽ ὁ ἔλεγεν ὅτι
lead (them) to (some) villages. But who (he) said that

εἶεν οὐκ ἐν τῷ τούτῳ τόπῳ. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος
there-was not (any) in — this region. — And Cheirisophus

ἔπαισε αὐτὸν μὲν, δ᾽ οὐκ ἔλησε. 3. Δ᾽
(then) struck him —, but did not bind (him). | And

ἐκ τούτου ἐκεῖνος ἀποδρὰς ᾤχετο τῆς νυκτὸς,
from this he having-fled went-away (in) the night

καταλιπὼν τὸν
[on this account he ran off in the night], leaving-behind — (his)

υἱόν. Τόδε δὴ ἡ κάκωσις καὶ
son. This truly-indeed, (namely,) the ill-treatment and

ἀμέλεια τοῦ ἡγεμόνος, ἐγένετο μόνον
neglect of-the guide, was (the) only (cause of)

διάφορον Χειρισόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι ἐν τῇ
dissension (between) Cheirisophus and Xenophon on the

πορείᾳ. Δὲ Ἐπισθένης τε ἠράσθη
route (during the march). But Episthenes not-only became-fond

τοῦ παιδὸς, καὶ κομίσας
of-(conceived an affection for)-the boy, but, having-taken (him)

οἴκαδε ἐχρῆτο πιστοτάτῳ.
home, | made-use-of (him as) the-most-faithful [found him very much

4. Μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν
attached to himself]. After this (occurrence) they-proceeded

ἑπτὰ σταθμοὺς, ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας
seven days'-march, always (at the rate of) five parasangs

τῆς ἡμέρας, παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν
the (each) day, (till they came) to the river

Φᾶσιν, εὖρος πλεθριαῖον.
Phasis, (the) width (of which is) a-plethrum (100 feet).

5. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμοὺς
Hence they-advanced two days'-march, (a distance of)

δέκα παρασάγγας· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
ten parasangs; (but) at — the pass-over (the mountains)

εἰς τὸ πεδίον Χάλυβες καὶ Ταόχοι, καὶ
on-to the plain (the) Chalybes and (the) Taochi and (the)

Φασιανοί ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς. 6. Χειρί-
Phasiani had-come-(were drawn up)-to-oppose them. Cheiri-

σοφος δ', ἐπεὶ κατεῖδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ
sophus indeed, when he-saw the enemy on the

ὑπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχων
pass, ceased proceeding (halted), being-distant

εἰς τριάκοντα σταδίους, ἵνα μὴ πλησιάσῃ
about thirty stadia, that he-might not approach

τοῖς πολεμίοις ἄγων κατὰ κέρας·
the enemy (while) leading (the army) by (a) wing [in a

δὲ καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς ἄλλοις παρά-
column]; and also announced to-the other (officers) to-bring-

γειν τοὺς λόχους, ὅπως τὸ στράτευμα
up the companies, so-that the army (whole force)

γένοιτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος. 7. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ
might-get into (be formed in) line. And when the

ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦλθον, συνεκάλεσε τοὺς στρα-
rear-guard came (up), he-called-together the gen-

τηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγούς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε·
erals and captains, and spoke (to them) as-follows:

Οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι ὡς ὁρᾶτε κατέχουσι τὰς
"The — enemy, as you-see, (hold) the

ὑπερβολὰς τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ ὥρα
passes of-the mountain, (and) (it is) indeed time (for us)

βουλεύεσθαι, ὅπως ἀγωνιούμεθα ὡς κά-
to-consider how we-may-encounter (them) to-the-best-pos-

λιστα. 8. Δοκεῖ οὖν μὲν ἐμοὶ παραγ-
sible-advantage. It-seems (best), therefore, indeed to-me to-
γεῖλαι μὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι, δὲ
direct — the soldiers to-get-their-dinner, and
ἡμᾶς βουλεύεσθαι, εἴτε δοκεῖ
(that) we should-consult (in the meantime) whether it-seems (is)
ὑπερβάλλειν τὸ ὄρος εἴτε τήμερον εἴτε
(best) to-cross-over the mountain either to-day or
αὔριον. 9. Ἐμοὶ δὲ γε, ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ,
to-morrow." "To-me indeed, at-least," said — Cleanor,
δοκεῖ, ἐπὰν ἀριστήσωμεν τάχιστα
"it-seems (best), after we-have-dined as-quickly-as-possible (and)
ἐξοπλισαμένους ὡς τάχιστα ἰέναι
having-armed-ourselves as soon-as-possible, to-go (march at once)
ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. Γὰρ εἰ διατρίψομεν τὴν
against the men (enemy). For if we-shall-waste the
τήμερον ἡμέραν, τε οἱ πολέμιοι
present day (in inaction), not-only the enemy (who are)
νῦν ὁρῶντες ἡμᾶς ἔσονται θαῤῥαλεώτεροι, καὶ
now seeing us will-be (grow) more-bold, but
εἰκός ἄλλους, τούτων θαῤῥούντων,
it-is-likely (that) others, these becoming-confident-and-bold,
προσγενέσθαι πλείους.
will-join (them in) greater (numbers)."

10. Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ
After this-one (him) Xenophon said: "I,
δὲ γιγνώσκω οὕτω· εἰ μὲν ἐστὶ ἀνάγκη
indeed, think thus: if indeed it-is necessary
μάχεσθαι, τοῦτο δεῖ παρασκευάσθαι
to-fight, this ought to-be-arranged (we ought to
ὅπως ὡς μαχούμεθα κράτιστα.
arrange) how — we-may-fight to-the-best (advantage).
Εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ὑπερβάλλειν ὡς
If, indeed, we-wish (propose) to-cross-over (the mountain) as
ῥᾷστα, τοῦτο δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι σκεπτέον
easily-as-possible, this seems to-me to-be necessary-to-be-consid-

ὅπως λάβωμεν μὲν ἐλάχιστα
cred (we ought to consider) how we-may-receive — the-fewest
τραύματα, δὲ ὡς ἀποβάλωμεν ἐλάχιστα σώματα
wounds, and how we-may-lose the-fewest (*bodies*)
ἀνδρῶν. 11. Οὖν μὲν τὸ ὄρος ἐστὶ τὸ
(*of*)-men. Moreover, indeed, the mountain is — (as far as)
ὁρώμενον πλέον ἢ ἐφ' ἑξήκοντα στάδια,
is-to-be-seen more than (*to*) sixty stadia (in length),
δ' ἄνδρες φανεροί εἰσιν φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς
but (the) men evidently are watching us
οὐδαμοῦ, ἀλλ' ἢ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδόν· οὖν
nowhere, except along this — road; therefore (it is)
πολὺ κρεῖττον, καὶ πειρᾶσθαι κλέψαι
much better, (I think), both to-endeavor to-seize
λαθόντας τι τοῦ ἐρήμου
being-concealed (unobserved), some (part) of-the desert (unguarded)
ὄρους, καὶ εἰ δυναίμεθα ἁρπάσαι φθάσαντας,
mountain, and if we-can get-possession-of, having-occupied
μᾶλλον ἢ μάχεσθαι πρὸς
(it before the enemy), rather than to-fight against
ἰσχυρὰ χωρία καὶ ἄνδρας παρεσκευ-
(attack) strong places and men pre-
ασμένους. 12. Γὰρ πολὺ ῥᾷον
pared (to resist us). For (it is) much easier
ἰέναι ὄρθιον ἀμαχὶ, ἢ ὁμαλὲς
to-go (up a) steep (place) without-fighting than (along) level (roads),
πολεμίων ὄντων ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν·
(the) enemy being here and there (on each side);
καὶ νύκτωρ τις ἂν ὁρᾷη τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν
and at-night one may (can) see — (things) before (his) feet
μᾶλλον ἀμαχι, ἢ μεθ' ἡμέραν
more (distinctly when) not-fighting than in (the) day (time)
μαχόμενος· καὶ ἡ τραχεῖα εὐμενεστέρα
(while) fighting; and the rough (road is) kinder
τοῖς ποσὶν ἰοῦσιν ἀμαχὶ, ἢ ἡ
(easier) to-the feet to-those-marching without-fighting than the

ὁμαλὴ βαλλομένοις τὰς κεφαλὰς.
smooth (one) to-those-being-(who are)-struck on-the head (with
13. Καὶ οὐ δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι ἀδύνατον
stones). And it-does not seem to-me to-be impossible
κλέψαι ἐξὸν μὲν ἰέναι
to-steal (a march), it-being-allowed (us) indeed to-go (we can march)
νυκτὸς, ὡς μὴ ὁρᾶσθαι, δὲ ἐξὸν ἀπελθεῖν
by-night, so-as not to-be-seen, it-being also allowed (us) to-go-away
τοσοῦτον ὡς μὴ παρέχειν
(keep away) so-far (from the enemy) | as not to-suffer (a)
αἴσθησιν. Δὲ
being-heard [as to allow no possibility of being heard or perceived]. And
μοι ἂν δοκοῦμεν, προσποιούμενοι προσ-
to-me — we-seem-likely, pretending (if we pretend) to-
βάλλειν ταύτῃ ἂν χρῆσθαι τῷ ἄλλῳ
attack at-this (point), — to-have (to find) the rest
ὄρει ἐρημοτέρῳ· γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι
(of the) mountain more-deserted; for the enemy would
μᾶλλον μένοιεν αὐτοῦ ἀθρόοι.
rather remain here collected-together (stay where they
14. Ἀτὰρ ἐγὼ συμβάλλομαι τί
are). But-why should I conjecture anything (speak
περὶ κλοπῆς; γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὦ Χειρίσοφε,
doubtfully) about stealing? for I-at-least, O Cheirisophus,
ἀκούω ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους, ὅσοι
hear (that) you, the Lacedæmonians, as-many (of you as)
ἐστὲ ὁμοίων, εὐθὺς ἐκ
are of (the class of) equals (the better class), immediately from
παίδων μελετᾶν κλέπτειν, καὶ
boys (boyhood) (commence) to-practise to-steal, and (that)
εἶναι οὐκ αἰσχρὸν, ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν,
it-is not disgraceful, but honorable, to-steal
ὅσα νόμος μὴ κωλύει. 15. Δὲ ὅπως
as-many-things-as (the) law does not forbid. But that
κλέπτητε ὡς κράτιστα, καὶ
you-may-steal | as best-possible [as well as possible], and

πειρᾶσθε λανθάνειν, ἄρα ἐστιν
exert-yourselves (try) to-conceal (escape detection), besides it-is
νόμιμον ὑμῖν, ἐὰν ληφθῆτε κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦ-
lawful for-you, if you-are-caught stealing, to-be-
σθαι. Νῦν οὖν ἐστιν μάλα καιρός
scourged. Now, therefore, (this) is (the) very (best) opportunity
σοι ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν παιδείαν,
for-you to-show (give proof of) — (your) education,
καὶ φυλάξασθαι μέντοι, μὴ ληφθῶμεν κλέπτοντες
and to-take-care, moreover, lest we-may-be-caught stealing
τοῦ ὄρους, ὡς μὴ λάβωμεν
(any part of) the mountain, that we-may not receive
πληγάς. 16. Ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος,
stripes." "But also," said — Cheirisophus,
κἀγὼ ἀκούω ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, εἶναι
"and-I have-heard (that) you, the Athenians, are
δεινοὺς κλέπτειν τὰ δημόσια, καὶ
clever (*to-steal*) (at stealing) the public-money, and-though
μάλα δεινοῦ κινδύνου ὄντος τῷ
very great danger being to — (threatens him)
κλέπτοντι, καὶ τοὺς κρατίστους
stealing (who steals it), and (that) — (your) best
μέντοι μάλιστα, εἴπερ οἱ κράτιστοι
(men), moreover, (steal) the-most, if-indeed the best (men)
ἀξιοῦνται ἄρχειν ὑμῖν· ὥστε
are-thought-worthy to-rule you (to be your magistrates); so-that
ὥρα καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι τὴν
(it is) time also for-you to-show (give proof of) — (your)
παιδείαν. 17. Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
education." "I indeed, therefore," said — Xenophon,
εἰμι ἕτοιμος ἰέναι, ἔχων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας,
"am ready to-go (march), having the rear-guard
ἐπειδὰν δειπνήσωμεν, καταληψόμε-
(with me), as-soon-as we-shall-have-supped, for-the-purpose-of-taking-
νος τὸ ὄρος. Δὲ καὶ ἔχω ἡγεμόνος· γὰρ
possession (of) the mountain. And — I-have guides (also); for

οἱ γυμνῆτες ἐνεδρεύσαντες ἔλαβόν τινας
the light-armed-men, having-laid-in-ambush, took (captured) some
τῶν κλωπῶν ἑφεπομένων ἡμῖν· καὶ πυνθάνομαι
of-the marauders following us; and I-hear
τούτων, ὅτι τὸ ὄρος ἐστι οὐκ ἄβατον,
(learn) from-these (them) that the mountain is not impassable,
ἀλλὰ νέμεται αἰξὶ καὶ βουσίν· ὥστε ἐάνπερ
but (that) it-is-grazed-over by-goats and oxen; so-that if
ἅπαξ λάβωμέν τι τοῦ ὄρους ἔσται
(we) once take-possession-of any (part) of-the mountain there-will-be
βατὰ καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις. 18. Δὲ ἐλπίζω
passable (places) even for-the beasts-of-burden. And I-expect
τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲ ἔτι μενεῖν
(that) the enemy will not-indeed (no) longer remain
ἐπειδὰν ἴδωσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ
after they-see us on the (a) level (with them) on
τῶν ἄκρων. Γὰρ ἐθέλουσι οὐδὲ νῦν καταβαίνειν
the heights. For they-will not-indeed now come-down
εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἡμῖν. 19. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος
to (an) equality (a level) with-us." — And Cheirisophus
εἶπε· Καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ ἰέναι, καὶ
said: "And why is-it-necessary (that) you (should) go, and
λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν; ἀλλὰ πέμψον
leave the command-of-the-rear-guard? but send
ἄλλους, μὴ ἂν τινες ἐθελούσιοι φαίνωνται.
others, unless that some volunteers appear (present
20. Ἐκ τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυ-
themselves)." Upon this Aristonymus, (the) Methy-
δριεὺς ἔρχεται, ἔχων ὁπλίτας, καὶ Ἀρισ-
drian, came-forward, having (his) heavy-armed-men, and Aris-
τέας Χῖος, γυμνῆτας, καὶ Νικόμαχος
teas, (the) Chian, (having his) light-armed-men, and Nicomachus,
Οἰταῖος, γυμνῆτας· καὶ σύνθημα
(the) Œtean, (with his) light-armed-men; and (an) agreement
ἐποιήσαντο, ὁπότε ἔχοιεν
was-made (that) when they-might-have-possession-of (reached)

τὰ ἄκρα καίειν πολλὰ πυρά. 21. Ταῦτα
the heights to-burn (light) many fires. These (things)
συνθέμενοι ἠρίστων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου ὁ Χειρί-
being-agreed-upon, they-dined; after — — dinner — Cheiri-
σοφος προήγαγε τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα πρὸς
sophus led-forward the whole army against (toward)
τοὺς πολεμίους ὡς δέκα σταδίους, ὅπως δοκοίη
the enemy about ten stadia, so-that he-might-seem
ὡς μάλιστα προσάξειν ταύτῃ.
as-much-as-possible to-be-about-to-lead-(march)-against (them) in-that
(direction).

22. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν, καὶ ἐγένετο νὺξ
When indeed they-had-taken-supper, and it-was night,
οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες ᾤχοντο,
— (those) indeed appointed (for this service) departed (went forward),
καὶ καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι
and take-(took)-possession-of the mountain; — the other (troops)
ἀνεπαύοντο αὐτοῦ. Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ,
rested there (where they were). The enemy indeed,
ὡς ᾔσθοντο τὸ ὄρος ἐχόμενον, ἐγρηγόρεσαν,
when they-perceived the mountain occupied, kept-watch,
καὶ ἔκαιον πολλὰ πυρὰ διὰ νυκτός. 23. Ἐπειδὴ
and burned many fires during (the) night. When
δὲ ἐγένετο ἡμέρα, Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσά-
indeed it-was day, Cheirisophus, — having-offered-
μενος ἦγε κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν· οἱ δὲ
sacrifice, led (the army) along the road; (while) (those) —
καταλαβόντες τὸ ὄρος ἐπῄεσαν κατὰ
having-(who had)-taken-possession-of the mountain advanced along
τὰ ἄκρα. 24. Δὲ τῶν πολεμίων τὸ πολὺ μὲν
the heights. But of-the enemy the great (part) indeed
ἔμενεν ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ μέρος
remained at the pass of-the mountain, but (a) part
αὐτῶν ἀπήντα τοῖς κατὰ
of-them went (against) (to meet) — (the troops) (coming) along

τὰ ἄκρα. Δὲ πρὶν τοὺς πολλοὺς,
the heights. But before (that) | the many [the main bodies of

εἶναι ὁμοῦ, οἱ κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα
the armies] were (came together, — (those) along the heights

συμμιγνύασιν ἀλλήλοις, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
met (joined battle with) one-another, and the Greeks

νικῶσι καὶ διώκουσιν. 25. Ἐν τούτῳ
conquered and drove-back (their opponents). At this

δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου, μὲν οἱ
(the same time) — also — (those) from the plain, namely, the

πελτασταὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔθεον δρόμῳ
targeteers of-the Greeks, ran in (a) race (with a

πρὸς τοὺς παρατεταγμένους, δὲ
charge) against — (those) drawn-up-against (them), and

Χειρίσοφος ἐφείπετο ταχὺ βάδην
Cheirisophus followed quickly, step-by-step (at a quick pace),

σὺν τοῖς ὁπλίταις. 26. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι οἱ
with the heavy armed-men. But the enemy, (namely) —

ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ, ἐπειδὴ ἑώρων τὸ
(those) on the road (at the pass), when they saw — (those)

ἄνω ἡττώμενον, φεύγουσι· καὶ οὐ πολλοὶ μὲν
above defeated, flee; and not many indeed

αὐτῶν ἀπέθανον. Δὲ πάμπολλα γέρρα
of-them died (were killed). But (a) great-many shields

ἐλήφθη, ἃ οἱ Ἕλληνες κόπτοντες ταῖς
were-taken, which the Greeks, cutting (hacking) — (with

μαχαίραις, ἐποίουν ἀχρεῖα. 27. Δ' ὡς
their) swords, made useless. And as (soon as)

ἀνέβησαν, θύσαντες, καὶ στησά-
they-arrived-on (reached the heights), having-sacrificed and having-

μενοι τρόπαιον, κατέβησαν εἰς τὸ πεδίον,
erected (a) trophy, they-descended into the plain (before

καὶ ἦλθον εἰς κώμας γεμούσας πολλῶν
them), and they-went (came) to villages stored-with many

καὶ ἀγαθῶν.
and good (things) (abundance of provisions).

CHAPTER VII.

The Greeks, entering the country of the Taochi, storm a fort, capturing a great number of cattle, on which they subsist while traversing the region of the Chalybes. They cross the Harpasus, and, marching through the territory of the Scythini, arrive at a town called Gymnias, whence they are conducted to Mount Theches, from the top of which they see the Euxine.

1. Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν πέντε
FROM — these (villages) they-proceeded five
σταθμοὺς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας, εἰς
days'-march, (a distance of) thirty parasangs, to
Ταόχους· καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλιπε· γὰρ
(the) Taochi; and — provisions began-to-fail (them); for
οἱ Ταόχοι ᾤκουν ἰσχυρὰ χωρία, καὶ ἐν οἷς
the Taochi inhabited strong places, and in which
εἶχον πάντα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀνακεκομισμένοι.
they-had all — (their) provisions, having-carried
2. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο
(them) up (and stored them there). When, however, they-arrived
εἰς χωρίον, ὃ μὲν εἶχεν οὐ πόλιν οὐδ' οἰκίας,
at (a) place which indeed had no town nor houses,
δ' αὐτόσε καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ πολλὰ
and there both men and women and many
κτήνη ἦσαν συνεληλυθότες, Χειρίσοφος μὲν
cattle were assembled, Cheirisophus indeed,
ἥκων εὐθὺς προσέβαλλε πρὸς
having-come (arrived here), immediately made-an-attack against
τοῦτο· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ πρώτη τάξις ἀπέκαμεν,
this (place); when — the first division began-to-grow-tired,
ἄλλη προσῄει καὶ αὖθις ἄλλη· γὰρ ἦν οὐ
another succeeded, and again another; for it-was not (possible
ἀθρόοις περιστῆναι, ἀλλὰ
for them) drawn-up-in-a-body to-stand-around (surround) (it), as
ἦν ποταμὸς κύκλῳ. 3. Ἐπειδὴ
there-was (a) river in (a) circle (around it). When
δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι καὶ
— Xenophon came (up) with the rear-guard and

πελτασταῖς καὶ ὁπλίταις, ἐνταῦθα δὴ Χειρί-
targeteers and heavy-armed-men, then — Cheiri-

σοφος λέγει· Ἥκετε εἰς καλὸν·
sophus says: "You-have-come most-opportunely (just the right

γὰρ τὸ χωρίον αἱρετέον· γὰρ ἔστι οὐ
time); for — (this) place must-be-taken; for there-are no

τὰ ἐπιτήδεια τῇ στρατιᾷ εἰ μὴ ληφόμεθα
— provisions for the army | if not [unless] we-shall-take

τὸ χωρίον. 4. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐβουλεύοντο
— (this) place." Then indeed they-deliberated

κοινῇ· καὶ τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος ἐρωτῶντος, τί εἴη
in-common; and — Xenophon having-asked what might-be

τὸ κωλῦον εἰσελθεῖν,
the hindrance (prevented them) to-enter (from entering) (the place),

ὁ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ αὕτη ἐστιν μία
— Cheirisophus said: "But this is (the) one (only)

πάροδος ἣν ὁρᾷς· ὅταν δέ τις
passage (approach) which you-see; whenever indeed any-one

πειρᾶται παριέναι ταύτῃ, κυλινδοῦσι
should-attempt (tries) to-pass-along this, they-roll (down)

λίθους ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς ὑπερεχούσης πέτρας·
stones over that — impending rock;

δ' ὃς ἂν καταληφθῇ, οὕτω διατίθεται.
(he) indeed who may have-been-(is)-struck is thus disposed-of

Δ' ἅμα ἔδειξε ἀνθρώπους
(injured)." And at-the-same-time he-showed (pointed at) men

συντετριμμένους καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευράς.
crushed both (as to their) legs and ribs.

5. Δὲ ἢν ἀναλώσωσιν τοὺς λίθους, ἔφη
"But if they-should-expend (all) — (their) stones," said

ὁ Ξενοφῶν, τι ἢ οὐδὲν ἄλλο κωλύει
— Xenophon, "is-there nothing else (that) prevents (us)

παριέναι; γὰρ δὴ οὐχ
to-advance (hinders us from entering)? for indeed we-do not

ὁρῶμεν ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, εἰ μὴ τούτους
see (any) of — (those) opposed-to-us, except these

ὀλίγους ἀνθρώπους, καὶ τούτων δύο ἢ τρεῖς
few men, and of-these (only) two or three
ὡπλισμένους. 6. Δὲ τὸ χωρίον, ὃ δεῖ
are-armed. And the space which it-is-necessary
διελθεῖν βαλλομένους ἐστιν,
to-pass-through (while) being-thrown-at (under exposure) is,
ὡς καὶ σὺ ὁρᾷς, σχεδὸν τρία ἡμιπλεθρά.
as — you see, (only) about three half-plethra
Δὲ τούτου ὅσον
[about 150 feet in length]. And of-this (space) as-much-as (a)
πλέθρον δασὺ μεγάλαις πίτυσι
plethrum [about 100 feet] (is) thick (covered) with-great pine-trees
διαλειπούσαις ἀνθ' ὧν ἄνδρες ἑστηκότες
standing-apart-from-one-another, against which men standing,
ἂν τί πάσχοιεν ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν λίθων
— what will-they-suffer either from the stones (which are)
φερομένων ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν κυλινδουμένων;
thrown-down or from (those which are) — rolled?
τὸ λοιπὸν ἤδη οὖν γίγνεται ὡς
the rest (of the space) now, therefore, becomes about (a) (is not
ἡμίπλεθρον, ὃ δεῖ,
more than a) half-plethrum [about 50 feet], (over) which it-is-necessary
παραδραμεῖν ὅταν οἱ λίθοι λωφήσωσι.
(for us) to-run-past when the stones cease."
7. Ἀλλὰ, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, εὐθὺς ἐπειδὰν
"But," said — Cheirisophus, "immediately when (the in-
ἀρξώμεθα προσιέναι εἰς το δασὺ
stant) we-commence to-advance to the (part) thick (with trees),
πολλοὶ οἱ λίθοι φέρονται. Αὐτὸ, ἔφη,
many — stones are-thrown." "That," said (Xenophon),
ἄν εἴη τὸ δέον γὰρ θᾶττον
"would be the (very) thing-wanted (we want), for the-more-speedily
ἀναλώσουσι τοὺς λίθους.
(the sooner) will-they-exhaust — (their) (supply of) stones.
Ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα ἢν δυνώμεθα, ἔνθεν
So let-us-advance, if we-can, (to the place) whence

ἔσται τι μικρὸν ἡμῖν παρα-
there-will-be some small (only a short distance) for-us to-run-
δραμεῖν, καὶ ῥᾴδιον ἀπελθεῖν,
past, and (from which we may) easily depart (retreat),
ἢν βουλώμεθα.
if we-please (choose)."

8. Ἐντεῦθεν Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ
Thence Cheirisophus, and Xenophon, and
Καλλίμαχος Παῤῥάσιος λοχαγός, (γὰρ ἡ
Callimachus, (the) Parrhasian, (a) captain (for the
ἡγεμονία τῶν λοχαγῶν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων
lead of-the captains of-the rear-guard (was in
τούτου ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ,)
possession) of-this-one (he had the lead) on-that — day),
ἐπορεύοντο· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐν τῷ
went-forward; but the other captains remained in —
ἀσφαλεῖ. Μετὰ τοῦτο οὖν ὡς ἑβδομήκοντα
safety. After this then about seventy
ἄνθρωποι ἀπῆλθον ὑπὸ τὰ δένδρα, οὐκ
men went-off (advanced) under the trees, not
ἀθρόοι, ἀλλὰ καθ' ἕνα, ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος
collected-in-a-body, but one-by-one, each-one guarding-himself
ὡς ἐδύνατο. 9. Ἀγασίας δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος
as (well as) he-could. Agasias, — the Stymphalian,
καὶ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς καὶ οἵτοι ὄντες
and Aristonymus, (the) Methydrian, and these being
λοχαγοὶ τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων, καὶ
(who were also) captains of-the rear-guard, and (some)
ἄλλοι δὲ, ἐφέστασαν ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· γὰρ ἦν
others also, standing-near without the trees; for it-was
οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς πλεῖον ἢ τὸν ἕνα λόχον ἑστάναι
not safe (for) more than — one company to-stand
ἐν τοῖς δένδροις. 10. Καλλίμαχος ἔνθα δὴ
under the trees. Callimachus then indeed
μηχανᾶταί τι· προέτρε-
contrived something (adopted the following stratagem): he-ran-

χεν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου, ὑφ' ᾧ αὐτός ἦν, δύο
forward from the tree, under which he was, two

ἢ τρία βήματα· δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ λίθοι φέροιντο,
or three times; but when the stones were-hurled,

ἀνεχάζετο εὐπετῶς· ἐφ' ἑκάστης δὲ προδρομῆς
he-drew-back hastily; (and) at each — sally

πλέον ἢ δέκα ἅμαξαι πετρῶν ἀνηλίσκοντο.
more than ten wagon (loads) of-stone were-consumed.

11. Δὲ ὁ Ἀγασίας, ὡς ὁρᾷ τὸν Καλλίμαχον,
But — Agasias, when he-perceives — Callimachus,

ἃ ἐποίει, καὶ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα θεώμενον,
what he-was-doing, and all the army beholding

δείσας μὴ οὐ πρῶτος παρα-
(it) (looking on), fearing lest (he might) not (be) the-first run-

δράμοι εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ παρακαλέσας τὸν
ning-by into the place, neither calling-to —

Ἀριστώνυμον ὄντα πλησίον, οὐδὲ
Aristonymus, (he) being (who was) near (next to him), nor

Εὐρύλοχον τὸν Λουσιέα ὄντας
(to) Eurylochus, the Lusian, (both) (of whom) being (were)

ἑταίρους, οὐδὲ οὐδένα ἄλλον, αὐτός
(his) comrades, nor (to) no-one (any one) else, he

χωρεῖ, καὶ παρέρχεται πάντας.
went-on (by himself) (advanced alone), and passed-by all.

12. Ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος, ὡς ἑώρα αὐτὸν παριόντα
— But Callimachus, when he-saw him passing-(rushing)-by,

ἐτιλαμβάνεται τῆς ἴτυος αὐτοῦ·
seizes (caught hold of) the rim (of the shield) of-him;

δ' ἐν τούτῳ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς
but at this (moment) Aristonymus, (the) Methydrian,

παρέθει αὐτούς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Εὐρύλοχος
ran-past them (both), and after this (him) Eurylochus,

Λουσιεύς. Γὰρ πάντες οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο
(the) Lusian. For all these claimed-for-themselves

ἀρετῆς, καὶ διηγωνίζοντο πρὸς
(sought distinction for) valor, and contended with

ἀλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως ἐρίζοντες αἱροῦσι
one-another (for it); and thus contending they-take (gain
τὸ χωρίον. Γὰρ ὡς ἅπαξ εἰσέδραμον,
possession of) the place. For when they once had-run-(rushed)-in,
οὐδεὶς πέτρος ἠνέχθη ἄνωθεν. 13. Ἐνταῦθα
not (a) stone was-hurled from-above. Then
δὴ ἦν δεινὸν θέαμα. Γὰρ αἱ γυναῖκες
indeed there-was (a) dreadful spectacle. For the women,
ῥίπτουσαι τὰ παιδία, καὶ εἶτα
(after) throwing — (their) children (over the precipice), (*and*) then
ἐπικατερρίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ὡσαύτως.
threw-themselves-down-upon (them), and the men in-like-manner
Ἔνθα δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας Στυμφάλιος,
(did the same). Then indeed — Æneas (the) Stymphalian,
λοχαγὸς, ἰδών τινα, ἔχοντα
(a) captain, seeing some-one (of them) having (who had on) (a)
καλὴν στολὴν, θέοντα ὡς ῥίψοντα
handsome dress (rich garment) running as being-about-throwing
ἑαυτὸν ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὡς κωλύ-
(to throw) himself over, laid-hold (of him) as being-about-
σων. 14. Δὲ ὁ
hindering (with the intention of stopping) (him). But — (the man)
ἐπισπᾶται αὐτὸν, καὶ ἀμφότεροι ᾤχοντο
drags him along, and both went (over),
φερόμενοι κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν, καὶ ἀπέθανον.
being-borne (rolling) down the rocks, and died
Ἐντεῦθεν μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἄνθρωποι
(were killed). Therefore indeed very few men
ἐλήφθησαν, δὲ καὶ πολλοὶ βόες καὶ ὄνοι
(prisoners) were-captured, but — many oxen and asses
καὶ πρόβατα.
and sheep.

15. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ
Thence they-proceeded through (the country) of (the)
Χαλύβων ἑπτά σταθμοὺς, πεντήκοντα
Chalybians seven days'-march, (a distance of) fifty

παρασάγγας. Οὗτοι ἦσαν ἀλκιμώτατοι
parasangs. These were the-bravest (most warlike)

ὧν διῆλθον, καὶ ἦσαν
(of those people) whose (country) they-passed-through, | and they-went

εἰς χεῖρας. Εἶχον δὲ
to hands [they came to close combat with them]. They-had —

λινοῦς θώρακας μέχρι τοῦ
linen cuirasses (breastplates) (reaching) just (down) to-the

ἤτρου, δ' ἀντὶ τῶν πτερύγων πυκνὰ σπάρτα
groin, and instead of— skirts (they had) thick cords

ἐστραμμένα. 16. Εἶχον δὲ καὶ κνημῖδας, καὶ
twisted. They-had also — greaves, and

κράνη, καὶ μαχαίριον παρὰ τὴν ζώνην
helmets, and (a) dagger at — (their) girdle

ὅσον Λακωνικὴν ξυήλην,
as-large-and-long-as (a) Spartan sickle-shaped (hooked dagger),

ᾧ ἔσφαττον, ὧν δύναιντο κρατεῖν·
with-which they-cut-the-throats of— (all whom) they-could master;

καὶ ἀποτέμνοντες τὰς κεφαλὰς ἂν ἐπο-
and (then) cutting-off — (their) heads, — they-

ρεύοντο ἔχοντες·
used-to-proceed (on their march) having (taking them with

καὶ ᾖδον, καὶ ἐχόρευον, ὁπότε οἱ
them); and they-sang and danced when (they thought) the

πολέμιοι ἔμελλον ὄψεσθαι. Καὶ εἶχον
enemy were-about (likely) to-see (them). And they-had

δὲ δόρυ ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πηχῶν,
(carried) also (a) spear about fifteen cubits (in length),

ἔχον μίαν λόγχην. 17. Οἵτοι ἐνέμενον
(but) having (only) one spike. These (people) remained

ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες
in — (their) villages. When, however, the Greeks

παρέλθοιεν, εἵποντο ἀεὶ μαχόμενοι.
may-have-(had)-passed-by, they-followed continually fighting

Ὤικουν δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὀχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ
(with them). They-dwelt — in — strongholds, and —

ἐπιτήδεια ἀνακεκομισμένοι ἦσαν ἐν
(their) provisions were-brought-up (stored) in
τούτοις, ὥστε τοὺς Ἕλληνας λαμβάνειν
these (strongholds), so (that) the Greeks took
μηδὲν αὐτόθεν, ἀλλὰ διετράφησαν τοῖς
nothing from-that-place, but were-nourished by-(lived upon)-the
κτήνεσιν, ἃ ἔλαβον ἐκ τῶν Ταόχων. 18. Ἐκ
cattle which they-took from the Taochi. After
τούτου οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν
this the Greeks arrived at the river
Ἅρπασαν, εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων.
Harpasus, (the) width (of which was) four plethra.
Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ
Thence they-proceeded through (the territory of the)
Σκυθινῶν τέτταρας σταθμούς, εἴκοσι
Scythini four days'-march, (a distance of) twenty
παρασάγγας, διὰ πεδίου εἰς κώμας, ἐν αἷς
parasangs, through (a) plain to villages, in which
ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
they-remained (halted) three days, and collected-provisions.
19. Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἦλθον τέτταρας σταθμοὺς
Thence indeed they-advanced four days'-march,
εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, πρὸς μεγάλην
(a distance of) twenty parasangs, to (a) large,
καὶ εὐδαίμονα, καὶ οἰκουμένην πόλιν, ἣ ἐκαλεῖτο
— wealthy, and populous city, which was-called
Γυμνίας. Ἐκ ταύτης ὁ ἄρχων τῆς χώρας
Gymnias. From this (place) the ruler of-the country
πέμπει ἡγεμόνα τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ὅπως ἄγοι
sends (a) guide to-the Greeks, that he-might-conduct
αὐτούς διὰ τῆς χώρας πολεμίας ἑαυτῶν.
them through the country hostile (to) themselves
20. Δ' ἐκεῖνος
(at war with his own people). And he (the guide),
ἐλθὼν λέγει, ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν
having-come, says that he-will-lead them (in) five days

εἰς χωρίον, ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλατταν· δὲ εἰ
to (a) place whence they-would-see (the) sea; and if
μή ἐπηγγέλλετο τεθνάναι. Καὶ
not, announced-himself (willing) to-die (to be put to death). And
ἡγούμενος, ἐπειδὴ ἐνέβαλεν εἰς τὴν
leading (guiding) (them), when he entered into the (country)
πολεμίαν ἑαυτοῖς, παρεκελεύετο αἴθειν
hostile to-themselves, he-exhorted (urged) (them) to-burn
καὶ φθείρειν τὴν χώραν· καὶ ᾧ ἐγένετο
and lay-waste the country; and by-which it-became (was)
δῆλον ὅτι ἔλθοι ἕνεκα τούτου,
evident that he-had-come (by) reason of-this (for this very
οὐ τῆς εὐνοίας τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
purpose), (and) not — (from any) good-will (for) the Greeks.

21. Καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ πέμπτῃ
And they-arrived at the mountain on-the fifth
ἡμέρᾳ· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης. Ἐπειδὴ
day; (the) name — (of) the mountain was Theches. When,
δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ
indeed, the foremost (men) got on (reached the top of) the
ὄρους, καὶ κατεῖδον τὴν θάλατταν πολλὴ
mountain, and looked-down (upon) the sea, (a) great
κραυγὴ ἐγένετο. **22.** Δὲ ὁ Ξενο-
noise occurred (they raised a great shout). But — Xeno-
φῶν καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἀκούσας ᾠήθησαν
phon and the rear-guard, having-heard (it), thought
ἄλλους πολεμίους ἔμπροσθεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι·
(that) other enemies in-front were-assailing
γὰρ εἵποντο ὄπισθεν ἐκ τῆς χώρας
(them); for (the people) followed behind from the places
καιομένης, καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες
(which they had) burned, and the rear-guard,
ποιησάμενοι ἐνέδραν τε ἀπέκτειναν τινας καὶ
by-forming (an) ambuscade, not-only killed some, but
ἐζώγρησαν· καὶ ἔλαβον ἀμφὶ
made (prisoners of others); and they-took (captured) about

LIBRARY
of the
PACIFIC BIBLE INSTITUTE
FRESNO, CALIFORNIA

τὰ εἴκοσιν γέῤῥα ὠμοβόεια δασειῶν
— twenty shields (made of) raw-hides of-thick-haired
βοῶν.
oxen.

23. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ βοὴ τε ἐγίγνετο πλείων καὶ
When indeed the noise not-only became greater but-also
ἐγγύτερον, καὶ οἱ ἀεὶ ἐπιόντες
nearer, and — (those) continually approaching (who came
ἔθεον δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς
up from time to time) kept-running at-full-speed to (join) — (those)
ἀεὶ βοῶντας, καὶ ἡ βοὴ ἐγίγνετο
(who were) continually shouting, and the noise became
πολλῷ μείζων, ὅσῳ δὴ πλείους ἐγίγνοντο,
much greater, by-how-much indeed more-numerous they-became
ἐδόκει τῷ
(in proportion as the men became more numerous) it-seemed (then) to —
Ξενοφῶντι δὴ εἶναι τι μεῖζον.
Xenophon indeed to-be something of-greater (importance than
24. Καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐφ' ἵππον, καὶ ἀνα-
usual). And (he) having-mounted on (his) horse, and having-
λαβὼν Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας,
taken-with (him) Lucius and the cavalry, (hastened forward that)
παρεβοήθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ ἀκούουσι τῶν
he-might-give-assistance; and quickly then they-hear the
στρατιωτῶν βοώντων, Θάλαττα! Θάλαττα!
soldiers shouting, "(The) sea! (the) sea!"
καὶ παρεγγυώντων. Ἔνθα δὴ ἅπαντες
and cheering-on (one another). Then indeed all
ἔθεον καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, καὶ
commenced-running, and the rear-guard and
τὰ ὑποζύγια ἠλαύνετο καὶ
the baggage-cattle were-excited (to their full speed), and (also)
οἱ ἵπποι. 25. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες ἀφίκοντο
the horses. And when all (had) arrived
ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, ἐνταῦθα δὴ
on (reached) the summit (top), then indeed (the men)

περιέβαλλον ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατηγοὺς καὶ
embraced one-another, also (the) generals and
λοχαγοὺς, δακρύοντες. Καὶ ἐξαπίνης, ὅτου δὴ
captains, shedding-tears. And suddenly, whoever indeed
παρεγγυήσαντος, οἱ στρατιῶται
(it might be) having-exhorted (that suggested it), the soldiers
φέρουσι λίθους, καὶ ποιοῦσι μέγαν κολωνὸν.
bring stones, and make (a) large mound.

26. Ἐνταῦθα ἀνετίθεσαν πλῆθος
Then they-placed-on (this mound a) multitude (a large
δερμάτων ὠμοβοείων, καὶ βακτηρίας, καὶ
number) of-skins of-raw-ox-hides, and staves, and
τὰ γέρρα αἰχμάλωτα, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμὼν
the shields captured (from the enemy), and the guide
τε αὐτὸς κατέτεμνε τὰ γέρρα, καὶ
not-only himself cut-(hacked)-to-pieces the shields, but-also
διεκελεύετο τοῖς ἄλλοις. 27. Μετὰ
exhorted the others (to do the same). After
ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀποπέμπουσι τὸν ἡγεμόνα,
this the Greeks sent-away the guide,
δόντες δῶρα ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον,
giving (him) presents from (the) common (stock, namely, a) horse,
καὶ ἀργυρᾶν φιάλην, καὶ Περσικὴν σκευὴν,
and (a) silver cup, and (a) Persian robe,
καὶ δέκα δαρεικοὺς· δ' μάλιστα ᾔτει
and ten darics; but most-of-all he-asked-for
τοὺς δακτυλίους, καὶ ἔλαβε πολλοὺς
the finger-rings, and he-obtained many (of them)
παρὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν. Δὲ δείξας
from the soldiers. And he-having-pointed-out
κώμην αὐτοῖς οὗ σκηνήσουσι,
(a) village to-them where they-might-encamp (take up
καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν,
their quarters), and (he also having shown them) the road
ἣν πορεύσονται εἰς Μάκρωνας, ἐπεὶ
by-which they-were-to-proceed to (the) Macrones, when

ἐγένετο ἑσπέρα, ᾤχετο ἀπιών τῆς
it-was evening, he-departed, pursuing (his way) during-the
νυκτὸς.
night.

CHAPTER VIII.

The Greeks proceed unmolested through the country of the Macrones, and enter Colchis. Putting to flight the Colchians who obstructed their passage, they arrive at Trebisond, a Greek city, where they perform whatever vows they had made, and celebrate games.

1. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ
Hence — the Greeks proceeded through
Μακρώνων τρεῖς σταθμούς,
(the country) of (the) Macrones three days'-march, (a distance
δέκα παρασάγγας. Δὲ τῇ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ
of) ten parasangs. And on-the first day
ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν, ὃς ὥριζε τὴν
they-arrived at the river which bounded-and-divided the
τῶν Μακρώνων καὶ τὴν τῶν
(territories) of-the Macrones — (from) — (those) of-the
Σκυθινῶν. 2. Εἶχον δ' ὑπερδέξιον
Scythini. They-had — on (their) right (a)
χωρίον οἷον χαλεπώτατον,
place (an eminence) such-as (to be) (which was) very-difficult
καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς ἄλλον ποταμόν,
(to approach), and on (their) left another river,
εἰς ὃν ὁ ὁρίζων, δι' οὗ ἔδει
into which the bounding (river), through where (over which) it-was-
διαβῆναι, ἐνέβαλλεν. Οὗτος
necessary to-cross, emptied (itself). This (river)
δὲ ἦν δασὺς δένδροις οὐ μὲν παχέσι,
— was thick-set (on its banks) with-trees not indeed thick
δὲ πυκνοῖς. Ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες,
(large), but (growing) close-together. These (trees) the Greeks,
ἐπεὶ προσῆλθον, ἔκοπτον, σπεύδοντες ἐξελθεῖν
when they-arrived (there), cut-down, being-in-haste to-go-out

ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα. 3. Δ' οἱ Μάκρωνες,
from the country as quickly-as-possible. But the Macrones,

ἔχοντες γέῤῥα καὶ λόγχας καὶ
having (equipped with) wicker-shields and spears and

τριχίνους χιτῶνας παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν καταν-
hair tunics, were-drawn-up on-the-

τιπέρας τῆς διαβάσεως, καὶ διεκελεύοντο ἀλλή-
opposite-side of the crossing-place, and encouraged one-

λοις, καὶ ἔῤῥιπτον λίθους εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν, δὲ
another, and threw stones into the river, but

οὐ ἐξικνοῦντο, οὐδ' ἔβλαπτον
they-did not reach (hit) (our men), (*nor*) (or) hurt

οὐδένα.
none (any of them).

4. Ἔνθα δὴ τις ἀνὴρ τῶν πελταστῶν προσέρ-
Then indeed some man of-the targeteers comes-

χεται τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, φάσκων δεδουλευ-
up to — Xenophon, affirming (saying) (that he) had-been-a-

κέναι Ἀθήνησι, λέγων, ὅτι γιγνώσκοι τὴν
slave at-Athens, (and) saying that he-knew the

φωνὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων. Καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ταύτην
language of — (these) men. "And I-think," said-he, "this

εἶναι ἐμὴν πατρίδα· καὶ εἰ μὴ τι κωλύει,
to-be (is) my country; and | if not [unless] something hinders

ἐθέλω διαλεχθῆναι
(if there is nothing to prevent), I-wish (would like) to-speak

αὐτοῖς. 5. Ἀλλ' οὐδὲν κωλύει, ἔφη· ἀλλὰ
with-them." "But nothing hinders," said (Xenophon); "so

διαλέγου, καὶ μάθε πρῶτον τίνες εἰσίν.
speak (to them), and ascertain first what (people) they-may-be

Ἐρωτήσαντος, οἱ δ' εἶπον,
(are)." He-inquiring (when he asked them), — (they) — said

ὅτι Μάκρωνες. Ἔρώτα αὐτοὺς τοίνυν,
that (they were) Macrones. "Ask them, then,"

ἔφη, τί ἀντιτετάχαται, καὶ
said (Xenophon), "why (they are) drawn-up-against (us), and

χρῄζουσιν εἶναι πολέμιοι ἡμῖν. 6. Δ' οἱ
wish to-be enemies to-us." But — (they)
ἀπεκρίναντο· Ὅτι καὶ ὑμεῖς ἔρχεσθε ἐπὶ
answered: "Because — you come against
ἡμετέραν χώραν. Οἱ στρατηγοί ἐκέλευον
our country." The generals (then) ordered (him)
λέγειν, ὅτι οὐ ποιήσοντες κακῶς γε,
to-say that not making evil at-least (they had come
ἀλλὰ πολεμήσαντες
with no intention of doing them injury), but, having-been-making-war
βασιλεῖ, ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ
with (the) king, were-returning to — Greece, and
βουλόμεθα ἀφικέσθαι ἐπὶ θάλατταν.
(that) we-desire to-arrive to (reach the) sea.
7. Ἐκεῖνοι ἠρώτων, εἰ ἂν δοῖεν τὰ πιστά
They asked if (the Greeks) would give — pledges
τούτων. Δ' οἱ ἔφασαν
of-these (to this effect). And — (they) said (replied) (that they)
ἐθέλειν καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν. Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ
were-willing both to-give and receive (them). Then the
Μάκρωνες διδόασι τοῖς Ἕλλησι βαρβαρικὴν
Macrones gave the Greeks (a) barbarian
λόγχην, δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικήν·
lance, and the Greeks (gave) them (a) Grecian
γὰρ ἔφασαν ταῦτα εἶναι πιστὰ·
(one); for they-said (that) these were (their usual) pledges;
δὲ ἀμφότεροι θεοὺς ἐπεμαρτύ-
and both (parties called on the) gods (that) they-might-(to)-
ραντο.
witness (it).
8. Δὲ μετὰ τὰ πιστά, οἱ Μάκρωνες εὐθὺς
And after the pledges, the Macrones immediately
συνεξέκοπτον τὰ δένδρα, τε
cut-down-with (assisted them in cutting away) the trees, and
ὡδοποίουν ὁδὸν ὡς διαβιβάσοντες,
made-a-road (for a) path (a passage for them) as about-passing

ἀναμεμιγμένοι
(them) through (to bring them over), mingling (freely) (at the
ἐν μέσοις τοῖς Ἕλλησι· καὶ παρεῖχον
same time) among the Greeks; and (they) provided
ἀγορὰν οἵαν ἐδύναντο· καὶ παρήγαγον
(a) market (for them) such-as they-were-able; and led
ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις, ἕως
(them) along (through their country) for three days, until
κατέστησαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπὶ τὰ ὅρια
they-set-down (brought) the Greeks on (to) the borders (of
Κόλχων. 9. Ἐνταῦθα ἦν μέγα ὄρος, δὲ
the) Colchians. Here was (a) large mountain, but
προσβατὸν· καὶ οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι
accessible; and the Colchians had-been-(were)-
ἦσαν ἐπὶ τούτου. Καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες μὲν
drawn-up on this (mountain). And the Greeks indeed
τὸ πρῶτον ἀντιπαρετάζαντο κατὰ φάλαγγα,
— (at) first drew-up-against (them) in line,
ὡς οὕτως ἄξοντες πρὸς
as thus about-(with the intention of)-leading (the men) against
τὸ ὄρος· δὲ ἔπειτα ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
(up) the mountain; but afterward it-seemed to-the generals
συλλεγεῖσι βουλεύσασθαι ὅπως
(best) (that) they-should-assemble to-deliberate how
ἀγωνιοῦνται ὡς κάλλιστα. 10. Ξενο-
they-should-(might)-contend to-the-greatest-advantage. Xeno-
φῶν οὖν ἔλεξεν, ὅτι δοκεῖ, παύσαν-
phon, therefore, said that it-seemed (to him), ceas-
τας τὴν φάλαγγα,
ing (giving up the idea of having the troops) — in (a) line,
ποιῆσαι ὀρθίους λόχους· γὰρ μὲν
to form straight companies [columns of companies]; "for indeed
ἡ φάλαγξ εὐθύς διασπασθήσεται· γὰρ
the line" (said he) "will immediately be-broken; for
μὲν τῇ εὑρήσομεν τὸ ὄρος ἄνοδον, δὲ
indeed in — (some parts) we-shall-find the mountain impassable, but

τῇ εὐοδον· καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο ποιήσει
in — (others) (a) good-path; and immediately this will-cause
ἀθυμίαν, ὅταν τεταγμένοι εἰς φάλαγγα,
despondency (in the men), when drawn-up in line,
ὁρῶσι ταύτην διεσπασμένην. 11. Ἔπειτα,
they-see this (line) broken. Then,
ἢν μὲν προσάγωμεν τεταγμένοι ἐπὶ πολλοὺς, οἱ
if indeed we-advance drawn-up many-deep, the
πολέμιοι περιττεύσουσιν ἡμῶν,
enemy will-reach-beyond us (on both sides will be more
numerous than we), and καὶ χρήσονται τοῖς περιττοῖς,
(men) (in) any (way) which they may will-use the (their) superfluous
τι ὅ ἂν βούλωνται. Δὲ
desire (choose). And
ἐὰν ἴωμεν τεταγμένοι ἐπ᾽ ὀλίγων, ἂν εἴη
if we-go (forward) drawn-up few-deep, it-would be
οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, εἰ ἡ φάλαγξ
nothing wonderful (not at all surprising), | if the line
ἡμῶν διακοπείη ὑπὸ καὶ ἀθρόων
of-us [our line] be-cut-through by both collected (showers of)
βελῶν καὶ πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐμπε-
missiles and many (large bodies of) men falling-
σόντων· εἰ δὲ πῃ τοῦτο ἔσται,
upon (us); if indeed in-any-part this should-be (happen),
ἔσται κακὸν τῇ ὅλῃ φάλαγγι. 12. Ἀλλὰ
it-will-be bad for-the whole line. But
δοκεῖ μοι, ποιησαμένος τοὺς λόχους
it-seems to-me (that), having-formed the companies (in)
ὀρθίους, κατασχεῖν τοῖς λόχοις διαλιπόντας
columns, to-separate the companies, being-distant
τοσοῦτον χωρίον, ὅσον
(from one another) so-much space (such a distance) that
τοὺς ἐσχάτους λόχους γενέσθαι
the extreme (last) companies (on each side) will-be
ἔξω κεράτων τῶν πολεμίων. Καὶ οὕτως οἱ
beyond (the) wings of-the enemy. And thus we, the

ἔσχατοι λόχοι ἐσόμεθα τε ἔξω τῆς
extreme companies, will-be not-only beyond (outflank) the
φάλαγγος τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ ἄγοντες
line of-the enemy, but-also leading (forward)
ὀρθίους οἱ κράτιστοι ἡμῶν
in-column (as we march in file) the bravest of-us (will)
προσίασι πρῶτον, τε ᾗ
advance (close with the enemy) first, and (in the place) in-which
ἂν ᾖ εὔοδον ταύτῃ
(wherever) there may be (a) good-road (an easy approach), in-that
ὁ ἕκαστος λόχος ἄξει. 13. Καὶ οὐ τε
(there) — each company will-lead. And it-will not indeed
ἔσται ῥᾴδιον τοῖς πολεμίοις εἰσελθεῖν εἰς τὸ
be easy for-the enemy to-penetrate into the (inter-
διαλεῖπον
vening spaces) left (vacant between the companies in column),
ὄντων λόχων ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν, τε
there-being companies here and there (on each side), and-indeed
οὐ ἔσται ῥᾴδιον διακόψαι λόχον ὄρθιον
it-will not be easy to-break-through (a) company in-column
προσιόντα. Τε ἐάν τις τῶν λόχων
(straight column) advancing. While if any-one of-the companies
πιέζηται ὁ πλησίον βοηθήσει. Τε ἦν πῃ
be-hard-pressed, the nearest-one will-assist-it. And if by-any-means
εἷς τῶν λόχων δυνηθῇ ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸ
(path) one of-the companies may-be-able to-ascend on the
ἄκρον οὐδεὶς τῶν πολεμίων μηκέτι
height (reach the top), none of-the enemy after-this
μείνῃ. 14. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε καὶ
(any longer) would-remain." This (plan) seemed-good, and
ἐποίουν τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν
they-formed the companies (in) columns. And Xenophon,
ἀπιὼν ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἐπὶ
departing (riding along) from the right (wing of the enemy) to
τὸ εὐώνυμον ἔλεγε τοῖς στρατιώταις· Οἵδε
the left, said to-the soldiers: "These

οὓς ὁρᾶτε εἰσιν μόνοι ἄνδρες ἔτι
whom you-see (before you) are (the) only men yet (now)
ἐμποδὼν ἡμῖν τὸ μὴ ἤδη εἶναι,
in-the-way (to prevent) us — not soon to-be (from being)
ἔνθα πάλαι ἐσπεύδομεν· τοῦτους,
there (where) we-have long desired-and-hastened (to be); these,
ἤν πως δυνώμεθα, δεῖ καὶ κατα-
if in-any-way we-can, it-becomes (us) even | to-(we must)-
φαγεῖν ὠμοὺς.
eat-up raw [exterminate]."

15. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγένοντο ἕκαστοι ἐν ταῖς
When, indeed, they-were each in — (their)
χώραις, καὶ τοὺς λόχους ἐποιήσαντο ὀρθίους,
places, and the companies were-formed (in) columns,
ἐγένοντο μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὁπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς
there-were — companies of-the heavy-armed-men about (the)
ὀγδοήκοντα, δ' ὁ ἕκαστος λόχος
eighty (in number), and — each company (amounted)
σχεδὸν εἰς τοὺς ἑκατόν· δ'
nearly to (consisted of about) — (a) hundred (men); and
ἐποιήσαντο τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ τοὺς
they-formed (arranged) the targeteers and the
τοξότας τριχῇ· τοὺς μὲν
archers | threefold [in three divisions]; — (one) — (they placed)
ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου δὲ τοὺς τοῦ
beyond the left-wing and the (other beyond) the
δεξιοῦ δὲ τοὺς κατὰ μέσον, ἑκάστους
right-wing and the (third) in (the) centre, each
σχεδὸν ἑξακοσίους. 16. Ἐκ
(division numbering) nearly (about) six-hundred (men). After
τούτου οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρηγγύησαν
this the generals ordered (exhorted) (the sol-
εὔχεσθαι· εὐξάμενοι
diers) to-make (their) vows; having-made (their) vows (to the
δὲ καὶ παιανίσαντες ἐπορεύοντο.
gods), and also having-sung-the-pæan, they-moved (forward).

Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ
And Cheirisophus, together with Xenophon and
οἱ πελτασταὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς, γενόμενοι
the targeteers with them, being (who were)
ἔξω τῆς φάλαγγος τῶν πολεμίων
beyond the line (flanks) of-the enemy, (also)
ἐπορεύοντο. 17. Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ, ὡς εἶδον αὐτοὺς,
advanced. The enemy indeed, when they-saw them,
ἀντιπαραθέοντες, οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιόν,
running-(coming)-against (them), — (some) indeed to the right
δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον, διεσπάσθησαν, καὶ
and — (others) to the left, were-drawn-apart, and
ἐποίησαν πολὺ κενὸν ἐν τῷ μέσῳ τῆς
they made (left) (a) great void in the middle of-the
φάλαγγος ἑαυτῶν. 18. Δὲ οἱ πελτασταί κατὰ τὸ
line of-them. But the targeteers in the
Ἀρκαδικὸν, ὧν Αἰσχίνης ὁ Ἀκαρ-
Arcadian (division in the centre), whom Æschines, the Acar-
νάν ἦρχεν ἰδόντες οὐτοὺς διαχάζοντας, νομί-
nanian, commanded, seeing them separating, having-
σαντες φεύγειν, ἔθεον ἀνὰ
thought (them) to-be-fleeing (that they were fleeing), ran (forward) with
κράτος, καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἀναβαίνουσι ἐπὶ
(all their) might, and these first ascended on
τὸ ὄρος· δὲ καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν ὁπλι-
the mountain (reached the top); and — the Arcadian heavy-
τικόν, ὧν Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἦρχε,
armed (troops), whom Cleanor, the Orchomenian, commanded,
συνεφείπετο. 19. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι, ὡς
followed-soon (after). But the enemy, as-soon-as (the
ἤρξαντο θεῖν οὐκέτι ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ
Greeks) began to-run, no-longer stood, but fled,
ἄλλος ἄλλῃ ἐτράπετο.
other in-other turned [some going one way and some another].
Δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀναβάντες
But the Greeks, descending (from the mountain),

ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν πολλαῖς κώμαις ἐχούσαις
encamped among many villages having

πολλὰ τἀπιτήδεια. 20. Καὶ
(containing) much (abundance) (of) provisions. | And

τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἦν
the indeed other (things) [as to other things], there-was

οὐδὲν, ὅ τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν· δὲ ἦν πολλὰ
nothing that even they-were-surprised-at; but there-were many

τὰ σμήνη αὐτόθι, καὶ ὅσοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν
— bee-hives there, and as-many of-the soldiers as

ἔφαγον τῶν κηρίων, πάντες τε ἐγίγνοντο ἄφρονες,
ate of-the combs, all not-only became delirious,

καὶ ἤμουν, καὶ διεχώρει αὐτοῖς κάτω,
but-also vomited, | and it-passed-through them downwards

καὶ οὐδεὶς ἠδύνατο ἵστασθαι ὀρθὸς,
[they were purged], and no-one was-able to-stand straight,

ἀλλ᾽ οἱ μὲν ἐδηδοκότες ὀλίγον
but — (those) indeed having-eaten (who had eaten only a) little,

σφόδρα ἐῴκεσαν μεθύουσι, δ᾽ οἱ
very-much resembled (persons) being-drunk (intoxicated), but —

πολὺ μαινομένοις,
(those who had eaten) much (resembled those) being-mad

δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀποθνήσκουσι.
(acted like mad men), and — — (some like men) dying.

21. Πολλοί δὲ ἔκειντο οὕτω, ὥσπερ
Many indeed lay (on the ground) so, as-if (a)

τροπῆς γεγενημένης, καὶ ἡ ἀθυμία
defeat-in-battle had-taken-place, and the dejection (despondency)

ἦν πολλὴ. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οὐδεὶς μὲν ἀπέθανε,
was great. But on-the next-day no-one indeed died,

δ᾽ ἀνεφρόνουν ἀμφὶ που τὴν αὐτὴν
and they-recovered (their) senses somewhere about the same

ὥραν· δὲ τρίτῃ καὶ
hour (they lost them on the day previous); and on (the) third and

τετάρτῃ ἀνίσταντο, ὥσπερ ἐκ φαρμακοποσίας.
fourth (days) they-got-up, as-if from (after) taking-physic.

22. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμούς,
Hence indeed they-proceeded two days'-march,
ἑπτὰ παρασάγγας, καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ
(a distance of) seven parasangs, and came to
θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα, Ἑλληνίδα
(the) sea at Trapezus, (a) Greek
πόλιν, οἰκουμένην, ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ
city, populous, (situated) on the Euxine
Πόντῳ, ἀποικίαν Σινωπέων, ἐν
Sea, (a) colony of (the) Sinopians, (but lying) in
τῇ χώρᾳ Κόλχων. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν
the territory of (the) Colchians. There they-remained
ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ἡμέρας ἐν ταῖς κώμαις τῶν
about — thirty days in the villages of-the
Κόλχων. 23. Κἀντεῦθεν ὁρμώμενοι ἐληίζοντο
Colchians. And-thence making-incursions, they-plundered
τὴν Κολχίδα. Δὲ Τραπεζούντιοι
— (the country of) Colchis. And (the) Trapezians
παρεῖχον ἀγορὰν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, καὶ τε
provided (a) market for-the camp, and not-only
ἐδέξαντο τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ
received the Greeks (hospitably in their city), but-also
ἔδοσαν ζένια βοῦς
gave (them) gifts-of-hospitality-and-friendship, (namely) oxen
καὶ ἄλφιτα καὶ οἶνον. 24. Δὲ καὶ συνδιεπράτ-
and barley-meal and wine. And also they-
τοντο ὑπὲρ τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων,
negotiated (with them) for (in behalf) of-the neighboring Colchians,
μάλιστα τῶν οἰκούντων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ·
especially — (those) dwelling (who dwelt) in the plain;
καὶ ζένια καὶ ἦλθον παρ'
and gifts-(pledges)-of-hospitality also came (were brought) from
ἐκείνων βόες. 25. Μετὰ τοῦτο δὲ
them, (namely) oxen. (Soon) after this indeed
παρεσκευάζοντο τὴν θυσίαν, ἣν εὔξαντο·
they-prepared (to perform) the sacrifice which they-had-vowed;

δ' ἱκανοὶ βόες ἦλθον αὐτοῖς ἀποθῦσαι
and sufficient oxen came (had been brought) to-them to-sacrifice

τῷ Διὶ τῷ σωτῆρι, καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ
(offer) to — Jupiter the Preserver, and to — Hercules,

ἡγεμόσυνα, καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ἃ
for-their-safe-conduct, and to-the other gods (that) which

εὔξαντο. Δὲ καὶ ἐποίησαν γυμνικὸν
(whatever) they-had-vowed. And also they-made (a) gymnastic

ἀγῶνα, ἐν τῷ ὄρει, ἔνθαπερ ἐσκή-
contest (celebrated games), on the hill where they-were

νουν. Δ' εἵλοντο Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην
encamped. And they-chose Dracontius, (the) Spartan

(ὃς ἔφυγε οἴκοθεν ὢν
(who became-an-exile from-home being (when he was quite) (a)

παῖς, ἄκων κατακτανών παῖδα,
boy, (he) unwillingly (unintentionally) having-killed (a) boy

πατάξας ξυήλῃ)
(child), having-struck (by striking) (him) with (a) dagger),

τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι δρόμου,
not-only to-take-care (to provide) for (a) race (prepare

καὶ προστατῆσαι τοῦ ἀγῶνος.
the course), but to-preside-over the contest (games).

26. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο, παρέ-
When indeed the sacrifice was (performed), they-

δοσαν τὰ δέρματα τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἐκέλευον
gave the skins to — Dracontius, and requested

ἡγεῖσθαι ὅπου πεποιηκὼς εἴη
(him) to-lead (conduct them) (to the place) where he-may-have-made

τὸν δρόμον. Ὁ δὲ δείξας, οὗπερ
the course. — But (he), having-pointed (to the place) where

ἐτύγχανον ἑστηκότες, ἔφη, ὁ οὗτος λόφος
they-happened (to be) standing, said, — "This hill (is a)

κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου τις ἂν
most-excellent (place) for-running (in) whatever-direction any-one may

βούληται. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται πα-
desire." "(But) how, then," said-they, "will-they-be-able to-

λαίειν ἐν οὕτως σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ;
wrestle on (ground) so hard and bushy (rough)?"
ὁ δ', εἶπε, ὁ καταπεσών, ἀνιάσεται
—"But," said-he, "(the one) who having-fallen (falls) will-be-distressed
τι μᾶλλον. 27. Δὲ παῖδες
(hurt) some (what) the-more (on account of it)." And boys
μὲν, οἱ πλεῖστοι τῶν αἰχμαλώτων,
indeed, the most (of them) — (from those) taken-prisoners,
ἠγωνίζοντο στάδιον, δὲ δόλιχον
contended (in the) stadium (short course), and (in the) dolichon
πλείους ἢ ἑξήκοντα Κρῆτες ἔθεον, δὲ
(long course) more than sixty Cretans ran, while
ἕτεροι πάλην καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ
others (contended in) wrestling and boxing and (the)
παγκράτιον. Καὶ ἐγένετο καλὴ θέα·
pancratium. And it-was (a) fine (grand) sight;
γὰρ πολλοὶ κατέβησαν, καὶ, ἅτε τῶν
[for many went-down [entered the lists], and, as —
ἑταίρων θεωμένων, ἐγίγνετο πολλὴ φιλο-
(their) companions were-looking-on, there-was much emu-
νεικία. 28. Δὲ καὶ ἵπποι ἔθεον· καὶ ἔδει
lation (rivalry). And — horses (also) ran; and it-was-necessary
αὐτούς, ἐλάσαντας κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς,
for-them, having-galloped along-down the steep, (and)
ἀναστρέψαντας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, πάλιν ἄγειν
having-turned-round in the sea, again to-lead-back
ἄνω πρὸς τὸν βωμόν. Καὶ μὲν
upwards (come up again) to the altar. And indeed (going)
κάτω οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκυλινδοῦτο·
downwards (in the descent) — many (of the horses) rolled
δ' ἄνω πρὸς τὸ
(down); but (coming) upwards (in the ascent) against the
ἰσχυρῶς ὄρθιον, οἱ ἵπποι μόλις ἐπορεύ-
exceedingly steep (ground), the horses (could) scarcely get-
οντο βάδην· ἔνθα ἐγίγνετο πολλὴ
up step-by-step (walking); then there-was (arose) much

κραυγὴ, καὶ γέλως, καὶ παρακέλευσις
(great) shouting, and laughter, and cheering
αὐτῶν.
from-them (the people).

Books for your Library

No Private School, High School or College Library is complete without having on its shelves one or more of the following books for its students to refer to.

Teachers are ordering many of these books for their own personal use. Notice particularly the starred (*) lines.

*Pros and Cons (Both Sides of Important Questions Discussed)	$1.50
*Three Minute Declamations for College Men	1.00
*Three Minute Readings for College Girls	1.00
*Mackenzie's Manual of Ethics	1.50
*Gordy's New Psychology	1.25
*Classic French-English, English-French Dictionary	2.00
* " German-English, English-German Dictionary	2.00
* " Italian-English, English-Italian Dictionary	2.00
* " Latin-English, English-Latin Dictionary	2.00
* " Greek-English, English-Greek Dictionary	2.00
*Handy Spanish-English, English-Spanish Dictionary	1.00
* " Italian-English, English-Italian Dictionary	1.00
White's Latin-English Dictionary	1.20
" English-Latin Dictionary	1.20
" Latin-English, English-Latin Dictionary	2.25
*Hinds & Noble's New Testament Lexicon	1.00
*Greek-English Interlinear New Testament, with Lexicon	4.00
*Hebrew-English Interlinear Old Testament, Vol. 1, Gen. and Ex.	4.00
Craig's Revised Common School Question Book with Answers	1.50
Constitution of the U. S. in German, French and English	.50
Bad English Corrected	.50
How to Become Quick at Figures	1.00
*How to Punctuate Correctly	.25
*Hinds & Noble's New Letter Writer	.75
*Likes and Opposites (Synonyms and Antonyms)	.50

We will send postpaid, subject to your approval, any of the books on this list upon receipt of the price, or if you have any school or college books, new or second-hand, which you would like to send us in exchange, we will accept them in payment, provided they are kinds we can use. Mention "The Library" when you write us.

HINDS & NOBLE,

4-5-13-14 Cooper Institute, New York City.

Dictionaries: The Classic Series. Half morocco, **$2.00 each.**
Especially planned and carefully produced to meet the requirements of students and teachers in colleges, and high schools. Up to the times in point of contents, authoritative while modern as regards scholarship, instantly accessible in respect to arrangement, of best quality as to typography and paper, and in a binding at once elegant and durable. Size 8x5½ inches.

French-English and English-French Dictionary, 1122 pages.
German-English and Eng.-Ger. Dictionary, 1112 pages.
Italian-English and English-Italian Dict., 1187 pages.
Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary, 941 pages.
Greek-English and English-Greek Dict., 1056 pages.
English-Greek Dictionary. Price $1.00.

Dictionaries: The Handy Series. "Scholarship modern and accurate; and really beautiful print." *Pocket edition*, $1.00.
Spanish-English and English-Spanish, 474 pages, $1.00.
Italian-English and English-Italian, 428 pages, $1.00.
New-Testament Lexicon. *Entirely new. Just published.* $1.00.
Up-to-date in every respect — typographically, and lexicographically. *Contains a fine presentation of the Synonyms of the Greek Testament, with hints on discriminating usage.*

Liddell & Scott's Abridged Greek Lexicon, $1.20.

White's Latin-English Dictionary, $1.20.

White's English-Latin Dictionary, $1.20.

White's Latin-English and Eng.-Lat. Dict., $2.25.

Completely Parsed Caesar, Book I. Each page bears *interlinear* translation, *literal* translation, parsing, grammatical references. *All at a glance without turning a leaf.* **$1.50.** *Sept mber.*

Caesar's Idioms. Complete, with English equivalents. **25 cts.**
Alphabetically arranged for ready reference, and enabling the pupil to acquire quickly a ready facility in solving the idioms.

Hossfeld Methods: Spanish, Italian, German, French, **$1.00** *each* Keys for each, 35 cts. Letter Writer for each, $1.00 each.

Wilhelm Tell. *German* Text, *English* Footnotes, *Vocab.* 50 cts.

Minna von Barnhelm. *Ger.* Text, *Eng.* Footnotes, *Vocab.* 50 cts.

Brooks' Historia Sacra, with 1st Latin Lessons. Revised, *with Vocabulary.* **Price 50 cents.** This justly popular volume, besides the Epitome Historiæ Sacræ, the Notes, and the Vocabulary, contains 100 pages of elementary Latin Lessons, making it practicable for the teacher, without recourse to any other book, to carry the pupil quickly and in easy steps over the ground preparatory to a profitable reading of the Epitome Historiæ Sacræ.

Brooks' First Lessons in Greek, *with Lexicon.* Revised Edition. Covering sufficient ground to enable the student to read the New Testament in the Greek. **Price 50 cts.**

Brooks' New Virgil's Æneid, *with Lexicon.* Revised Edition. Notes. Metrical Index Map *Questions for Examinations.* **$1.50.**

Brooks' New Ovid's Metamorphoses, *with Lexicon.* Revised Edition. Expurgated and adapted for mixed classes. Elucidated by an Analysis and Explanation of each Fable. With Notes, and *Questions for Examinations* **Price reduced to $1.50.**

Hinds & Noble's Hebrew Grammar, $1.00.

Psychology Simplified for Teachers. Gordy's well-known "New Psychology." Familiar talks to teachers and parents on how to observe the child-mind, and on the value of child-study in the successful teaching and rearing of the young. With Questions on each Lesson. **$1.25.** *Twenty-second thousand!*

Page's Theory and Practice of Teaching. With Questions and Answers. Paper, **50 cts.** Cloth, **$1.00.**

Dialogues. Hinds and Noble's *new idea.* Being life-like episodes from popular authors like Stevenson, Crawford, Mark Twain, Dickens, Scott, arranged in the form of simple plays, with every detail explained as to dress, make-up, utensils, furniture, etc., for school-room or parlor. **$1.50.** *Ready in September.*

College Men's 3-Minute Declamations. Up-to-date selections from live men like Chauncey Depew, Hewitt, Gladstone, Cleveland, Pres't Eliot (Harvard) and Carter (Williams) and others. New material with vitality in it for prize speaking. *Very popular.* **$1.00.**

College Maids' 3-Minute Readings. Up-to-date recitations from living men and women. On the plan of the popular College Men's Declamations, and on the same high plane. **$1.00.**

Commencement Parts. "Efforts" for all occasions. **$1.50.**

Acme Declamation Book. *Single pieces and dialogues.* For boys and girls of all ages; all occasions. Paper, 30 cts.; cloth, 50 cts.

Handy Pieces to Speak. *Single pieces and dialogues.* Primary, 20 cts.; Intermediate, 20 cts.; Advanced 20 cts. *All three for 50 cts.*

Pros and Cons. Complete debates of the affirmative and negative of the stirring questions of the day, by A. H. Craig, author of the famous Common School Question and Answer Book, now in its 187th thousand. *A decided hit.* **$1.50.**

Smith's New Class Register. The best of record books. 50 cts.

Likes and Opposites. Hinds & Noble's new Complete Synonyms and their Opposites. **50 cts.**

Letter Writing. Hinds & Noble's new handy rules for correct correspondence. **75 cts.**

Punctuation. Hinds & Noble's new Manual. Paper, 25 cts.

New Speller. Hinds & Noble's new graded lists of 5000 words which one *must* know how to spell. **25 cts.**

Craig's Revised Common School Question Book, with Answers. Enlarged Edition, revised for 1898. **$1.50.**

How to Become Quick at Figures. Enlarged Edition. $1.00.

How to Prepare for a Civil Service Examination. Enlarged Edition for 1898. Revised Civil Service Rules. Full instructions for both sexes. *Has helped thousands to pass.* **50 cts.**

Bad English. Humiliating "Breaks" corrected. **30 cts.**

Composition Writing Made Easy. *Very successful.* Five Grades, viz.: A, B, C, D, E. 20 cts. each. *All five for 75 cts.*

U. S. Constitution in German, French, and English, *parallel columns*, with explanatory marginal Notes. Cloth, 50c; paper, 25c.

Bookkeeping Blanks at 30 cts. per set. Five Blank-Books to the set. Adapted for use with any text-book - Elementary, Practical, or Common School. *Used everywhere.*—Price, 30 cts. per set.

Handy Literal Translations. Cloth, *pocket.* **50 cents** per vol.
Eighty-five volumes, viz.: (*See also "Tutorial Translations."*)

Cæsar's Gallic War. *The Seven Books.*
Cæsar's *Civil* War.
Catullus.
Cicero's Brutus.
Cicero's Defence of Roscius.
Cicero De Officiis.
Cicero On Old Age and Friendship.
Cicero On Oratory.
Cicero On The Nature of the Gods.
Cicero's Orations. *Four vs. Catiline; and others. Enlarged edition.*
Cicero's Select Letters.
Cicero's Tusculan Disputations.
Cornelius Nepos, *complete.*
Eutropius.
Horace, *complete.*
Juvenal's Satires, *complete.*
Livy, Books I and II.
Livy, Books XXI and XXII.
Lucretius, *in preparation.*
Ovid's Metamorphoses. *complete in 2 volumes.*
Phædrus' Fables.
Plautus' Captivi, and Mostellaria.
Plautus' Pseudolus, and Miles Gloriosus.
Plautus' Trinummus, and Menæchmi.
Pliny's Select Letters, *complete in 2 volumes.*
Quintilian, Books X and XII.
Roman Life in Latin Prose and Verse.
Sallust's Catiline, and The Jugurthine War.
Seneca On Benefits.
Tacitus' Annals. *The 1st Six Books.*
Tacitus' Germany and Agricola.
Tacitus On Oratory.
Terence: Andria, Adelphi, and Phormio.
Terence: Heautontimorumenos.
Virgil's Æneid, *the 1st Six Books.*
Virgil's Eclogues and Georgics.
Viri Romæ.

Æschines Against Ctesiphon.
Æschylus' Prometheus Bound; Seven Against Thebes.
Æschylus' Agamemnon.
Aristophanes' Clouds.
Aristophanes' Birds, and Frogs.
Demosthenes On the Crown.
Demosthenes' Olynthiacs and Philippics.
Euripides' Alcestis, and Electra.
Euripides' Bacchantes, and Hercules Furens.
Euripides' Hecuba, and Andromache.
Euripides' Iphigenia In Aulis, In Tauris.
Euripides' Medea.
Herodotus, Books VI and VII.
Herodotus, Book VIII.
Homer's Iliad, *the 1st Six Books.*
Homer's Odyssey, *the 1st Twelve Books.*
Isocrates' Panegyric, *in preparation.*
Lucian's Select Dialogues, *2 volumes.*
Lysias' Orations *Complete.* The only Translation extant.

Handy Literal Translations, continued next page.

Handy Literal Translations (*Continued.*)

Plato's Apology, Crito, and Phædo.
Plato's Gorgias.
Plato's Protagoras, and Euthyphron.
Plato's Republic, *in preparation.*
Sophocles' Œdipus Tyrannus, Electra, and Antigone.
Sophocles' Œdipus Coloneus.
Thucydides, *complete in 2 volumes.*
Xenophon's Anabasis, *the 1st Four Books.*
Xenophon's Cyropædia, *complete in 2 volumes.*
Xenophon's Hellenica, and Symposium (The Banquet).
Xenophon's Memorabilia, *complete.*

Freytag's Die Journalisten (*paper*).
Goethe's Egmont.
Goethe's Faust.
Goethe's Hermann and Dorothea.
Goethe's Iphigenia In Tauris.
Lessing's Minna von Barnhelm.
Lessing's Nathan the Wise.
Lessing's Emilia Galotti.
Schiller's Ballads.
Schiller's Der Neffe als Onkel.
Schiller's Maid of Orleans.
Schiller's Maria Stuart.
Schiller's Wallenstein's Death.
Schiller's William Tell.
Corneille's The Cid.
Feuillet's Romance of a Poor Young Man.
Racine's Athalie.

Interlinear Translations. Classic Series. Cloth. **$1.50 per vol.**

Cæsar.
Cicero's Orations, *Enlarged Edition.*
Cicero On Old Age and Friendship.
Cornelius Nepos.
Horace, *complete.*
Livy. Books XXI and XXII.
Ovid's Metamorphoses, *complete.*
Sallust's Catiline, and Jugurthine War.
Virgil's Æneid, *First Six Books, Revised.*
Virgil's Æneid, *complete, the Twelve Books.*
Virgil's Eclogues, Georgics, *and Last Six Books Æneid.*
Xenophon's Anabasis.
Xenophon's Memorabilia.
Homer's Iliad, *First Six Books, Revised.*
Demosthenes On the Crown.
New Testament, *Without Notes.*

Completely Parsed Caesar, Book I. Each page bears *interlinear* translation, *literal* translation, parsing, grammatical references. *All at a glance without turning a leaf.* **$1.50.** *September.*

New Testament, with Notes, and Lexicon. *Interlinear Greek-English, with King James Version in the margins.* New edition, with finely discriminating presentation of the Synonyms of the Greek Testament. *Cloth*, $4.00; *half-leath* , $5.00; *Divinity Circuit*, $6.00.

Old Testament, Vol. I. Genesis and Exodus. *Interlinear Hebrew-English, with Notes*; *King James Version and Revised Version in the margins; and with the Hebrew alphabet and Tables of the Hebrew verb.* Cloth, $4.00; half-leath., $5.00; Divinity Circuit, $6.00.

Tutorial Literal Translations, 41 vols. (*See Tutorial Texts.*)

Cicero Ad Atticum, Book IV., *with Test Papers*, 50 cents.
Cicero De Finibus, Bk. I , Bk II., *w th Test Papers, each* 50 cents.
Cicero's Philippic, II., 50 cents.
Cicero Pro Balbo, 50 cents.
Cicero Pro Cluentio, 50 cents.
Cicero Pro Plancio, 50 cents.
Livy, Book III., Book V., Book VI., Book IX., *each* 50 cents.
Ovid's Fasti, Books III.–IV., 50 cents.
Ovid's Heroides, 1-2-3-5-7-12, 50 cents.
Ovid's Tristia, Book I., Book III., *each* 50 cents.
Tacitus' History, Book I., 50 cents.
Tacitus' History, Book III., *with Test Papers*, 60 cents.
Vergil's Æneid, Books VII., VIII , IX., X., XI., XII., *each* 50 cts.
Vergil's Æneid, Books VII.–X , 50 cents.
Æschylus' Eumenides, *with Test Papers*, 50 cents.
Æschylus' Persae, 50 cents.
Andocides De Mysteriis, $1.00.
Aristophanes' Vespae, *with Test Papers*, 50 cents.
Demosthenes' Adversus Leptinem, *with Test Papers*, 50 cents.
Demosthenes' Androtion, 50 cents.
Demosthenes' Meidias, 75 cents.
Euripides' Heraclidæ, 50 cents.
Euripides' Hippolytus, 50 cents.
Herodotus, Book III., 50 cents.
Homer's Iliad, Book XXIV, 50 cents.
Homer's Odyssey, Books IX.–XIV., *with Test Papers*, 60 cents.
Homer's Odyssey, Book XVII. 50 cents.
Plato's Laches, 50 cents.
Sophocles' Ajax, *with Test Papers*, 50 cents.
Sophocles' Philoctetes, 50 cents.
Xenophon's Anabasis, Book VII., 50 cents.
Xenophon's Oeconomicus, 50 cents.
"*Teachers' Editions*" also contain *Test Papers* (below).

Tutorial Latin, and Greek Texts, Teachers' Editions, etc.

A most helpful feature of the TEACHERS' EDITIONS is that, besides the Text, the Notes, and the Translation, they contain also sets of Test Papers facilitating examinations, and Vocabularies with the correct inflections and renderings of all words occurring in the text that because of peculiar significance or difficult construction, suggest special guidance. Moreover, the Test Papers and the Vocabularies are interleaved.

Æschylus' Persae, Text and Notes, Price, 75 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Æschylus' Prometheus Vinctus, Text and Notes, Price, 60 cents.
See "*Handy Literal Translation,*" 50 cents.
Æschylus' Septem Contra Thebas, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
See "*Handy Literal Translation,*" 50 cents.
Aristophanes' Ranæ, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
See "*Handy Literal Translation,*" 50 cents.
Cæsar's Gallic War, **Book I.,** Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Cæsar's Gallic War, **Book II.,** Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Cæsar's Gallic War, **Book III.,** Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Cæsar's Gallic War **Book V.,** Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition with Translation, 70 cents.
Cæsar's Gallic War, **Book VI.,** Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.

Tutorial Classic Texts and Teachers' Editions—(*Continued.*)

Cæsar's Gallic War, **Book VII.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Cicero Ad Atticum, **Book IV.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Literal Translation, with Test Papers, 50 cents.
Cicero de Amicitia, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, with Test Papers, and the Vocabularies, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Cicero De Finibus, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 80 cents.
Cicero De Finibus, **Book II.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
Literal Translation, with Test Papers, 50 cents.
Cicero De Senectute, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Cicero In Catilinam **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Cicero Pro Archia, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Cicero Pro Balbo, Text and Notes, 40 cents
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Cicero Pro Cluentio, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.20.
Cicero Pro Marcello, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Cicero Pro Milone, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.20.
Cicero Pro Plancio, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Cornelius Nepos, Text and Notes, 25 cents.
See Handy Literal Translation, 50 cts.; *Interlinear*, $1.50.
Demosthenes' Androtion, Text and Notes, $1.00.
Literal Translation, 50 cents.
Demosthenes' Meidias, Text and Notes, $1.30.
Literal Translation, 75 cents.
Euripides' Alcestis, Text and Notes, 70 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Euripides' Andromache, Text and Notes, 70 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Euripides' Bacchæ, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.20.
Euripides' Hippolytus, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.20.
Herodotus, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, $1 00.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.40.
Herodotus, **Book VI.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Herodotus, **Book VIII.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
See, "*Handy Literal Translation*," 50 cents.
Homer's Iliad, **Book VI.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Homer's Iliad, **Book XXIV.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
Homer's Odyssey, **Books IX.-X.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Homer's Odyssey, **Books XI.-XII.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Homer's Odyssey, **Books XIII.-XIV.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Literal Trans., **Books IX.-XIV.**, *with Test Papers*, 60 cents.
Homer's Odyssey, **Book XVII.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Horace's Epodes, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
See "*Handy Literal Translation*," 50 cts.; "*Interlinear*," $1.50.
Horace's Odes, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Horace's Odes, **Book II.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Horace's Odes, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.

Horace's Odes, **Book IV.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Horace's Odes, **Books I., II., III., IV.**, Text and Notes, $1.00.
See "*Handy Translation*," 50 cents. "*Interlinear*," $1.50.
Horace's Satires, Text and Notes, 80 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.20.
Horace's Epistles, Text and Notes, 80 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.20.
Juvenal's Satires, **I., III., IV.**, Text and Notes, 80 cents.
Juvenal's Satires, **VIII., X., XIII.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Juvenal's Satires, **XI., XIII., XIV.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
See "*Handy Literal Translation*," 50 cents.
Livy, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Livy, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Livy, **Book V.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Livy, **Book VI.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Livy, **Book IX.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.20.
Livy, **Book XXI.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Livy, **Book XXII.**, Chapters 1 to 51, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Ovid's Fasti, **Books III., IV.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Ovid's Heroides, **Books I., V., XII.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Literal Translation of same, 50 cents.
Ovid's Heroides, 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 12, Text and Notes, 70 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.20.
Ovid's Metamorphoses, **Book XI.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Ovid's Metamorphoses, **Book XIII.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Ovid's Metamorphoses, **Book XIV.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Ovid's Tristia, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Ovid's Tristia, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Plato's Laches, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.20.
Plato's Phaedo, Text and Notes, 80 cents.
See "*Handy Literal Translation*," 50 cents.
Sallust's Catiline, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 90 cents.
Sophocles' Ajax, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
Literal Translation, with Test Papers, 50 cents.
Sophocles' Antigone, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Sophocles' Electra, Text and Notes, 80 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.20.
Tacitus' Annals, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Tacitus' Annals, **Book II.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
See "*Handy Literal Translation*," 50 cents.
Tacitus' Histories, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.

Tutorial Classic Texts and Teachers' Editions—(*Continued.*)

Terence's Adelphi, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
See "*Handy Literal Translation*," 50 cents.
Thucydides, **Book I.**, Notes and Test Papers only, 40 cents.
Thucydides, **Book VII.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
See "*Handy Literal Translation*," 50 cents.
Vergil's Eclogues, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.20.
Vergil's Georgics, **Books I., II.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.20.
Vergil's Aeneid, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
See "*Handy*" *Translation*, 50 cents; "*Interlinear*," $1.50.
Vergil's Aeneid, **Book II.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Vergil's Aeneid, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Vergil's Aeneid, **Book IV.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Literal Translation, 50 cents.
Vergil's Aeneid, **Book V.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Vergil's Aeneid, **Book VI.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Vergil's Aeneid, **Book VII.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Vergil's Aeneid, **Book VIII.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Vergil's Aeneid, **Book IX.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Vergil's Aeneid, **Book X.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Literal Translation, Books IX-X, 50 cents.
Vergil's Aeneid, **Book XI.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Literal Translation, 50 cents.
Vergil's Aeneid, **Book XII.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Literal Translation, 50 cents
Xenophon's Anabasis, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.
Xenophon's Anabasis, **Book IV.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
See "*Handy Literal Translation*," 50 cents.
Xenophon's Cyropaedeia, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.
See "*Handy Literal Translation*," 50 cents.
Xenophon's Hellenica, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, 80 cents.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.00.
Xenophon's Hellenica, **Book IV.**, Text and Notes, 80 cents.
See "*Handy Literal Translation*," 50 cents.
Xenophon's Oeconomicus, Text and Notes, $1.00.
Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, $1.40.

UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL SERIES.

Latin and Greek Texts. See above.

Latin and Greek Grammars and Readers.

Latin Grammar, The Tutorial, 80 cents.
Exercises to same, 40 cents. *Key to Exercises*, 70 cents.
Latin Composition and Syntax, *with Vocabularies*, 60 cents.
Key to same, 60 cents.
Preceptors' Latin Course, 70 cents. *Key to same*, 70 cents.
Latin Reader, The Tutorial, *with complete Vocabulary*, 60 cents.
Key to Parts I., II., and V., 60 cents.
Higher Latin Reader, $1.00. *Key to Part II. of same*, 70 cents.
Greek Reader, The Tutorial, 60 cents.

UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL SERIES. — (*Continued.*)

Higher Greek Reader, The Tutorial, 60 cents.
Key to Part II. of same, 60 cents.

History: English, Roman, Grecian.

English History, Intermediate Text Book of: *A Longer History.*
Volume I., to 1485, $1.00.
Volume II., 1485 to 1603, $1.00.
Volume III., 1603 to 1714, $1.00.
Volume IV., 1714 to 1837, $1.00.
Extra volume, 1685 to 1801, $1.00.
Synopsis English Hist., *with Test Questions:*
1485 to 1603; 1660 to 1714; 1760 to 1798; *each* 40 cents.
Grecian History, in six Volumes.
1. Early Grecian History, to 495 B.C., 70 cents.
2. History of Greece, 495 to 431 B.C., 70 cents.
3. " " 431 to 404 B C., 70 cents.
4. " " 404 to 362 B.C., 70 cents.
5. " " 371 to 323 B.C., 70 cents.
6. History of Sicily, 490 to 289 B.C, 70 cents.
Synopsis of Grecian History, Interleaved, *with Test Questions:*
Part I. to 495 B.C., 25 cents.
Part II. 495 to 404 B.C., 25 cents.
Part III. 404 to 323 B.C., 25 cents.
Also 495 to 358 B.C., 25 cents.
Also 382 to 338 B C., 25 cents.
Sicily, 490 to 289 B C., 25 cents.
Rome, The Tutorial History of, to A.D. 14, 80 cents.
Roman History, Outlines of, 55 cents.
Rome, A Longer History:
1. 287 to 202 B.C., 80 cents.
2. 202 to 133 B.C., 80 cents.
3. 133 to 78 B.C., 80 cents.
4. 78 to 31 B.C., 80 cents.
5. 31 B.C. to 96 A.D., The Early Principate, 60 cents.
Synopsis of Roman History, Interleaved, *with Test Questions:*
1. 202 to 133 B.C., 25 cents.
2. 133 to 78 B.C., 25 cents.
3. 63 B.C. to 14 A.D., 25 cents.
4. 31 B.C. to 37 A.D. 25 cents.
Also to 14 A.D., 25 cents.
Also 14 to 96 A.D., 25 cents.

English Language, Literature, etc.

Low's English Language, 60 cents.
Low's Intermediate Text Book of English Literature:
Volume I., to 1580, 80 cents.
Volume II., 1558 to 1660, 80 cents.
Volume III , 1660 to 1798, 80 cents.
Ayenbite of Inwyt, *A Translation by Wyatt*, 70 cents.
Dryden's Essay on Dramatic Poesy, edited by Low, 80 cents.
Havelok the Dane, *A Translation by Wyatt*, 70 cents.
Milton's Paradise Regained, edited by Wyatt, 70 cents.
Milton's Samson Agonistes, edited by Wyatt, 60 cents.
Milton's Sonnets, *with Test Questions*, edited by Masom, 40 cents.
Saxon Chronicle, 800 to 1001 A.D., *A Translation by Low*, 70 cents.
Spenser's Fairie Queene, **Bk. I.**, with Notes and Glossary, 70 cts.
Chaucer's Man of Law's Tale, 70 cents.
Chaucer's Prologue to Knight's Tale, 70 cents.
Langland's Piers Plowman, edited by Davis, $1.20.

French Grammar, Readers, etc.

French Grammar, $1.20.

Preceptor's French Course, 70 cents. *Key to same*, 70 cents.
French Prose Composition, 70 cents. *Key to same*, $1.00.
French Accidence, 60 cents. *Key to same*, 70 cents.
French Syntax, 60 cents *Key to Syntax*, 70 cents.
French Prose Reader, *with Vocabulary*, 60 cents.
Key and Notes to same, 80 cents.
Advanced French Reader, 60 cents.
Higher French Reader, edited by Weekley, $1.00.
Preceptor's French Reader, 40 cents.
Bonnechose's Bertrand du Guesclin, edited by Weekley, 55 cents.
Souvestre's Le Serf, 40 cents.

Mental and Moral Science.

Mackenzie's Manual of Ethics, $1 50.
Welton's Manual of Logic, **Volume I.**, Deductive, $2.00.
Welton's Manual of Logic, **Volume II.**, Inductive, $1.60.
Questions on Logic, 70 cents. *Key to same*, 70 cents.

Mathematics and Mechanics.

Algebra, Tutorial Intermediate, $1.00.
Astronomy, Elementary Mathematical, $1.50.
Geometry, Elements of Coördinate, 80 cents. *Key to same*, $1.00.
Worked Examples in Coörd. Geom., 60 cents.
Geometry of Similar Figures and The Plane, 70 cents.
Mechanics, Elem'y Text Book of, 80 cents.
Key to same, $1.00.
Mechanics, Advanced, **Vol. II.**, Statics, $1.00.
Mechanics, The Preceptor's, 70 cents.
Mechanics, First Stage, 55 cents.
Mechanics of Fluids, First Stage, 55 cents.
Dynamics, Text Book of, 60 cents.
Statics, The Tutorial, $1.00.
Statics, Text Book of, 60 cents.
Hydrostatics, Elem'y Text Book of, 50 cents. *Key to same*, 55 cts.
Worked Examples in Hydrostatics and Mechanics, 40 cents.
Euclid, **Books I-II.**, 25 cents.
Euclid, **Books I-IV.**, 70 cents.
Trigonometry, The Tutorial, $1.00.
Trigonometry, Synopsis of, *Interleaved*, 40 cents.
Mensuration of the Simpler Figures, 60 cents.

Sciences.

Biology, Text Book of, **Part I.**, $1.00.
Biology, Text Book of, **Part II.**, $1.00.
Zoology, Text Book of, $1.60.
Botany, Text Book of, $1.60.
Heat and Light, Elem'y Text Book of, $1.00.
Heat and Light Problems, *with Worked Examples*, 40 cents.
Heat, Advanced Text Book of, $1.00.
Heat, Text Book of, $1.00. Elementary Heat, 55 cents.
Light, Text Book of, $1.00. Elementary Light, 55 cents.
Sound, Text Book of, $1.00. Elementary Sound, 40 cents.
Sound, Heat, and Light, First Stage, 55 cents.
Magnetism and Electricity, Text Book of, $1.00.
Magnetism and Electricity, First Stage, 55 cents.
Chemistry, Part I., Non-Metals, $1.00. Part II., Metals, $1.00.
Chemistry, First Stage of Inorganic, 55 cents.
Chemistry, Synopsis of Non-Metallic, *Interleaved*, 40 cents.
Qualitative Analysis, Elementary, 40 cents.
Analysis of a Simple Salt, 70 cents.
Physiography. First Stage. 55 cents.
General Elementary Science, $1.00.
Chemical Analysis, Qualitative and Quantitative, $1.00.

College Men's 3-minute Declamations

$1.00—CLOTH, 381 PAGES, WITH INDEX—$1.00

Here at last is a volume containing just what college students have been calling for time out of mind, but never could find—something besides the old selections, which, though once inspiring, now fail to thrill the audience, because declaimed to death! **Live topics presented by live men! Full of vitality for prize speaking.**

Such is the matter with which this volume abounds. To mention a few names—each speaking in his well-known style and characteristic vein:

Chauncey M. Depew
Abram S. Hewitt
Carl Schurz
William E. Gladstone
Edward J. Phelps
Benjamin Harrison
Grover Cleveland
General Horace Porter
Doctor Storrs
President Eliot (*Harvard*)
George Parsons Lathrop
Bishop Potter
Sir Charles Russell
President Carter (*Williams*)
T. De Witt Talmage
Ex-Pres. White (*Cornell*)
Rev. Newman Smyth
Emilio Castelar

Here, too, sound the familiar voices of George William Curtis, Lowell, Blaine, Phillips Brooks, Beecher, Garfield, Disraeli, Bryant, Grady, and Choate. Poets also:—Longfellow, Holmes, Tennyson, Byron, Whittier, Schiller, Shelley, Hood, and others.

More than a hundred other authors besides! We have not space to enumerate. But the selections from them are all just the thing. And all the selections are brief.

In addition to a perspicuous list of contents, the volume contains a complete general index by titles and authors; and also a separate index of authors, thus enabling one who remembers only the title to find readily the author, or who recalls only the author to find just as readily all of his selections.

Another invaluable feature:—Preceding each selection are given, so far as ascertainable, the vocation, the residence, and the dates of birth and death of the author; and the occasion to which we owe the oration, or address, or poem.

Like the companion volume, College Girls' Readings, this work contains many "pieces" suitable both for girls and boys, and the two books may well stand side by side upon the shelf of every student and every teacher, ever ready with some selection that is sure to please, and exactly suited to the speaker and to the occasion.

HINDS & NOBLE

4-5-13-14 Cooper Institute New York City

Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store

College Girls' Three-minute Readings

$1.00—CLOTH, 500 PAGES, WITH INDEX—$1.00

Here is a volume for American girls by American women--an ideal long in demand, now realized for the first time. In this book patriotism is the keynote dominating a series of new, fresh, *speakable* selections, pathetic, humorous, descriptive, oratorical; running, in fact, the gamut of the emotions. A book for the American girl and the American young woman in the college, the high school, the academy, and *the home.*

This new book is new in every sense of the word, but particularly in voicing the golden thoughts of scores of the *living* representative women of America—women educators, women philanthropists, women reformers.

Here is a *partial* list of the contributors:

Mrs. A. Giddings Park
Eva Lovett Cameron (*Brooklyn Eagle*)
Edith M. Thomas
Emma Lazarus
Adelaide Procter
Celia Thaxter
Christina Rossetti
Anna Robertson Lindsay
J. Ellen Foster
Margaret E. Sangster
Clara Barton
Frances E. Willard
Kate Douglas Wiggin
Isabel A. Mallon (*Ladies' Home Journal*)
"Susan Coolidge"
Agnes E. Mitchell
Rev. Anna H. Shaw
Margaret Junkin Preston
Amelia Barr
Norah Perry
Alice Cary
Adeline Whitney
Emily Warren
Lucy Larcom
Ella Wheeler Wilcox
Harriet Beecher Stowe
Mary Mapes Dodge
"Gail Hamilton"

and there are many others.

A brief note, happily worded, conveying information not to be found elsewhere, regarding the author or the occasion, accompanies most of the selections.

Teachers will find selections appropriate to Memorial Day, Arbor Day, Washington's Birthday, and all other patriotic occasions. And from the pages of this book speak the voices of many of our presidents, from Washington to McKinley.

Besides a perspicuous list of contents, the volume contains a complete general index by titles and authors; and also a separate index of authors, thus enabling one who remembers only the title to find readily the author, or who recalls only the author to find just as readily all of her selections.

Like the companion volume, College Men's Declamations, this work contains many "pieces" suitable both for girls and boys, and the two books may well stand side by side upon the shelf of every student and every teacher, ever ready with some selection that is sure to please, and exactly suited to the speaker and to the occasion.

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers

4-5-13-14 Cooper Institute New York City

Pros and Cons

The Affirmative and the Negative of the Questions Of The Day in the form of

Complete Debates

CLOTH—**Price $1.50 Postpaid**—TWELVEMO

Something new, something practical, something up-to-date. A book that exactly fits into these last years of this wonderful last decade of the passing century.

Besides giving complete directions for the organization and the conduct of Debating Societies in accordance with parliamentary procedure, this book in many of its debates presents the speakers as actually addressing their hearers from "the floor," each speaker in turn with his arguments — — the first speakers for the affirmative and the negative in turn; then the second speakers in turn; in some cases, the third speakers; and then the summing up by the leaders.

The array of arguments thus marshalled constitutes an intelligent and intelligible statement of every principle and every fact affecting the questions debated, thus providing not only an exhaustive study of each question enabling a thorough mastery of it for knowledge sake, but also furnishing a thoroughly instructive and decidedly lively and entertaining program for an evening's pleasure and profit.

Among the important topics discussed are the following :—

Government Control.
Our Foreign Policy.
The Tariff.
The Currency Question.
Transportation.
Immigration.
The License Question.
The Suffrage.
Postage.
Our Commercial Policy.

And many others.

There is also a list of "questions" suitable for debate, several of which are "briefly outlined," to assist the student to prepare and to deliver his own "effort."

Essays and orations, many of them suitable for commencement parts, Salutatory and Valedictory addresses, supplement the debates, the whole providing for the student at college and the high-school scholar, the parent at home, and the man of affairs, just that equipment that one needs not only for thinking out the questions that everybody is talking about, but for arguing them in a convincing manner.

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers

4-5-13-14 Cooper Institute — New York City

Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store

LIBRARY
of the
PACIFIC BIBLE INSTITUTE
FRESNO, CALIFORNIA

HIEBERT LIBRARY
3 6877 00131 2791